

HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Software Technical Reference



HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series MFP
Series
Software Technical Reference



Copyright and license

©2008 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 8/2008

Trademark Credits

Adobe®, Acrobat® and PostScript® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Corel® is a trademark or registered trademark of Corel Corporation or Corel Corporation Limited.

Microsoft®, Windows® and Windows NT® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Windows Vista™ is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

PANTONE® is Pantone, Inc's check-standard trademark for color.

UNIX® is a registered of The Open Group.

ENERGY STAR® and the ENERGY STAR logo® are U.S. registered marks of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Table of contents

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction	1
Product comparison	2
Product features	3
Quick Reference Job Aids	6
Product walkaround	7
Front view	7
Printing-system software	8
Operating-system support	8
Supported operating systems for Windows	9
Supported printer drivers for Windows	9
HP Universal Print Driver (UPD)	9
UPD installation modes	10
Supported utilities for Windows	10
Supported utilities for Windows	10
Embedded Web Server	10
HP Easy Printer Care	11
Supported operating systems for Macintosh	11
Supported printer drivers for Macintosh	11
Software for Macintosh computers	12
HP Printer Utility	12
Open the HP Printer Utility	12
HP Printer Utility features	12
Supported utilities for Macintosh	13
Embedded Web Server	13
Software for other operating systems	13
Printer driver support in other operating systems	13
Availability	14
Printing-system software on the Web	15
In-box printing-system software CDs	16
Admin CD	16
User CD	16
1 Worldwide Version	17
Documentation availability and localization	23

Admin CD	24
Main browser screen	24
Administrator Documentation screen	25
HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Printing-System Install Notes	25
Fax Install Notes	26
HP Embedded Web Server User Guide	26
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide	27
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide	27
User CD	29
Main browser screen	29
User Guides	30
Quick Reference Guide	30
User Guide	31
Control Panel Wall Poster (.PDF poster)	32
Fax Guides	32
HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Fax Guide	33
HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Send Fax Driver Guide	33
Product and Support Information	34

2 Software description

Windows printing-system software	36
Supported operating systems for Windows	36
Windows system requirements	36
Macintosh system requirements	37
Printer driver	37
Select the correct printer driver for Windows	37
Priority for print settings	38
Change printer-driver settings for Windows	39
Printing system and installer	40
Printing-system software CD for Windows systems	40
Installer features	44
Driver version numbers for Windows operating systems	45
Windows printer-driver configuration	46
Printer-driver autoconfiguration	46
Bidirectional communication	46
Enterprise AutoConfiguration	47
Update Now	47
HP Web Jetadmin	48
Configurable settings	49
Continuous export	51
HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool	52
Advanced color use	53

Restrict color use	53
Restrict color printing and copying from the control panel	53
International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles	53
Embedded Web Server	54
HP Web Jetadmin	55
Scan Setup Wizard	56
E-mail Setup Wizard	57
MFP Send Fax Driver	58
Font support	59
Basic Windows fonts	59
Default printing-system fonts	59

3 Install Windows printing-system components

Supported operating systems for Windows	66
Windows operating system requirements	66
Install overview	66
Software installation types for Windows	66
Installation options	67
Microsoft Windows general installation overview	68
HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software Admin CD for Windows systems	68
Install Now	69
Advanced Install Options	69
Administrator Software	70
Administrator Documentation	71
Support	72
Next Steps	73
Install Windows software for direct connections	75
Install Windows software for networks	76
Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions	77
Install the printer driver by using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU)	77
Install the printer driver by using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard	85
Use an existing port for a direct connection	85
Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection	91
Print server connection	94
Microsoft Windows Sharing (peer-to-peer networking)	98
Setting up the host computer running Windows 2000	99
Setting up the host computer running Windows XP	99
Setting up client computers running Windows 2000	99
Setting up client computers running Windows XP	99
Microsoft Point and Print	100
Use the MFP Send Fax Driver	101
Download the HP Send Fax Driver	101
Install the HP Send Fax Driver	102

HP Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU)	102
Add Printer Wizard	106
Send a fax by using the HP Send Fax Driver	112
Create a network folder by using the Scan Setup Wizard	113
Install documentation and optional software	123
Uninstall software	124
Uninstall component list	124
Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Windows Add or Remove Programs feature	125
Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Server Properties feature	128

4 HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows

Introduction	129
Gain access to print drivers	131
Printing Preferences driver tabs	131
Properties driver tabs	132
Help system	133
“What’s this?” Help	133
Incompatible Print Settings messages	133
Advanced tab features	134
Paper/Output	134
Copy Count	134
Graphic	135
Image Color Management	135
TrueType Font	136
Document Options	136
Advanced Printing Features	136
Print Optimizations	136
Printer Features	137
Layout Options	137
Printing Shortcuts tab features	138
Use defined printing shortcuts	138
General Everyday Printing	139
Paper type	139
Paper sizes	140
Paper source	140
Orientation	141
Print on both sides	141
Pages per sheet	141
Factory Defaults	141
Create a custom printing shortcut	142
Paper/Quality tab features	143
Paper Options	144

Paper sizes	144
Custom Paper Size	145
Name	145
Paper Size	146
Units	146
Custom width and height control limits	146
Paper source	146
Paper type	147
Special pages	148
Covers	149
Print pages on different paper	149
Insert blank or preprinted sheets	150
Chapter separator pages	150
Document preview image	151
Print Quality	151
Print Quality drop-down menu	151
Effects tab features	152
Resizing Options	152
Actual size	153
Print document on	153
Scale to fit	153
% of actual size	153
Document preview image	154
Watermarks	154
Current Watermarks	155
Watermark Message	156
Message Angle	156
Font Attributes	156
Default watermark settings	157
Finishing tab features	159
Document Options	159
Print on both sides	160
Print on both sides (automatically)	160
Print on both sides (manually)	161
Flip pages up	162
Booklet layout	162
Book and booklet printing	163
Pages per sheet	163
Print page borders	163
Page order	164
Document preview image	164
Job Separator	165
Orientation	165
Job Storage tab features	166

Status group box	167
Job Storage Mode	167
Off	167
Proof and Hold	167
Personal Job	168
Quick Copy	168
Stored Job	168
Make Job Private	169
Job Notification Options	169
User Name	170
Job Name	170
Use job-storage features when printing	170
Color tab features	171
Color Options	171
Automatic	172
Manual	172
General	173
Neutral Grays	174
Halftone	174
Color Themes	174
Default (sRGB)	174
Photo (sRGB)	175
Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)	175
Vivid (sRGB)	175
None	175
Custom Profile	175
Document preview image	175
Services tab features	176
Internet Services	176
Device Services	177
Device Settings tab features	178
Form to Tray Assignment	178
Font Substitution Table	179
External Fonts	179
Installing external fonts	180
Remove external fonts	181
Installable Options	181
Automatic Configuration	181
Tray 3	182
Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)	182
Allow Manual Duplexing	182
Printer Hard Disk	182
Job Storage	182
Job Separator	182

Mopier Mode	182
Mopier mode and collation	183
About tab features	184

5 Macintosh software and utilities

Supported operating systems for Macintosh	186
Macintosh system requirements	186
Macintosh printing-system software	186
HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PPD	187
HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PDE	187
HP USB EWS Gateway	187
HP Printer Utility	187
Supported printer drivers for Macintosh	187
Priority for print settings for Macintosh	187
Change printer-driver settings for Macintosh	188
Software for Macintosh computers	188
HP Printer Utility	188
Open the HP Printer Utility	188
HP Printer Utility features	189
Embedded Web Server	189
Availability	190
Printing-system software on the Web	190
In-box printing-system software CDs	190
Macintosh partition	190
CD versions	191
Macintosh install and uninstall instructions	194
Install the Macintosh printing-system software	194
General installation for Macintosh operating systems	194
Detailed Mac OS X installation	195
Product setup	201
Set up a product on Mac OS X V10.4	201
Set up a product on Mac OS X V10.3	206
Troubleshooting the product setup	208
Remove the printing-system software from Macintosh operating systems	209
Macintosh HP Printer Utility	210
Access to the HP Printer Utility	210
Supplies Status	213
Device Information	216
HP Support	216
Color Usage	218
File Upload	219
Upload Fonts	220
Trays Configuration	221

Stored Jobs	221
Release a job-storage print job from the control-panel	222
Delete a job-storage print job from the control-panel	222
E-mail Alerts	223
Network Settings	223
IPv4	224
IPv6	225
Bonjour Settings	225
Other Settings	226
Supplies Management	227
Protect Direct Ports	227
Additional Settings	228
Use features in the Macintosh printer driver	229
Create and use printing presets in Macintosh	229
Resize documents or print on a custom paper size	229
Print a cover page	229
Use watermarks	230
Print multiple pages on one sheet of paper in Macintosh	230
Print on both sides of the page (duplex printing)	231
Store jobs	231
Set the color options	232
Use the Services menu	232

6 Engineering details

Remote firmware updates	234
Print the configuration page	236
Print the menu map	236
HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility	236
Other remote firmware update methods	238
Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser	239
Remote firmware update by using FTP on a network connection	239
Remote firmware update through a Windows network	241
Remote firmware update for UNIX systems	241
Remote firmware update by using the LPR command	242
Remote firmware update by using HP Web Jetadmin	242
Remote firmware update by using the HP Embedded Web Server	243
Messages during the firmware update	243
Print print-ready documents	246
Print a print-ready file by using FTP through a browser	246
Print a print-ready file by using FTP on a network connection	247
Print-ready file printing in a Windows network	248
Print a print-ready file in UNIX systems	248
Print a print-ready file by using the LPR command	248

Print a print-ready file through the HP Embedded Web Server	249
Media attributes	250
Media sources and destinations	250
Media-source commands	250
Printer driver supported media sizes	251
Printer driver supported media types	253
Custom paper sizes	254
Media-type commands	254
Paper and print media	255
Understand paper and print media use	255
Supported paper and print media sizes	256
Supported paper and print media types	257
HP Device Manager for Linux	258
Glossary	261
Index	265

List of tables

Table 1-1	Product models	2
Table 1-2	Features	3
Table 1-3	UPD installation modes	10
Table 1-4	HP Easy Printer Care support	11
Table 1-5	HP Printer Utility features	12
Table 1-6	Software for other operating systems	13
Table 1-7	Software component availability	14
Table 1-8	Supported printing-system components (AR-ET)	18
Table 1-9	Supported printing-system components (FI-KO)	19
Table 1-10	Supported printing-system components (LT-SL)	20
Table 1-11	Supported printing-system components (SR-ZHT)	21
Table 2-1	Change printer-driver settings for Windows	39
Table 2-2	Availability of automatic discovery and printer- driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows	46
Table 2-3	Default fonts	59
Table 2-4	Additional PS emulation fonts	61
Table 4-1	PCL 6 custom paper sizes	146
Table 4-2	Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks	157
Table 4-3	Page orientation	162
Table 4-4	Driver Mopier Mode: and collation settings	183
Table 5-1	Titles	189
Table 5-2	Adding a product in Macintosh operating systems	194
Table 6-1	Troubleshooting a firmware update	244
Table 6-2	Update messages	244
Table 6-3	Troubleshooting a firmware update failure	245
Table 6-4	Media sources and destinations	250
Table 6-5	Media-source commands	250
Table 6-6	Supported media sizes and attributes	251
Table 6-7	Supported input media types	253
Table 6-8	PCL 6 custom media sizes	254
Table 6-9	Media-type commands	254
Table 6-10	Supported paper and print media sizes	256
Table 6-11	Supported envelopes and postcards	257
Table 6-12	Supported paper and print media types	257

List of figures

Figure 1-1	Admin CD–main browser screen	24
Figure 1-2	Administrator Documentation screen	25
Figure 1-3	User CD–Main browser screen	29
Figure 1-4	User Guides screen	30
Figure 1-5	Fax Guides screen	32
Figure 1-6	Online Support screen	34
Figure 2-1	Installation software CD Browser (Admin CD)	40
Figure 2-2	Advanced Installation Options	41
Figure 2-3	Administrator Software screen	42
Figure 2-4	Administrator Documentation screen	43
Figure 2-5	Online Support screen	44
Figure 2-6	Scan Setup Wizard–Complete screen	56
Figure 3-1	Admin CD Browser – Main screen	68
Figure 3-2	Admin CD Browser – Advanced Installation Options	70
Figure 3-3	Admin CD Browser – Administrator Software screen	71
Figure 3-4	Admin CD Browser–Administrator Documentation screen	72
Figure 3-5	Admin CD Browser–Support screen	73
Figure 3-6	Admin CD Browser–Next Steps screen	74
Figure 3-7	Software Installation–Initial screen	78
Figure 3-8	Software Installation–License Agreement screen	79
Figure 3-9	Software Installation–Device Connection screen	80
Figure 3-10	Software Installation–Devices Found screen	81
Figure 3-11	Software Installation–Device Connection screen	82
Figure 3-12	Software Installation–Driver Installation Complete screen	83
Figure 3-13	Software Installation–Driver Installation Complete screen	84
Figure 3-14	Add Printer Wizard–Local or Network Printer screen	86
Figure 3-15	Add Printer Wizard–Select a Printer Port screen	87
Figure 3-16	Add Printer Wizard–Install Printer Software screen	88
Figure 3-17	Add Printer Wizard — Install from Disk screen	88
Figure 3-18	Add Printer Wizard–Install Printer Software, screen	89
Figure 3-19	Add Printer Wizard–Name Your Printer screen	89
Figure 3-20	Add Printer Wizard–Printer Sharing screen	90
Figure 3-21	Add Printer Wizard–Print Test Page screen	90
Figure 3-22	Local or Network Printer screen	92

Figure 3-23	Select a Printer Port screen	93
Figure 3-24	Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard	93
Figure 3-25	Add Port screen	94
Figure 3-26	Add Printer Wizard—Local or Network Printer screen	95
Figure 3-27	Add Printer Wizard—Specify A Printer screen	95
Figure 3-28	Add Printer Wizard—Find Printers screen	97
Figure 3-29	Add Printer Wizard—Default Printer screen	97
Figure 3-30	Add Printer Wizard — Browse for Printer screen	98
Figure 3-31	Send Fax Driver Installation—License Agreement screen	102
Figure 3-32	Send Fax Driver Installation—Device Connection screen	103
Figure 3-33	Send Fax Driver Installation—Devices Found screen	104
Figure 3-34	Send Fax Driver Installation—Device Connection screen	105
Figure 3-35	Send Fax Driver Installation—Device Installation Complete screen	106
Figure 3-36	Send Fax Driver Installation—Local or Network Printer screen	107
Figure 3-37	Send Fax Driver Installation—Select a Printer Port screen	108
Figure 3-38	Send Fax Driver Installation—Install Printer Software screen	109
Figure 3-39	Send Fax Driver Installation—Install From Disk screen	109
Figure 3-40	Send Fax Driver Installation—Name Your Printer screen	110
Figure 3-41	Send Fax Driver Installation—Printer Sharing screen	111
Figure 3-42	Send Fax Driver Installation—Print Test Page screen	112
Figure 3-43	Scan Setup Wizard—Welcome screen	113
Figure 3-44	Scan Setup Wizard—Devices Found screen	114
Figure 3-45	Scan Setup Wizard—Welcome screen	115
Figure 3-46	Scan Setup Wizard—Contacting Device screen	116
Figure 3-47	Scan Setup Wizard—Add or Remove Folders screen	117
Figure 3-48	Scan Setup Wizard—Folder Name screen	118
Figure 3-49	Scan Setup Wizard — Authentication screen	119
Figure 3-50	Scan Setup Wizard—Folder Settings screen	120
Figure 3-51	Scan Setup Wizard—Summary screen	121
Figure 3-52	Scan Setup Wizard—Complete screen	122
Figure 3-53	Install or Uninstall Software	123
Figure 3-54	Windows Control Panel screen	125
Figure 3-55	Windows Change or Remove Programs screen	126
Figure 3-56	HP Driver Uninstall Utility screen	126
Figure 3-57	Uninstall selected device screen	127
Figure 3-58	Uninstall all devices screen	127
Figure 3-59	Uninstall progress window	127
Figure 3-60	Uninstall optional software screen	127
Figure 4-1	An Incompatible Print Settings message	133
Figure 4-2	The default appearance of the Advanced tab	134
Figure 4-3	Printing Shortcuts tab	138
Figure 4-4	Printing Shortcuts dialog box	142
Figure 4-5	Printing Shortcuts tab—Custom shortcut	142
Figure 4-6	Paper/Quality tab	143

Figure 4-7	Paper Options group box	144
Figure 4-8	Custom Paper Size dialog box	145
Figure 4-9	Type is: dialog box	147
Figure 4-10	Print pages on different paper—First or Last	150
Figure 4-11	Effects tab	152
Figure 4-12	Preview images – Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)	153
Figure 4-13	Watermark Details dialog box	155
Figure 4-14	Finishing tab	159
Figure 4-15	Print on Both Sides Instructions	162
Figure 4-16	Page-order preview images	164
Figure 4-17	Separator Page Details dialog box	165
Figure 4-18	Job Storage tab	166
Figure 4-19	Job Storage Identification dialog box	169
Figure 4-20	Color tab	171
Figure 4-21	Color Settings dialog box	172
Figure 4-22	Services tab	176
Figure 4-23	Device Settings tab	178
Figure 4-24	Font Substitution Table	179
Figure 4-25	HP Font Installer dialog box	180
Figure 4-26	About tab	184
Figure 5-1	Product CD image	195
Figure 5-2	HP LaserJet installer browser screen	195
Figure 5-3	Introduction dialog box	196
Figure 5-4	Read Me dialog box	196
Figure 5-5	License dialog box	197
Figure 5-6	Agree/Disagree dialog box	197
Figure 5-7	Select a Destination dialog box	197
Figure 5-8	Installation Type dialog box	198
Figure 5-9	Update type installation	198
Figure 5-10	Custom Install dialog box	199
Figure 5-11	Authenticate dialog box	199
Figure 5-12	Installing dialog box	200
Figure 5-13	Install Succeeded dialog box	200
Figure 5-14	Alternate software installation completion screen	201
Figure 5-15	Printer List screen	202
Figure 5-16	Print & Fax dialog box	202
Figure 5-17	Printer Browser—Default Browser tab	203
Figure 5-18	Printer Browser – IP Printer tab	204
Figure 5-19	Installable Options screen	205
Figure 5-20	Printer List screen	205
Figure 5-21	Print & Fax screen	206
Figure 5-22	Add printer screen	207
Figure 5-23	Printer Selector screen	211
Figure 5-24	Connection Type screen	211

Figure 5-25	Select Printer screen – printer selected	212
Figure 5-26	Printer Utility screen	212
Figure 5-27	Printer Status screen	213
Figure 5-28	Supplies Status–Current Supplies Levels screen	213
Figure 5-29	Supplies Status–Supplies Information screen	214
Figure 5-30	Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen	214
Figure 5-31	Welcome to HP SureSupply screen	215
Figure 5-32	Supplies Status–Media screen	215
Figure 5-33	Device Information screen	216
Figure 5-34	HP Support screen	216
Figure 5-35	HP Instant Support link	217
Figure 5-36	HP Registration Web page	218
Figure 5-37	Color Usage screen	219
Figure 5-38	File Upload screen	219
Figure 5-39	Upload Fonts screen	220
Figure 5-40	Trays Configuration screen	221
Figure 5-41	Stored Jobs screen	221
Figure 5-42	E-mail Alerts screen	223
Figure 5-43	Network Settings–IPv4 screen	224
Figure 5-44	Network Settings–IPv6 screen	225
Figure 5-45	Network Settings–Bonjour Settings screen	226
Figure 5-46	Network Settings–Additional Network Settings screen	226
Figure 5-47	Supplies Management screen	227
Figure 5-48	Protect Direct Ports screen	227
Figure 5-49	Additional Settings screen	228
Figure 6-1	HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 1	237
Figure 6-2	HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 2	237
Figure 6-3	HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility complete screen	238
Figure 6-4	HP Device Manager – Functions tab	258
Figure 6-5	HP Device Manager – Status tab	259
Figure 6-6	HP Device Manager – Supplies tab	259
Figure 6-7	HP Device Manager – Panel tab	260

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction

This software technical reference (STR) provides information about and troubleshooting tips for the printing-system software for the product.

This STR is prepared in an electronic format to serve as a quick-reference tool for Customer Care Center (CCC) agents, support engineers, system administrators, management information systems (MIS) personnel, and end users, as appropriate.

 **NOTE:** This STR describes drivers that are shipped on the printing-system software CD that comes with the product. This STR does *not* describe drivers that will become available on the Web.

The following information is included in this STR:

- Descriptions of drivers, operating systems, and system environments
- Procedures for installing and uninstalling the printing-system software components

For information about the location of information within chapters, see the table of contents. An index is also provided in this STR.

Additional detailed information about the printing-system software is published in an addendum to this STR. The following information is available in the addendum:

- Lists of installed files
- System-modification information, such as files added or modified

Product comparison

Table 1-1 Product models

Model	Features
 <p>HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1)• 250-sheet input tray (Tray 2)• Automatic duplex printing• Automatic document feeder (ADF) that holds up to 50 pages, face-up• 250-sheet, face-down output bin• Hi-speed USB 2.0 port• HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network• 512 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM)• Hard drive
 <p>HP Color LaserJet CM3530fs MFP</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1)• 250-sheet input tray (Tray 2)• Automatic duplex printing• Automatic document feeder (ADF) that holds up to 50 pages, face-up• 250-sheet, face-down output bin• Hi-speed USB 2.0 port• HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network• 512 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM)• Hard drive• Analog fax• Convenience stapler that can staple up to 20 sheets of paper

Product features

Table 1-2 Features

Speed and throughput	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP prints up to 30 pages per minute (ppm) on letter-size paper and A4-size paper.● Up to 12 seconds to print the first page● Recommended maximum monthly print volume of pages for the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP printer: 3,100● Duplex at speed
Resolution	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● 600 dots per inch (dpi) with HP Image Resolution Enhancement technology (Image REt) 3600 for optimum overall imaging● 1200 x 600 dpi for detailed line work and small text
Memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● 512 MB of random-access memory (RAM), expandable to 1 gigabyte (GB).● HP Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) automatically compresses data to use RAM more efficiently.
User interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● HP Easy Select Control Panel● Color Control Panel● An HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) to gain access to support and order supplies (for network-connected products)● Job queue management● HP Easy Printer Care software (a Web-based status and troubleshooting tool)● Internet-enabled supply-ordering capabilities through HP Easy Printer Care software and HP EWS
Languages and fonts	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● HP Printer Control Language (PCL) 6 Printer Driver● HP PCL 5 Universal Printer Driver (UPD)● HP Postscript® Emulation Universal Print Driver (PS)● Printer Management Language● 80 scalable TrueType Postscript typefaces
Paper handling	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Input<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ Tray 1 (multipurpose tray): A multipurpose tray for paper, transparencies, labels, envelopes, and other paper types. This tray does not support size sensing and media level sensing for media installed in the tray. This tray supports media out sensing. The tray holds up to 100 sheets of paper, 50 transparencies, or 10 envelopes.○ Tray 2: 250-sheet cassette tray. This tray does not support size sensing and media level sensing for media installed in the tray. This tray supports media out sensing.○ Optional 500 sheet tray (Tray 3), CE522A.○ Automatic document feeder (ADF): Holds up to 50 sheets of paper.○ ADF duplex scanning: The ADF has an automatic duplexer for scanning two-sided documents.○ Duplex printing: Provides automatic two-sided printing (printing on both sides of the paper).

Table 1-2 Features (continued)


	<p>The paper size range for automatic duplex printing is 175 mm to 320 mm (7.2 to 12.6 inches) x 210 mm to 457 mm (8.3 to 18 inches). The media weight range is 60–220 g/m2 (16–58 lb).</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Output<ul style="list-style-type: none">◦ Standard output bin: The standard output bin is located underneath the scanner on the top of the product. This bin can hold up to 250 sheets of paper. The product provides a sensor that indicates when the bin is full.
Supported operating systems	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Windows® 2000● Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)● Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)● Windows Vista® (32-bit and 64-bit)● Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit)● Macintosh OS
Connectivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Local area network (LAN) connector (RJ-45) for the embedded HP Jetdirect print server● One enhanced input/output (EIO) slot● USB 2.0 connection● Optional analog fax card● A Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) connection (AUX) for connecting other devices● Optional HP Digital Sending Software (DSS)
Environmental features	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Sleep setting saves energy.● Energy Star and Blue Angel● High content of recyclable components and materials.
Security features	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Secure Disk Erase● Disk encryption (HP Secure Hard Drive)● Security lock (optional)● Job retention● User PIN authentication for stored jobs● DSS authentication● IPv6 security
Copying and sending	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Modes for text, graphics, and mixed text and graphics formats● Job-interrupt feature● Multiple pages per sheet● Control panel animations (for example, jam recovery)● Scan and send to e-mail<ul style="list-style-type: none">◦ Local address book for e-mail and fax◦ LDAP addressing

Table 1-2 Features (continued)

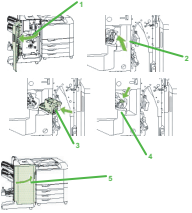
- Send to folder
 - Automatic duplex (two-sided) scanning
-

Quick Reference Job Aids

Quick Reference Job Aids provide additional step-by-step procedures for using this product. Gain access to the Quick Reference Job Aids from the user CD or at www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp.

HP Color LaserJet CM3530MFP Series **Replace staples** 

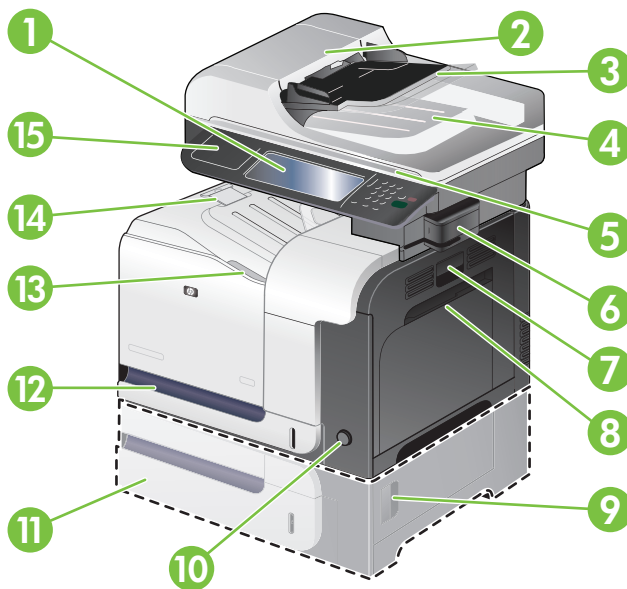
Topic	Steps
Replace staples	<p>1. Open the paper tray for the stapler or the stapler tray. (1)</p> <p>2. Push the staples into the tray. (2)</p> <p>3. Press the staples into the tray. (3)</p> <p>4. Push the staples into the tray. (4)</p> <p>5. Close the tray. (5)</p>



©2008 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P. www.hp.com

Product walkaround

Front view



1	Color control panel
2	Document-feeder top-cover (lift open to clear jams)
3	Automatic document-feeder (ADF)
4	Document-feeder output bin
5	Scanner lid
6	Convenience stapler (only for the HP Color LaserJet CM3530fs MFP)
7	Right-side door (access for clearing jams)
8	Tray 1 (pull the handle to open the tray)
9	Lower-right door
10	On/off button
11	Optional Tray 3
12	Tray 2
13	Front door (access to print cartridges and toner collection unit)
14	Standard output bin
15	Hardware integration port

Printing-system software

- [Operating-system support](#)
- [Availability](#)

Operating-system support

Windows operating systems provide full-featured support for the product. Operating systems that are not described in this STR provide varying levels of functionality.

Throughout this document, Windows XP is used to denote Windows XP Home Edition and Windows XP Professional, unless noted otherwise.

Information relating to networking functions is specific to products that have network capabilities.

Information relating to faxing functions is specific to products that have fax capabilities.

The printing-system software has *not* been tested with and is *not* supported in the following operating systems:

- Windows 3.1x
- Windows 95
- Windows 98
- Windows Millennium Edition (Me)
- Windows NT® 4.0
- IA-64-bit operating systems

Printer drivers for these operating systems are not included on the printing-system software CD and are not available on the Web. Other printer drivers might work with the product, but some print-driver features and functions might not be available.

For more information about the product, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp

- [Supported operating systems for Windows](#)
- [Supported printer drivers for Windows](#)
- [HP Universal Print Driver \(UPD\)](#)
- [Supported utilities for Windows](#)
- [Supported operating systems for Macintosh](#)
- [Supported printer drivers for Macintosh](#)
- [Software for Macintosh computers](#)
- [Open the HP Printer Utility](#)
- [HP Printer Utility features](#)
- [Supported utilities for Macintosh](#)

- [Software for other operating systems](#)
- [Printer driver support in other operating systems](#)

Supported operating systems for Windows


The product supports the following Windows operating systems:

- Windows 2000
- Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit)

Supported printer drivers for Windows

- HP PCL 6 Printer Driver
- HP PostScript Emulation Universal Print Driver (HP PS Emulation UPD)
- HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver (HP UPD PCL 5)

The printer drivers include online Help that has instructions for common printing tasks and also describes the buttons, checkboxes, and drop-down lists that are in the printer driver.

 **NOTE:** The HP PCL 6 is the only printer-driver that is included with this product; it is included in the box on the Admin CD.

NOTE: For more information about the UPD, see www.hp.com/go/upd.

HP Universal Print Driver (UPD)

Each HP Universal Print Driver (UPD) for Windows is a single driver that gives you instant access to virtually any HP LaserJet product, from any location, without downloading separate drivers. It is built on proven HP print driver technology and has been tested thoroughly and used with many software programs. It is a powerful solution that performs consistently over time.

The HP UPD communicates directly with each HP product, gathers configuration information, and then customizes the user interface to show the product's unique, available features. It automatically enables features that are available for the product, such as two-sided printing and stapling, so you do not need to enable them manually.

For more information, go to www.hp.com/go/upd.

When you download and install a UPD from the product support Web page (www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp), there will be some variations in the installation process and results depending on the driver that you select.

From the support page, click on the **Download Drivers and Software** link. After you select the printer model and operating system, there will be several selections on the download page. You can download drivers from the "Driver" section and from the "Driver - Universal Print Driver" section.

Drivers downloaded from the "Driver" section are wrapped with the HP DIU (Driver Installation Utility) and produce a "named" driver when installed. A named driver has the printer model number in the driver

print queue name. These drivers always install in Traditional mode. The HP PCL 6 Print Driver is a product specific driver, and the PCL5 and postscript driver are UPDs but install as described.

Drivers downloaded from the “Driver-Universal Print Driver” section includes the UPD installer. For these drivers, the driver print queue shows a non-product-specific name. When installing these drivers, you have a choice between Traditional or Dynamic mode as described below.

UPD installation modes

Table 1-3 UPD installation modes

Traditional mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Use this mode if you are installing the driver from a CD for a single computer.● When installed with this mode, UPD operates like traditional printer drivers.● If you use this mode, you must install UPD separately for each printer.
Dynamic mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Use this mode if you are installing the driver for a mobile computer, so you can discover and print to HP products in any location.● Use this mode if you are installing UPD for a workgroup.● To use this mode, download UPD from the Internet. See www.hp.com/go/upd.

Supported utilities for Windows

Supported utilities for Windows

HP Web Jetadmin

HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool for HP Jetdirect-connected printers within your intranet, and it should be installed only on the network administrator’s computer.

To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin and for the latest list of supported host systems, visit www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin.

When installed on a host server, a Windows client can gain access to HP Web Jetadmin by using a supported Web browser (such as Microsoft® Internet Explorer 4.x or Netscape Navigator 4.x or later) by navigating to the HP Web Jetadmin host.

Embedded Web Server

The product is equipped with the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS), which provides access to information about product and network activities. This information appears in a Web browser, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer, Netscape Navigator, Apple® Safari, or Firefox.

The HP EWS resides on the product. It is not loaded on a network server.

The HP EWS provides an interface to the product that anyone who has a network-connected computer and a standard Web browser can use. No special software is installed or configured, but you must have a supported Web browser on the computer. To gain access to the HP EWS, type the IP address for the product in the address line of the browser.

For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the HP EWS, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide*, which is available on the Admin CD.

HP Easy Printer Care

HP Easy Printer Care software is a program that you can use for the following tasks:

- Check the product status.
- Check the supplies status and use HP SureSupply to shop online for supplies.
- Set up alerts.
- View product usage reports.
- View product documentation.
- Gain access to troubleshooting and maintenance tools.
- Use HP Proactive Support to routinely scan your printing system and to prevent potential problems. HP Proactive Support can update software, firmware, and HP printer drivers.

You can view HP Easy Printer Care software when the product is directly connected to your computer or when it is connected to a network.

Table 1-4 HP Easy Printer Care support

Supported operating systems	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Microsoft® Windows 2000 Service Pack 4● Microsoft Windows Server 2003● Microsoft Windows XP, Service Pack 2 Professional or Home● Microsoft Windows Vista™
Supported browsers	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or 7.0


To download HP Easy Printer Care software, go to www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare. This Web site also provides updated information about supported browsers and a list of HP products that support HP Easy Printer Care software.

For more information about using HP Easy Printer Care software, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series User Guide*, which is available on the User CD.

Supported operating systems for Macintosh

The product supports the following Macintosh operating systems:

- Mac OS X V10.3.9, V10.4, V10.5, and later

 **NOTE:** For Mac OS X V10.4 and later, PPC and Intel® Core Processor Macs are supported.

Supported printer drivers for Macintosh

The HP installer provides PostScript® Printer Description (PPD) files, Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs), and the HP Printer Utility for use with Macintosh computers.

The PPDs, in combination with the Apple PostScript printer drivers, provide access to device features. Use the Apple PostScript printer driver that comes with the computer.

Software for Macintosh computers

HP Printer Utility

Use the HP Printer Utility to set up product features that are not available in the printer driver.

You can use the HP Printer Utility when the product uses a universal serial bus (USB) cable or is connected to a TCP/IP-based network.

Open the HP Printer Utility

Open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X V10.3 and V10.4

1. Open the Finder, click **Applications**, click **Utilities**, and then double-click **Printer Setup Utility**.
2. Select the product that you want to configure, and then click **Utility**.

Open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X V10.5

- From the **Printer** menu, click **Printer Utility**, or
- From the **Print Queue**, click the **Utility** icon.

HP Printer Utility features

The HP Printer Utility consists of pages that you open by clicking in the **Configuration Settings** list. The following table describes the tasks that you can perform from these pages.

Table 1-5 HP Printer Utility features

Item	Description
Configuration Page	Prints a configuration page.
Supplies Status	Shows the device supplies status and provides links for online supplies ordering.
HP Support	Provides access to technical assistance, online supplies ordering, online registration, and recycling and return information.
File Upload	Transfers files from the computer to the device.
Upload Fonts	Transfers font files from the computer to the device.
Firmware Update	Transfers updated firmware files from the computer to the device.
Duplex Mode	Turns on the automatic two-sided printing mode.
Economode & Toner Density	Turns on the Economode setting to conserve toner, or adjusts toner density.
Resolution	Changes the resolution settings, including the REt setting.
Lock Resources	Locks or unlocks storage products, such as a hard disk.
Stored Jobs	Manages print jobs that are stored on the device hard disk.
Trays Configuration	Changes the default tray settings.
IP Settings	Changes the device network settings and provides access to the embedded Web server.
Bonjour Settings	Provides the ability to turn on or off Bonjour support or change the device service name that is listed on a network.

Table 1-5 HP Printer Utility features (continued)

Item	Description
Additional Settings	Provides access to the embedded Web server.
E-mail Alerts	Configures the device to send e-mail notices for certain events.

Supported utilities for Macintosh

Embedded Web Server

The product is equipped with the HP EWS, which provides access to information about product and network activities. For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the HP EWS, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide*, which is available on the Administrator (Admin) CD.

Software for other operating systems

Table 1-6 Software for other operating systems

Operating System	Software
UNIX®	For HP-UX and Solaris networks, go to www.hp.com/support/go/jetdirectunix_software to install model scripts by using the HP Jetdirect printer installer (HPPI) for UNIX. For the latest model scripts, go to www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts .
Linux	For information, go to www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting .


Printer driver support in other operating systems

The product is also supported in the following operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows Terminal Server
- Citrix Terminal Server. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/citrixprinting
Alternatively, go to the HP.com Web site and search for “c00213455.”
- Microsoft Windows Cluster Server 8. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/windowsclusterserver
- HP OpenVMS. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/openvmsprinting
- Tru64 UNIX printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/tru64unixprinting
- SAP printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/sap/print
- Jetdirect Printer Server and HP Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW). Available *only* from the following Web site:

Availability

Download the printing-system software from the Web, or order it on a CD from HP fulfillment centers.

 **NOTE:** This STR describes drivers that are shipped with the printing-system software CD. This document does *not* describe any drivers that might be released by support personnel.


The following table lists the availability of printing-system software components by operating system.

Table 1-7 Software component availability

Component	Windows	Macintosh
Admin CD		
HP DIU (SW installer)	x	
Mac Installer		x
TCP Port Monitor	x	
32-bit PCL6 EVO Discrete	x	
64-bit PCL6 EVO Discrete	x	
32-bit PCL5 UPD (link)	x	
64-bit PCL5 UPD (link)	x	
32 bit PS UPD (link)	x	
64-bit PS UPD (link)	x	
PC Send Fax Driver	x	
Mac OS 10.3 (or greater) Print Driver		x
Print Dialog Extensions		x
User Guide (CHM)	x	
User Guide (PDF)	x	
Fax install notes (PDF)	x	
SW Install Notes	x	
EWS Guide	x	
Jetdirect Guide	x	
Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide	x	
Fonts	x	
Driver Deployment Utility (DDU)	x	
PDF Wrapper Document Viewing (Adobe Reader)	x	
Web Registration (link)	x	
Color Printing Access and Usage (link)	x	
Supplies (link)	x	

Table 1-7 Software component availability (continued)

Component	Windows	Macintosh
Product Information (link)	x	
HP.com (link)	x	
UPD (link)	x	
HP WJA Install (link)	x	
HP Easy Printer Care Install (link)	x	
CD Browser	x	
DMC config files	x	
Scan Setup Wizard	x	
Scan Setup Wizard User Guide	x	
Scan Setup Wizard Read Me	x	
E-mail Setup Wizard (link)	x	
User CD		
User Guide (CHM)	x	
User Guide (PDF)	x	
Job Aids (PDFs: Print, Copy, Scan, Fax, Jams) (link)	x	
Analog Fax User Guide (PDF)	x	
Send Fax Driver User Guide (PDF)	x	
Send Fax Driver Install Notes (PDF)	x	

 **NOTE:** Fonts are installed on the Mac by using the HP Printer Utility.

- [Printing-system software on the Web](#)
- [In-box printing-system software CDs](#)

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CDs is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The HP Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases. See the HP Proactive support link on the Download Drivers and Software page.

The printing-system software is available for download at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp

In-box printing-system software CDs

Two CDs are included in-box with the product.

- **Admin CD.** Contains the printing-system installer and administrator software, administrator documentation, the Installer Customization Wizard, and links to the HP Universal Print Drivers on the Web.
- **User CD.** Contains user guides, job aids, product demonstrations and simulations, the control panel wall poster, fax guides, and support information.

Each CD has two partitions, one for each of the following operating systems:

- Windows
- Macintosh

The files in each partition of the Admin CD include documentation files and files that are required to install and uninstall the printing-system software components. Use the Admin CD to install the printing-system software.

Admin CD

The root directory in the Windows partition of the Admin CD contains the AUTORUN.EXE file, the SETUP.EXE file, support files, and the following directories:

- Autorun
- Driver Deployment Utility
- Drivers
- Fonts
- HPSU
- Manuals
- Port Monitor
- Temp

User CD

The root directory in the Windows partition of the User CD contains the AUTORUN.EXE file, the SETUP.EXE file, support files, and the following directories:

- Autorun
- Manuals

To view the files, insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive, right-click **Start**, click **Explore**, and then select the CD-ROM drive.

1 Worldwide Version

The Admin CD is available in a single worldwide version and contains the printing-system software in all supported languages as follows:

- **Admin CD**

- AR = Arabic
- BG = Bulgarian
- CA = Catalan (Català)
- CS = Czech (Cesky)
- DA = Danish (Dansk)
- DE = German (Deutsch)
- EL = Greek
- EN = English
- ES = Spanish (Español)
- ET = Estonian (Eesti)
- FI = Finnish (Suomi)
- FR = French (Français)
- HE = Hebrew
- HR = Croatian (Hrvatski)
- HU = Hungarian (Magyar)
- ID = Indonesia (Bahasa)
- IT = Italian (Italiano)
- JA = Japanese
- KK = Kazakh
- KO = Korean
- LT = Lithuanian
- LV = Latvian
- NL = Dutch (Nederland)
- NO = Norwegian (Norsk)
- PL = Polish (Polski)
- PT = Brazilian Portuguese (Português)
- RO = Romanian
- RU = Russian (Russ)

- SK = Slovak
- SL = Slovenian
- SR = Serbian
- SV = Swedish (Svenska)
- TH = Thai
- TR = Turkish (Turkçe)
- UK = Ukranian
- VI = Vietnamese
- ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
- ZHTW = Traditional Chinese

Table 1-8 Supported printing-system components (AR-ET)

Component	AR	BG	CA	CS	DA	DE	EL	EN	ES	ET
Admin CD										
CD Browser	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
PCL6 Driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Screen Fonts								x		
Send Fax Driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Scan Setup Wizard						x		x	x	
Scan Setup Wizard Guide (PDF)								x		
Scan Setup Wizard Read Me								x		
Driver Deployment Utility (HP DDU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Driver Configuration Editor (DMC)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Install Notes (HTML)	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Fax Install Notes								x		
HP Driver Preconfiguration Guide (PDF)	x			x	x	x	x	x	x	
Embedded Web Server Guide (PDF)				x	x	x		x	x	
Jetdirect Admin Guide (CHM, PDF)				x	x	x		x	x	
Printer Driver (Mac)					x	x		x	x	
HP Printer Utility (Mac)					x	x		x	x	

Table 1-8 Supported printing-system components (AR-ET) (continued)

Component	AR	BG	CA	CS	DA	DE	EL	EN	ES	ET
User CD										
Quick Reference Guide				x	x	x		x	x	
User Guide (CHM, PDF)	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Analog Fax Accessory Guide	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Send Fax Driver Guide	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Job Aids								x	x	
Product Demos and Simulations						x		x	x	
Control Panel Wall Poster	x			x	x	x	x	x	x	

Table 1-9 Supported printing-system components (FI-KO)

Component	FI	FR	HE	HR	HU	ID	IT	JA	KK	KO
Admin CD										
CD Browser	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
PCL6 Driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Screen Fonts										
Send Fax Driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Scan Setup Wizard		x					x	x		x
Scan Setup Wizard Guide (PDF)										
Scan Setup Wizard Read Me										
Driver Deployment Utility (HP DDU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Driver Configuration Editor (DMC)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Install Notes (HTML)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x
Fax Install Notes										
HP Driver Preconfiguration Guide (PDF)	x	x	x		x		x	x		x
Embedded Web Server Guide (PDF)	x	x			x		x	x		x
Jetdirect Admin Guide (CHM, PDF)	x	x			x		x	x		x
Printer Driver (Mac)	x	x					x	x		x

Table 1-9 Supported printing-system components (FI-KO) (continued)

Component	FI	FR	HE	HR	HU	ID	IT	JA	KK	KO
HP Printer Utility (Mac)	x	x					x	x		x
User CD										
Quick Reference Guide	x	x			x		x	x		x
User Guide (CHM, PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x
Analog Fax Accessory Guide	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x
Send Fax Driver Guide	x	x	x		x		x	x		x
Job Aids		x						x		
Product Demos and Simulations		x					x			
Control Panel Wall Poster	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x

Table 1-10 Supported printing-system components (LT-SL)

Component	LT	LV	NL	NO	PL	PT	RO	RU	SK	SL
Admin CD										
CD Browser	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
PCL6 Driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Screen Fonts										
Send Fax Driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Scan Setup Wizard			x			x		x		
Scan Setup Wizard Guide (PDF)										
Scan Setup Wizard Read Me										
Driver Deployment Utility (HP DDU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Driver Configuration Editor (DMC)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Install Notes (HTML)			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Fax Install Notes										
HP Driver Preconfiguration Guide (PDF)			x	x	x	x		x		
Embedded Web Server Guide (PDF)			x	x	x	x		x		
Jetdirect Admin Guide (CHM, PDF)			x	x	x	x		x		

Table 1-10 Supported printing-system components (LT-SL) (continued)

Component	LT	LV	NL	NO	PL	PT	RO	RU	SK	SL
Printer Driver (Mac)			x	x		x		x		
HP Printer Utility (Mac)			x	x		x		x		
User CD										
Quick Reference Guide			x	x	x	x		x		
User Guide (CHM, PDF)			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Analog Fax Accessory Guide			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Send Fax Driver Guide			x	x	x	x		x	x	
Job Aids										
Product Demos and Simulations										
Control Panel Wall Poster			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 1-11 Supported printing-system components (SR-ZHT)

Component	SR	SV	TH	TR	UK	VI	ZHC	ZHT
Admin CD								
CD Browser	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
PCL6 Driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Screen Fonts								
Send Fax Driver	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Scan Setup Wizard							x	x
Scan Setup Wizard Guide (PDF)								
Scan Setup Wizard Read Me								
Driver Deployment Utility (HP DDU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Driver Configuration Editor (DMC)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Install Notes (HTML)		x	x	x			x	x
Fax Install Notes								
HP Driver Preconfiguration Guide (PDF)		x	x	x			x	x
Embedded Web Server Guide (PDF)		x	x				x	x
Jetdirect Admin Guide (CHM, PDF)		x		x			x	x

Table 1-11 Supported printing-system components (SR-ZHT) (continued)

Component	SR	SV	TH	TR	UK	VI	ZHC	ZHT
Printer Driver (Mac)		x					x	x
HP Printer Utility (Mac)		x					x	x
User CD								
Quick Reference Guide		x		x			x	x
User Guide (CHM, PDF)		x	x	x			x	x
Analog Fax Accessory Guide		x	x	x			x	x
Send Fax Driver Guide		x	x	x			x	x
Job Aids								
Product Demos and Simulations								
Control Panel Wall Poster		x	x	x			x	x

Documentation availability and localization

Both CDs that are included with the product contain documentation.

Access to the documents depends on the document type and location as follows:

- Some documents can be opened from the CD Browser.
- Some documents appear on the CD and can *only* be opened by navigating to the folder where they reside.
- Some documents are available on the Web through links in the CD Browser or CD folders.

Documents are available in the following file formats:

- **Portable document format (.PDF)**. To view documentation in .PDF format, Adobe® Acrobat® Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:
www.adobe.com
- **Compiled HTML (.CHM)**. When you click a documentation link to a .CHM document, a Microsoft HTML Viewer opens the file on the computer screen.
- **Hypertext markup (.HTM)**. When you click a documentation link to an .HTM document, a Web browser opens the file on the computer screen.

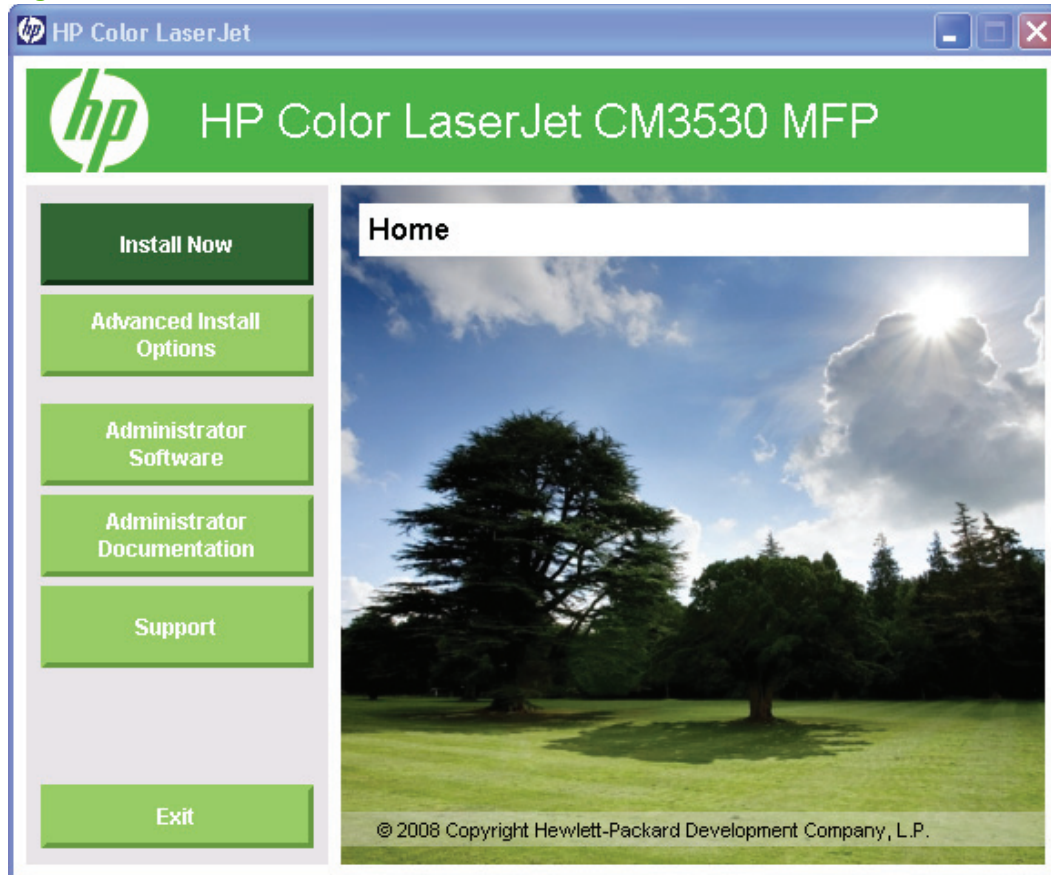
Admin CD

- [Main browser screen](#)
- [Administrator Documentation screen](#)

Main browser screen

To view documentation on the Admin CD, insert the CD into the into the CD-ROM drive. The main screen of the Admin CD Browser opens. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-1 Admin CD–main browser screen



Administrator Documentation screen

On the main screen of the Admin CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation** to open the **Administrator Documentation** screen. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-2 Administrator Documentation screen



- [HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Printing-System Install Notes](#)
- [Fax Install Notes](#)
- [HP Embedded Web Server User Guide](#)
- [HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide](#)
- [HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide](#)

HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Printing-System Install Notes

The *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Printing-System Install Notes* (.HTM) contains important information about device features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.

Open the guide from the Admin CD Browser as follows:

1. On the main screen of the CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **Install Notes**.

Open the .HTM file:

1. Insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:
CM3530MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_XXWW.HTM

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Tables 8-11 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is CM3530MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_FRWW.HTM.

Fax Install Notes

Fax Install Notes (.HTM) contains important information about installing and using the HP Send Fax Driver. This guide is available in English only.

Open this guide from the Admin CD Browser as follows:

1. On the main screen of the CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **Fax Install Notes**.

Open the .HTM file from the CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:
CM3530MFP_FAX-INSTALL-NOTE_ENWW.HTM

HP Embedded Web Server User Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide* provides information about gaining access to product status, settings, and networking through the HP EWS.

Open this guide from the Admin CD Browser as follows:

1. On the main screen of the CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **Embedded Web Server Guide**.

Open the .PDF file from the CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:
CM3530MFP_EWS_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Tables 8-11 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is CM3530MFP_EWS_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As...** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide

The *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide* is a network administrator guide that contains information about connecting the product directly to a network.


Open this guide from the Admin CD Browser as follows:

1. On the main screen of the Admin CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **HP Jetdirect Guide**.

Open the guide from the CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

HPJDAG_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Tables 8-11 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPJDAG_FRWW.PDF.

When the file is open, click **File** and then click **Save As...** to save a copy of the file to another location.

The guide can also be accessed as an MS Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

Open the .CHM from the CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

HPJDAG_XXWW.CHM

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Tables 8-11 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPJDAG_FRWW.CHM.

HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide

The *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide* (.PDF) contains important information about preconfiguring printer drivers before installation in network environments.

Open this guide from the Admin CD Browser as follows:

1. On the main screen of the Admin CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **HP Preconfiguration User Guide**.

Open the guide from the Admin CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file: PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Tables 8-11 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As...** to save a copy of the file to another location.

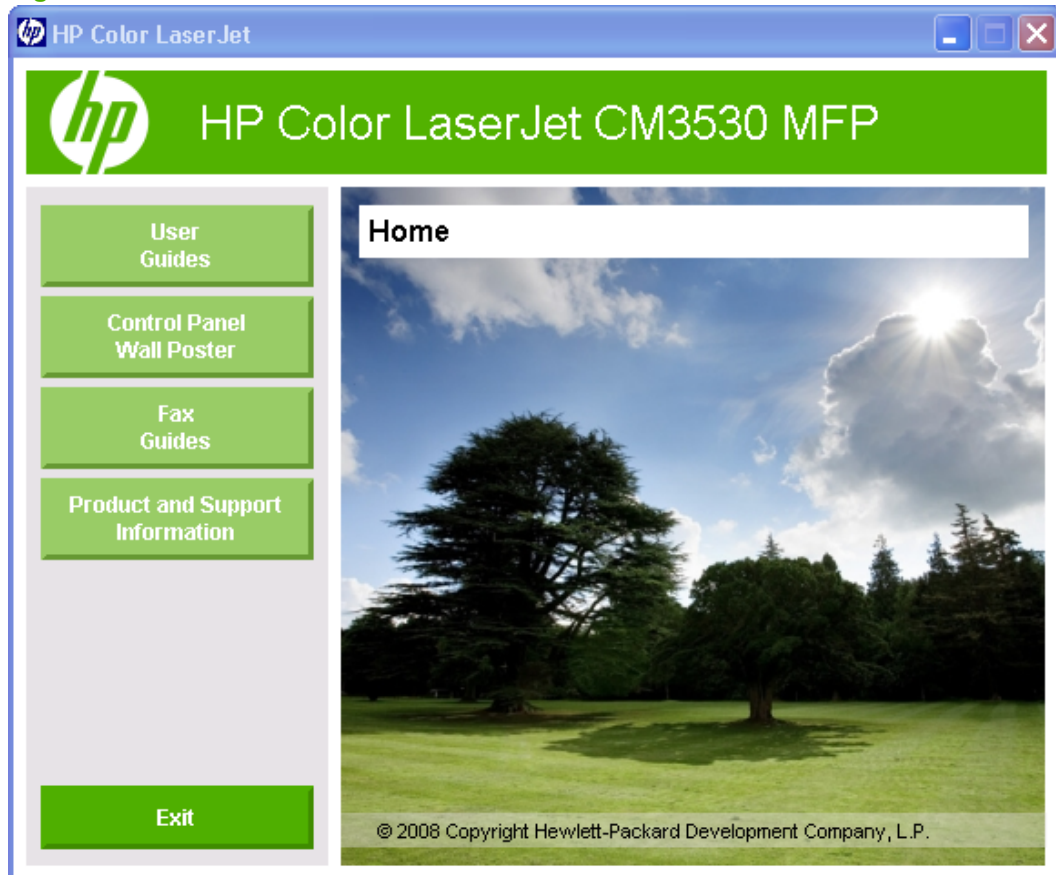
User CD

- [Main browser screen](#)
- [User Guides](#)
- [Control Panel Wall Poster \(.PDF poster\)](#)
- [Fax Guides](#)
- [Product and Support Information](#)

Main browser screen

To view documentation on the User CD, insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive. The main screen of the User CD Browser opens. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-3 User CD–Main browser screen



NOTE: Functionality for the **Product Demos and Simulations** button and the **Control Panel Wall Poster** button will be added to future versions of the CD.

User Guides

On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **User Guides** to open the **User Documentation** screen. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-4 User Guides screen



- [Quick Reference Guide](#)
- [User Guide](#)

Quick Reference Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Quick Reference Guide* (in .PDF format) provides information on using printer features to perform common printing tasks.

Open this guide from the User CD Browser as follows:

1. On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **User Guides**.
2. Click **Quick Reference Guide**.

Open this guide from the User CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM3530MFP_QUICK_REF_XXXX.PDF

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As...** to save a copy of the file to another location.

User Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series User Guide* (in .CHM and .PDF formats) describes basic product features.

Open the .CHM version of the guide from the User CD Browser as follows:

1. On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **User Guides**.
2. Click **User Guide (Interactive)**.

The guide opens as a Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

Open the .CHM file from the User CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM3530MFP_USE_XXWW.CHM

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Tables 8-11 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is CM3530MFP_USE_FRWW.CHM.

The *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series User Guide* is also provided as a printable .PDF file. Open the .PDF from the User CD Browser as follows:

1. In the User CD Browser, click **User Guides**.
2. Click **User Guide (Printer Friendly)**. The guide opens.
3. Print the guide.

Open the .PDF file from the User CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM3530MFP_USE_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Tables 8-11 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is CM3530MFP_USE_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As...** to save a copy of the file to another location.

Control Panel Wall Poster (.PDF poster)

The *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Control Panel Wall Poster* provides information about using the product control panel.

Open this document from the User CD Browser as follows: click **Control Panel Wall Poster** on the main screen of the User CD Browser.

Open the .PDF file from the User CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM3530MFP_POSTER_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Tables 8-11 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is CM3530MFP_POSTER_FRWW.PDF.

Fax Guides

On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **Fax Guides** to open the **Fax Guides** screen. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-5 Fax Guides screen



- [HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Fax Guide](#)
- [HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Send Fax Driver Guide](#)

HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Fax Guide

The *HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Fax Guide* describes how to use the product as a standalone analog fax machine and provides information about product specifications and regulatory requirements.

Open the guide from the User CD Browser as follows:

1. On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **Fax Guides**.
2. Click **Analog Fax User Guide**.

Open the .PDF file from the User CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

FAX_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Tables 8-11 in this chapter.

NOTE: The “XX” in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is FAX_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As...** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Send Fax Driver Guide

The *HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Send Fax Driver Guide* describes the fax functions that are included with the Send Fax driver and provides instructions for the following tasks:

- Install the Send Fax driver
- Send faxes
- Configure fax settings
- Troubleshoot problems


Open this guide from the User CD Browser as follows:

1. On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **Fax Guides**.
2. Click **Send Fax Driver User Guide**.

Open the .PDF file from the User CD directory as follows:

1. Insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

FAX-SEND_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Tables 8-11 in this chapter.

NOTE: The “XX” in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is FAX-SEND_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As...** to save a copy of the file to another location.

Product and Support Information

On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **Product and Support Information** to open the **Online Support** screen. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-6 Online Support screen



- Click the **Supplies** button for information about ordering supplies.
- Click the **Product Information** button to open the HP Instant Support Web page for support information and updates for the product.
- Click the **Print Quality** button to visit hp.com for print quality information.
- Click the **Product Support** button to visit hp.com and get product support help.

2 Software description

- [Windows printing-system software](#)
- [Windows printer-driver configuration](#)
- [HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool](#)
- [Advanced color use](#)
- [Embedded Web Server](#)
- [HP Web Jetadmin](#)
- [Scan Setup Wizard](#)
- [E-mail Setup Wizard](#)
- [MFP Send Fax Driver](#)
- [Font support](#)

Windows printing-system software

- [Supported operating systems for Windows](#)
- [Windows system requirements](#)
- [Macintosh system requirements](#)
- [Printer driver](#)
- [Select the correct printer driver for Windows](#)
- [Priority for print settings](#)
- [Change printer-driver settings for Windows](#)
- [Printing system and installer](#)
- [Driver version numbers for Windows operating systems](#)

Supported operating systems for Windows

The product supports the following Windows operating systems:

- Windows 2000
- Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit)

Windows system requirements

The HP printing-system software has the following minimum system requirements for the following Windows operating systems:

- **Windows 2000:** 333-MHz processor with 64 MB RAM
- **Windows XP:** 333-MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- **Windows Server 2003:** 550-MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- **Windows Vista:** 800-MHz processor with 512 MB RAM
- **Windows Server 2008:** 1-GHz processor (x86) or 1.4-GHz processor (x64) with 512 MB RAM


All Windows operating systems also have the following requirements:

- A CD-ROM, DVD drive, or Internet connection with which to install the printing-system software
- A dedicated USB 1.1 or USB 2.0 connectivity port, or network connection, to communicate with the product

Macintosh system requirements

The HP printing-system software has the following minimum system requirements for the Mac OS X V10.3.9, V10.4, V10.5, and later operating systems:

- CD-ROM
- 128 MB RAM
- 160 MB of free hard disk space

 **NOTE:** For Mac OS V10.4 and later, PPC and Intel Core Processor Macs are supported.

Printer driver

Printer drivers provide access to product features, such as printing on custom-sized paper, resizing documents, and inserting watermarks.

 **NOTE:** The most recent drivers are available at www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp.

Select the correct printer driver for Windows

Printer drivers provide access to the product features and allow the computer to communicate with the product (by using a printer language). Check the installation notes and readme files on the product CD for additional software and languages.

HP PCL 6 Printer Driver description

- Recommended for printing in all Windows environments
- Provides the overall best speed, print quality, and product-feature support for most users
- Developed to align with the Windows Graphic Device Interface (GDI) for the best speed in Windows environments
- Might not be fully compatible with third-party and custom software programs that are based on PCL 5

HP PostScript level 3 emulation universal printer driver description

- Recommended for printing with Adobe® software programs or with other highly graphics-intensive software programs
- Provides support for printing from postscript level 3 emulation needs or for postscript flash font support
- Performs slightly faster than the HP PCL 6 Printer Driver driver when using Adobe software programs
- Best print compatibility between Apple Macintosh and Windows applications.


HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver description

- Recommended for general office printing in Windows environments
- Compatible with previous PCL versions and older HP LaserJet products

- The best choice for printing from third-party or custom software programs
- The best choice when operating with mixed environments, which require the product to be set to PCL 5 (UNIX, Linux, mainframe)

Priority for print settings

Changes to print settings are prioritized depending on where the changes are made.

 **NOTE:** The names of commands and dialog boxes might vary depending on your software program.

- **Page Setup dialog box:** Click **Page Setup** or a similar command on the **File** menu of the program you are working in to open this dialog box. Settings changed here override settings changed anywhere else.
- **Print dialog box:** Click **Print**, **Print Setup**, or a similar command on the **File** menu of the program you are working in to open this dialog box. Settings changed in the **Print** dialog box have a lower priority and do *not* override changes made in the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- **Printer Properties dialog box (printer driver):** Click **Properties** in the **Print** dialog box to open the printer driver. Settings changed in the **Printer Properties** dialog box do not override settings anywhere else in the printing software.
- **Default printer driver settings:** The default printer driver settings determine the settings used in all print jobs, *unless* settings are changed in the **Page Setup**, **Print** or **Printer Properties** dialog boxes.
- **Printer control-panel settings:** Settings changed at the printer control panel have a lower priority than changes made anywhere else.

Change printer-driver settings for Windows

Table 2-1 Change printer-driver settings for Windows

Change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	Change the default settings for all print jobs	Change the product configuration settings
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the File menu in the software program, click Print. 2. Select the driver, and then click Properties or Preferences. <p>The steps can vary; this procedure is most common.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Windows XP and Windows Server 2003 (using the default Start menu view): Click Start, and then click Printers and Faxes. <p>-or-</p> <p>Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 (using the Classic Start menu view): Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers.</p> <p>-or-</p> <p>Windows Vista: Click Start, click Control Panel, and then in the category for Hardware and Sound, click Printers.</p> <p>-or-</p> <p>Windows Server 2008: Click Start, click Control Panel, and then open the Printers folder.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Right-click the driver icon, and then select Printing Preferences. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Windows XP and Windows Server 2003 (using the default Start menu view): Click Start, and then click Printers and Faxes. <p>-or-</p> <p>Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 (using the Classic Start menu view): Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers.</p> <p>-or-</p> <p>Windows Vista: Click Start, click Control Panel, and then in the category for Hardware and Sound click Printer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Right-click the driver icon, and then select Properties. 3. Click the Device Settings tab.

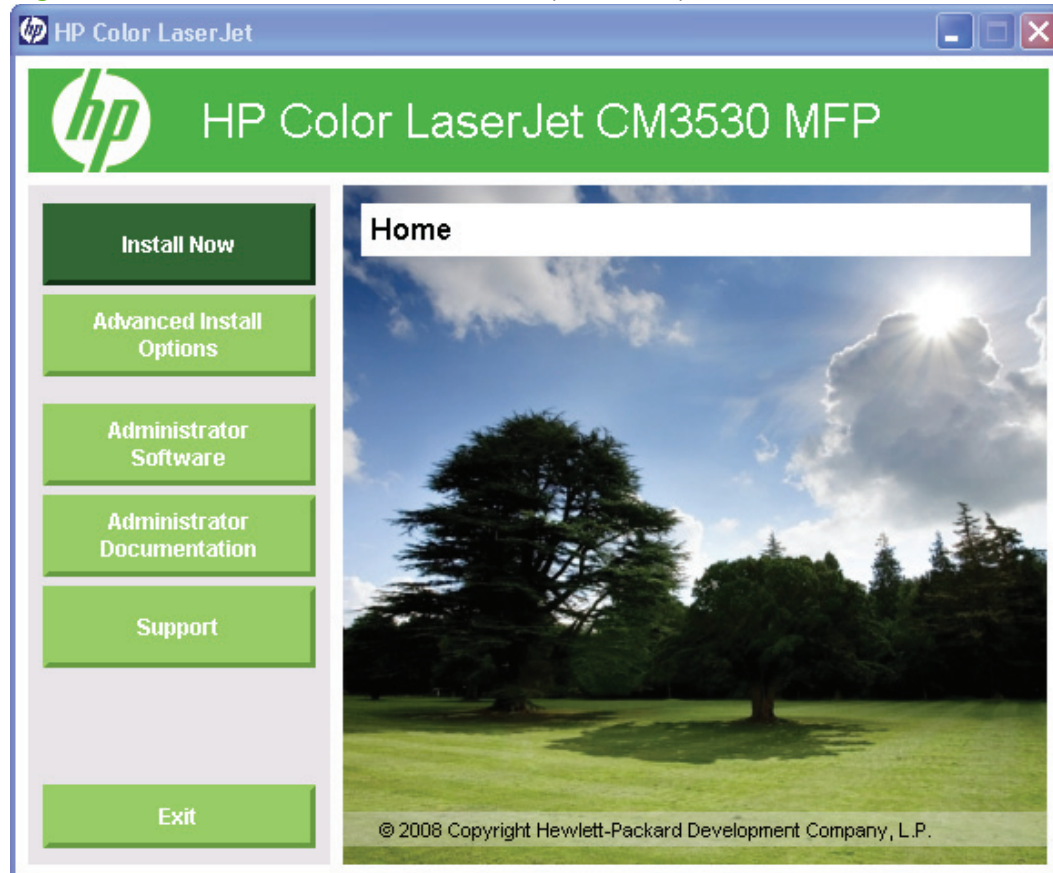
Printing system and installer

- [Printing-system software CD for Windows systems](#)
- [Installer features](#)

Printing-system software CD for Windows systems

In supported Windows operating systems, insert the Administrator (Admin) CD in the CD-ROM drive to open an interactive CD Browser. Use the CD Browser to install the drivers and related components and to gain access to online user documentation, a customization utility, and optional HP software.


Figure 2-1 Installation software CD Browser (Admin CD)



If the screen does not appear when you insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive, follow these steps to open the CD Browser:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Click **Run**.
3. Click **Browse...** and navigate to the root directory of the software CD.
4. Double-click the SETUP.EXE file to start the installer.

The main screen of the Admin CD Browser contains installation and documentation options in the left panel. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

 **NOTE:** The options available for each product might differ from those in the figure.

Install Now. Opens the HP Driver Installation Utility (DIU). The DIU installs the HP PCL 6 Printer Driver, the recommended driver, and screen fonts. To install additional drivers, click **Install Additional Driver**. This brings up a screen that allows you to install the HP PCL 5 Printer Driver or the HP PS Emulation Universal Printer Driver via the Web. The HP MFP Send Fax Driver can also be installed from this screen via DIU.

Advanced Install Options. Provides options for installing other software.

Figure 2-2 Advanced Installation Options



- Click **Install PCL 6 Driver** to install the HP PCL 6 Printer Driver.
- Click **Optional Software** to install screen fonts.
- Click **Install PCL 5 Driver** to install the HP PCL 5 driver Universal Printer Driver from hp.com.
- Click **Install PS Driver** to install the HP PS Emulation Universal Printer Driver from hp.com.
- Click **Install HP MFP Fax Send Driver** to install the HP MFP Send Fax Driver.

Install Notes. Opens the software installation notes for this product.

Administrator Software. This option provides the following links to administrator software programs for the product.

Figure 2-3 Administrator Software screen



- **Scan Setup Wizard.** Use this option to open a screen for installing the Scan Setup Wizard for viewing its documentation.
- **E-mail Setup Wizard.** Use this option to download the E-mail Setup Wizard from the HP Web site.
- **HP Universal Print Driver Portal.** Use this option to download the HP PS Emulation Universal Printer Driver from the HP Web site. This printer driver ensures a standard interface to find and print to an HP product.
- **Driver Deployment Utility.** Use this option to start the HP Driver Deployment Utility, used to create a driver install package for silent/unattended installations.
- **HP Web Jetadmin.** Use this option to download HP Web Jetadmin software, a network print management tool, from the HP Web site.
- **HP Easy Printer Care.** Use this option to download and install HP Easy Printer Care. This maintenance tool helps track and maintain multiple products by providing information about status, alert notifications, usage, and supplies.

Administrator Documentation. Use this option to view the administrator documentation. The following document options are available:

Figure 2-4 Administrator Documentation screen



- **Install Notes**
- **Fax Install Notes**
- **Embedded Web Server Guide**
- **HP Jetdirect Guide**
- **HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide**


Support. This option provides the following links to support information:

Figure 2-5 Online Support screen



- Click **Product Registration** to register the product online.
- Click **Color Printing Access and Usage** to access color printing information and management.
- Click **Supplies** for information about ordering supplies.
- Click **Product Information** to open the HP Instant Support Web page for support information and updates for the product.
- Click **hp.com** to go to the HP home Web page for information about products and services, support, drivers, and HP online stores.

Click **Back** to return to the main CD Browser screen.

 **NOTE:** To view documentation in .PDF format, Adobe® Acrobat® Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:

<http://www.adobe.com>

Installer features

The HP Driver Installation Utility (HP-DIU) installer is designed to provide a simple and consistent installation method for the printing-system software in supported Windows operating systems.


The HP-DIU installer offers the following features:

- The Administrator software CD features an interactive software interface.
- Network connection is integrated so that you can install drivers and connect to a networked product in a single process.
- The selection dialog box sets the operating-system language as the default language. You can use the installer to select any of the languages on the Admin CD.

All of the printing-system components are installed by using the HP-DIU installer. The installer automatically detects the language of choice and the operating system.

Driver version numbers for Windows operating systems

Access to driver version numbers varies, depending on the operating system in which the printing system is installed.

 **NOTE:** For a list of product drivers, updated HP printing-system software, and product-support information, go to:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp

In supported Windows operating systems, follow these steps to find driver-version information:

1. Click **Start**, and then do one of the following:

Windows 2000: Select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

-or-

Windows XP: Click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Other Hardware** icon.

-or-

Windows Server 2003 and Windows XP Professional: Select **Settings**, and then select **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

Windows Vista: Click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

-or-

Windows Server 2008: Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then open the **Printers** folder.

2. Right-click the product driver icon.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **About** tab.

To determine the latest version, compare the overall build number (in parentheses after the model name) and the HPXXXXXX.GPD version number (in the **Driver Files:** field). If the overall build number has increased, this is the latest version of the driver.

If the overall build number is the same, check the version number of the GPD file. The driver that has the highest GPD version number is the latest driver.


Windows printer-driver configuration

The HP PCL 6 printer driver features bidirectional communication technology which, in environments that support the printer driver, provides automatic discovery and printer-driver configuration for product accessories at the time of installation.

Some accessories that are automatically discovered and configured include the duplexing unit, optional paper trays, and dual inline memory modules (DIMMs).

- [Printer-driver autoconfiguration](#)
- [Bidirectional communication](#)
- [Enterprise AutoConfiguration](#)
- [Update Now](#)
- [HP Web Jetadmin](#)

Printer-driver autoconfiguration

 **NOTE:** The 64-bit operating systems do not support printer-driver autoconfiguration.

Automatic discovery and printer-driver configuration through bidirectional communication occurs in the following circumstances:

- When a printer driver is installed by using Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC)
- When the **Update Now** feature is used for a printer driver that is already installed

However, as shown in the following table, printer-driver auto configuration and EAC are *not* available in 32-bit Windows operating systems over a direct connection when the printing-system software is installed by using the Add Printer Wizard. Direct connection is a parallel or USB port connection.

Table 2-2 Availability of automatic discovery and printer- driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows

Connection type	Add Printer Wizard	HP DIU
Network	Yes	Yes
Direct connection	No	Yes

Bidirectional communication

In environments that support bidirectional communication, the computer communicates with the product during installation, determines the physical configuration, and then configures the printer driver accordingly.

Bidirectional communication is the capability of the product to respond to data inquiries from the computer, such as inquiries regarding the type of print media that is available and the accessories that are connected to the product. Bidirectional communication depends on the network operating system and on the type of connection that exists between the computer and the product. If the connection does not have this capability, the product can accept commands but cannot respond to data inquiries from the host computer.

Enterprise AutoConfiguration

Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC) uses bidirectional communication to provide autoconfiguration functionality for installation of the printer driver over a network, whether you use the installer on the Admin CD or the Add Printer Wizard to install the printer driver. Printer-driver installation that includes EAC is configured with the same settings as the physical configuration of the product. Configuration occurs without user interaction.

If bidirectional-communication software has been installed previously, EAC is not activated, and the pre-existing bidirectional-communication software is used to configure the printer driver.

If bidirectional communication software has not been installed, EAC installs bidirectional-communication software that allows it to communicate with the product and automatically match the printer driver with the product configuration. EAC is activated during installation of the printer driver or whenever the **Update Now** feature is used.

If the product configuration changes after installation, the printer driver can be automatically updated by using the **Update Now** feature in environments that support bidirectional communication.

Update Now

If the product configuration changes after installation, the printer driver can be automatically updated by using the **Update Now** feature in environments that support bidirectional communication. For example, if the product is installed and an optional paper-handling accessory is added later, use **Update Now** to query the product and update the printer-driver settings to match the new product configuration.

The **Update Now** feature automatically updates the registry and changes the configuration information that appears on the **Device Settings** tab of the HP PCL 6 printer driver.

To activate **Update Now**, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**, and then do one of the following:

Windows 2000: Select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

-or-

Windows Server 2003 and Windows XP Professional: Select **Settings**, and then select **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

Windows XP Home: Click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Other Hardware** icon.

-or-

Windows Vista: Click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Printing Preferences**.
4. Click **Device Settings**.
5. If necessary, click **Installable Options** to expand it and show the options.

6. In the **Automatic Configuration** drop-down menu, select **Update Now**.
7. Click **OK** to save the setting.

HP Web Jetadmin

HP Web Jetadmin is a software architecture and set of tools for customizing and distributing HP printing-system software in managed corporate printing environments. Using HP Web Jetadmin, information technology (IT) administrators in corporate and enterprise environments can preconfigure the printing and product defaults for HP printer drivers before installing the printer drivers in the network environment.

HP Web Jetadmin is most beneficial when configuring printer drivers for multiple workstations or print servers for print queues that share the same configuration. Two types of features can be configured:

- Product settings
- Printing-preferences settings

HP Web Jetadmin configures the printer driver to match the accessories that are installed on the product, or to match the settings that IT administrators make in the configuration .CFG file (for example, optional trays, total amount of memory, or job-storage settings).

The preconfiguration process consists of three steps:

- Printer-driver acquisition
- Printer-driver preconfiguration
- Printer-driver installation and deployment

These steps can be accomplished in different ways, depending on the tool that is being used to define the configuration.

Printer-driver preconfiguration is supported through four tools. All four are designed with the same basic user-interface (UI) controls for interacting with the .CFG file, but are packaged differently, either to support established product installation workflows or to allow the user to deploy and install the printer driver. The following tools support printer-driver preconfiguration:

- **HP Driver Configuration Editor.** The HP Driver Configuration Editor is a small standalone Windows-based software program that administrators can use to open the .CFG file that is associated with a particular printer driver and make modifications that are applied when that printer driver is installed on the host computer. Use it in environments that have an established process for deploying printer drivers. It is used in the same way as any ordinary Windows-based software program.

The HP Driver Configuration Editor is available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/hpdpc

- **HP Web Jetadmin V10.0.** HP Web Jetadmin can create and edit printer queues in supported Windows operating systems. HP Web Jetadmin customizes printer drivers for the queues. Refer to the *HP Web Jetadmin User Guide* for information on preconfiguring drivers by using HP Web Jetadmin.

HP Web Jetadmin is available at the following Web site:

<http://www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin>

- **Customization Utility.** The Customization Utility enables an IT administrator to preconfigure the printer drivers when customizing the installation for a silent install.

For detailed information about customizing printer drivers with the Customization Utility, see the *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide*, which is available on the Admin CD.


- **HP Driver Deployment Utility.** The HP Driver Deployment Utility (DDU) was created to simplify the deployment of printer drivers onto a client PC. It is a simple utility that packages the driver files, and the code needed to deploy them, into 2 files: an .EXE and a .CAB. These files are run on the client PC to copy the driver files to the Windows driver store, and for network packages, to install the printer. The DDU also allows for preconfiguration of the driver.

For detailed information about using the HP Driver Deployment Utility, see the *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide*, available on the Admin CD.

- [Configurable settings](#)
- [Continuous export](#)

Configurable settings

The following PCL 6 printer-driver features can be preconfigured. Lockable features, which can be locked to prevent end users from changing the setting, have the word **<Lock>** at the end of their respective descriptions.

 **NOTE:** Some selections and options, such as the **Finishing Accessory** option, may depend on the device setting that has been selected.

Printing Preferences tab

- **Print on Both Sides (duplex):** The options are **True** or **False**. **<Lock>**
- **Orientation:** The options are **Portrait**, **Landscape**, **Rotated Portrait**, or **Rotated Landscape**.
- **Print in Grayscale:** The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**. **<Lock>**
- **Print Quality:** The options are **1200 x 600** or **Image REt 3600**.
- **Color Options:** The options are **Automatic** or **Manual**.
- **RGB Color:** The options are **Default (sRGB)**, **Photo (sRGB)**, **Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)**, **None**, or **Custom Profile**.
- **Paper Size:** See the drop-down list associated with this feature.
- **Media Type:** The options include all of the media types that the product supports. **<Lock>**
- **Services:** The options are either **Disabled** or **Enabled**.
 - **Device Services:** The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.
 - Print color usage job log:** The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.
 - Device and Supplies status:** The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.
 - **Internet Services:** The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.
 - Check for driver updates:** The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.
 - Support and troubleshooting:** The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.

Color printing access/usage: The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.

Product manuals: The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.

Online diagnostic tools: The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.

Show me how: The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.

Shop for Supplies: The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.

- **Paper Source:** The options are **Printer Auto Select, Manual Feed (Tray 1), Tray 1, Tray 2, or Tray 3** (if installed, under **Device Settings**).<Lock>

Advanced Features The following advanced features are also available:

- **Pages per Sheet:** The options are **1, 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16**.
- **Booklet Printing:** The options are **Off, Left Edge Binding, or Right Edge Binding**.
- **Send True Type As Bitmap:** The options are **True or False**.
- **Print Document On:** The options are **True or False**.
- **Scale to Fit:** The options are **True or False**.
- **Percent of Normal Size:** The options are **Enter % or 25-400**.
- **Watermarks:** The options are **None, Confidential, Draft, or Sample**.
- **Copies:** The options are **1 or (Enter Number)**.
- **PostScript Language Level:** The options are **1, 2 or 3**.

Device Settings tab

- **Tray 3:** The options are **Installed** or **Not Installed**.
- **Allow Manual Duplexing:** The options are **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- **Duplex Unit:** The options are **Installed** or **Not Installed**.
- **Mopier Enabled:** The options are **Installed** or **Not Installed**.
- **Printer Hard-Disk:** The options are **Installed** or **Not Installed**.
- **Printer Alert Notification Settings:** The options are **Show for Every Print Job, Show for Device Errors and Warnings, Show for Device Errors (printing stops), or Disabled**.


This advanced feature also contains the following sub-features:

- **Device Query Interval:** The options are **Normal** or **Minimize Network Traffic**.
- **Access HP Online Product Support:** The drop-down menu options are **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- **Shop for Supplies:** The options are **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- **Job Storage:** The options are **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

When a feature is locked, the selected default option is the only option that is available to users. Generally, the feature is unavailable in the printer-driver UI after it has been locked.

Continuous export

The term *continuous export* refers to the ability of the printer driver to copy the latest printer-driver settings to the working copy of the preconfiguration file. Using this feature, the exported values can be transferred when a compatible version of the printer driver is used to upgrade the printer driver. For instance, if the orientation is set to **Landscape** in a printer driver that was originally installed in Windows 2000, then the orientation setting automatically remains **Landscape** when the operating system is upgraded to Windows XP or Windows Vista. The continuous export feature functions transparently from the user's perspective and works only between printer drivers of identical models.

 **NOTE:** Not all of the printer-driver components can be exported; however, the exportable components are always the same as the components that can be preconfigured.

HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool

Use the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool, a Web-based diagnostic software program, to determine whether the correct and most current printer driver for the product is in use. Use the following steps to gain access to the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool:

1. Open a Web browser.
2. Go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/drivercheck

When the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool runs, the products that are currently installed on the computer appear in a list. The tool gathers information about the products, drivers, and system setup in order to diagnose the software driver configuration and check the printer driver.

When the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool is open, select the HP product that you want to check. The tool verifies whether the latest printer driver is being used, provides feedback if an incorrect printer driver is being used, and indicates whether an updated printer-driver version is available. Click the latest printer-driver version to download and install it.

The data that the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool gathers is stored anonymously so that HP can analyze and continuously improve its diagnostic tools. No private data is gathered from the computer.

Advanced color use

- [Restrict color use](#)
- [International Color Consortium \(ICC\) profiles](#)
-

Restrict color use

This product includes a **Restrict Color** setting that a network administrator can enable to conserve color toner. If you are unable to print in color, see your network administrator.

Restrict color printing and copying from the control panel

For information about how to restrict color printing and how to copy from the control panel, see the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series User Guide; or, go to www.hp.com/go/coloraccess.

International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles

HP provides cyan-magenta-yellow-black (CMYK) and standard red-green-blue (sRGB) International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles with the product. The CMYK profile can only be used with a postscript printer driver; the sRGB profile can be used with any of the product printer drivers. The profiles are available at the following HP Web site under software downloads:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp


The ICC profiles describe the way that color will be interpreted in the default CMYK and RGB modes. These profiles can be used for color conversions in a color-managed workflow. The sRGB profile matches the default RGB mode (sRGB), which is enabled with the **Default (sRGB)** or **Color** setting in either a PCL or postscript printer driver. The product interprets CMYK data according to the Specifications for Web Offset Publications (SWOP) simulation when **Default CMYK+** is the selected **CMYK Color** setting in the postscript printer driver, and a more accurate SWOP rendering can be produced by selecting the **SWOP** setting. This standard defines how a particular set of CMYK ink colors should behave. Emulation for Dainippon Press (DIC) and Euro-standard CMYK inks used in Asia and Europe are also available and can be selected from the printer driver.

Most software programs that support the use of PANTONE® colors for graphic objects will include the PANTONE name in the postscript output along with the color values that are assigned to the object. For best results, select an application that uses PANTONE palette in a CMYK workspace and print with the postscript printer driver with the SWOP inkset emulation selected.

When **SWOP** is selected as the **CMYK Color** setting, these CMYK values provide a good reproduction of the PANTONE 4C spot-color simulations.

PANTONE provides product- and software-specific palettes for some HP Color LaserJet products. Using the custom colors in these palettes can provide an alternative match to the 4C spot-color simulation. However, files that use these palettes are not portable to other products.

Vector graphics, such as company logos that are created in PANTONE Application Palettes, can be imported into Microsoft Word, PowerPoint, or other Microsoft Office software programs. To import, the color program must create an encapsulated postscript (.EPS) file of the image. By using the **Insert file** function, you can then import the file into the Office document.

 **NOTE:** Cutting and pasting from the clipboard does *not* work. These steps do not preserve the PANTONE name or the CMYK palette value.

Embedded Web Server

The product is equipped with the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS), which provides access to information about product and network activities. This information appears in a Web browser, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer, Netscape Navigator, Apple Safari, or Firefox.

The HP EWS resides on the product. It is not loaded on a network server.

The HP EWS provides an interface to the product that anyone who has a network-connected computer and a standard Web browser can use. No special software is installed or configured, but you must have a supported Web browser on the computer. To gain access to the HP EWS, type the IP address for the product in the address line of the browser.

For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the HP EWS, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide*, which is available on the Admin CD.

HP Web Jetadmin

HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool for HP Jetdirect-connected printers within your intranet, and it should be installed only on the network administrator's computer.

To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin and for the latest list of supported host systems, visit www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin.

When installed on a host server, a Windows client can gain access to HP Web Jetadmin by using a supported Web browser (such as Microsoft® Internet Explorer 4.x or Netscape Navigator 4.x or later) to navigate to the HP Web Jetadmin host.

Scan Setup Wizard

The Scan Setup Wizard allows users to scan documents from the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series and store them in a folder on a server or network computer. Then users who have proper credentials to access the network folder can retrieve the documents, save the documents to their computers, and print them.

Before the Scan Setup Wizard can be used, Send to Folder must be enabled on the HP EWS. To do this, click on the HP EWS **Digital Sending** tab and select **Send to Folder**. On the **Send to Folder** screen, click the check boxes next to **Enable Send to Folder** and **Enable Scan Setup Wizard**. For more details on using the HP EWS, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

If **Enable Send to Folder** and **Enable Scan Setup Wizard** are not enabled in the HP EWS, an error message pop-up will be displayed during the **Search for Device** step.


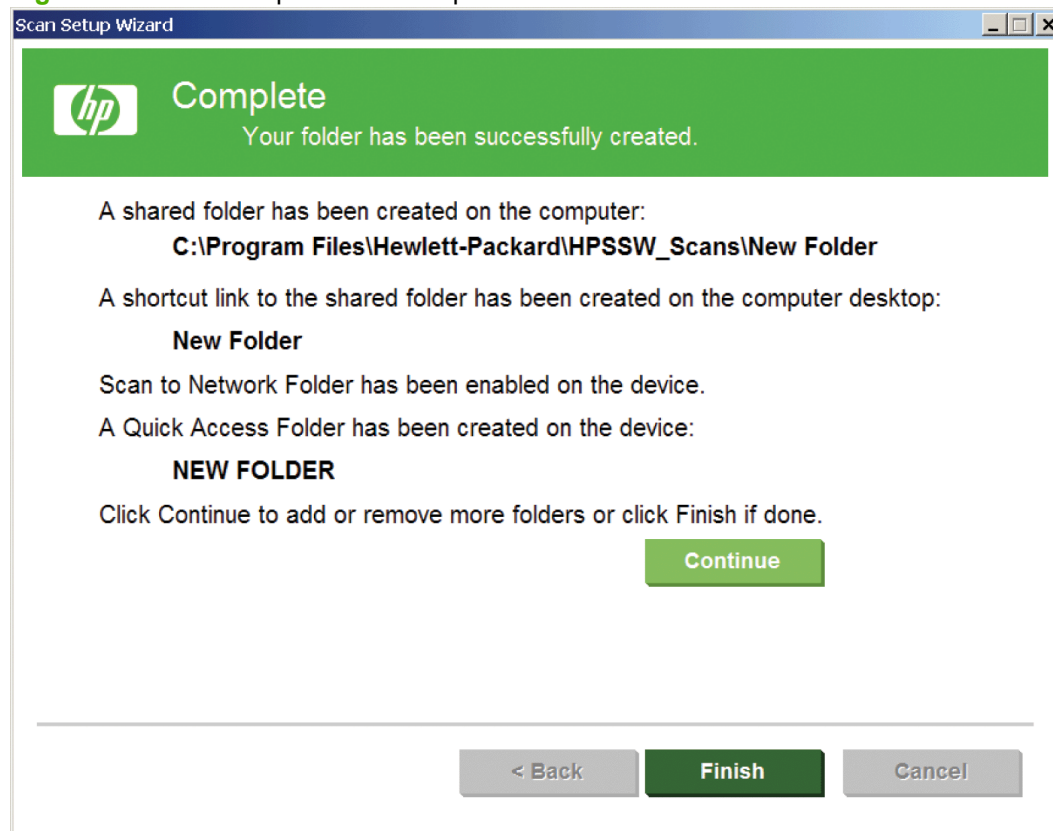
 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series must be connected via the network to use the Scan Setup Wizard.

Figure 2-6 Scan Setup Wizard–Complete screen




E-mail Setup Wizard

The **E-mail Setup Wizard** button on the Admin CD Browser launches (by Web link or directly from the CD) a wizard that assists in configuring the E-mail settings on the MFP. The MFP must have a network connection to use the E-mail Setup Wizard.

MFP Send Fax Driver

You can use the HP Send Fax Driver to send faxes from your computer through the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series if the optional Analog Fax Accessory 500 is installed. After the HP Send Fax Driver is installed, it can be accessed and used in the same manner as a printer driver.

 **NOTE:** For complete information about using the HP Send Fax Driver, see the *HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Send Fax Driver Guide*, which can be downloaded from www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp, click the **Manuals** option from the left navigation bar.

Font support

- [Basic Windows fonts](#)
- [Default printing-system fonts](#)

Basic Windows fonts

Supported Windows operating systems includes the following basic fonts, which can be used with any HP product:

- Arial
- Arial Bold
- Arial Bold Italic
- Arial Italic
- Courier New
- Courier New Bold
- Courier New Bold Italic
- Courier New Italic
- Symbol
- Times New Roman
- Times New Roman Bold
- Times New Roman Bold Italic
- Times New Roman Italic
- Wingdings

Default printing-system fonts

The following default fonts are installed with the printing-system software.

Table 2-3 Default fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus Extra Bold	Regular	ALBR85W.TTF
Albertus Medium	Regular	ALBR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Regular	OLVR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Bold	OLVR75W.TTF
Antique Olive	Italic	OLVR56W.TTF
CG Omega	Regular	CGOR45W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold	CGOR65W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold Italic	CGOR66W.TTF

Table 2-3 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
CG Omega	Italic	CGOR46W.TTF
CG Times	Regular	CGTR45W.TTF
CG Times	Bold	CGTR65W.TTF
CG Times	Bold Italic	CGTR66W.TTF
CG Times	Italic	CGTR46W.TTF
Clarendon Condensed	Bold	CLAR67W.TTF
Coronet	Regular	CORONET.TTF
CourierPS	Regular	CPSR45W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold	CPSR65W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold Oblique	CPSR66W.TTF
CourierPS	Oblique	CPSR46W.TTF
Garamond	Antiqua	GARR45W.TTF
Garamond	Halbfett	GARR65W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv	GARR46W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv Halbfett	GARR66W.TTF
Helvetica®	Regular	HELR45W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold	HELR65W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold Oblique	HELR66W.TTF
Helvetica	Oblique	HELR46W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Regular	HELR47W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold	HELR67W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold Oblique	HELR68W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Oblique	HELR48W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book	AVGR45W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book Oblique	AVGR46W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Regular	AVGR65W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Oblique	AVGR66W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Regular	BOKR35W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Italic	BOKR36W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Regular	BOKR75W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Italic	BOKR76W.TTF
ITC Zapf Chancery	Medium Italic	CHANC___.TTF
ITC Zapf Dingbats	Regular	DINGS___.TTF
Letter Gothic	Regular	LETR45W.TTF

Table 2-3 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Letter Gothic	Bold	LETR65W.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	LETR46W.TTF
Marigold	Regular	MARIGOLD.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold	NCSR75W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold Italic	NCSR76W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Italic	NCSR56W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Roman	NCSR55W.TTF
Palatino	Bold	PALR65W.TTF
Palatino	Bold Italic	PALR66W.TTF
Palatino	Italic	PALR46W.TTF
Palatino	Roman	PALR45W.TTF
SymbolPS	Regular	SYMP5___.TTF
Times*	Bold	TIMR65W.TTF
Times	Bold Italic	TIMR66W.TTF
Times	Italic	TIMR46W.TTF
Times	Roman	TIMR45W.TTF
Univers	Bold	UNVR65W.TTF
Univers	Bold Italic	UNVR66W.TTF
Univers	Medium	UNVR55W.TTF
Univers	Medium Italic	UNVR56W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold	UNVR67W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold Italic	UNVR68W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium	UNVR57W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium Italic	UNVR58W.TTF

The following additional PS emulation fonts are also available on the CD.

Table 2-4 Additional PS emulation fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus MT	Regular	PS_12639.TTF
Albertus MT	Italic	PS_12640.TTF
Albertus MT Lt	Regular	PS_14530.TTF
Antique Olive CompactPS	Regular	PS_11120.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Regular	PS_11119.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Bold	PS_11118.TTF

Table 2-4 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Antique Olive Roman	Italic	PS_11846.TTF
Apple Chancery	Italic	PS_24516.TTF
Bodoni Poster	Regular	PS_12704.TTF
Bodoni PosterCompressed	Regular	PS_14508.TTF
BodoniPS	Regular	PS_12581.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold	PS_12585.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold Italic	PS_12586.TTF
BodoniPS	Italic	PS_12582.TTF
Candid	Regular	PS_24517.TTF
Chicago	Regular	PS_24518.TTF
Clarendon Light	Regular	PS_14513.TTF
ClarendonPS	Regular	PS_10269.TTF
ClarendonPS	Bold	PS_12968.TTF
Cooper Black	Regular	PS_10369.TTF
Cooper Black	Italic	PS_10370.TTF
Copperplate32bc	Regular	PS_14514.TTF
Copperplate33bc	Regular	PS_14515.TTF
CoronetPS	Italic	PS_10249.TTF
Eurostile	Regular	PS_10267.TTF
Eurostile Bold	Regular	PS_10268.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Bold	PS_14512.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Regular	PS_14511.TTF
Geneva	Regular	PS_24509.TTF
GillSans	Regular	PS_13872.TTF
GillSans	Bold	PS_13874.TTF
GillSans	Bold Italic	PS_13875.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Regular	PS_14053.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Bold	PS_14054.TTF
GillSans ExtraBold	Regular	PS_14051.TTF
GillSans	Italic	PS_13873.TTF
GillSans Light	Italic	PS_13871.TTF
GillSans Light	Regular	PS_13870.TTF
Goudy	Bold	PS_12544.TTF
Goudy	Bold Italic	PS_10695.TTF

Table 2-4 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Goudy	Regular	PS_12542.TTF
Goudy ExtraBold	Regular	PS_12545.TTF
Goudy	Italic	PS_12543.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Regular	PS_14526.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold	PS_14528.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold Italic	PS_14529.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Italic	PS_14527.TTF
Hoefler Text	Regular	PS_24519.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Regular	PS_24521.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Italic	PS_24522.TTF
Hoefler Text	Italic	PS_24520.TTF
Hoefler Text Ornaments	Regular	PS_24523.TTF
Joanna MT	Regular	PS_14503.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold	PS_14505.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold Italic	PS_14506.TTF
Joanna MT	Italic	PS_14504.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	PS_13778.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Regular	PS_13777.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold	PS_13779.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold Italic	PS_13780.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Regular	PS_12675.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold	PS_12677.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold Italic	PS_12625.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Italic	PS_12623.TTF
MarigoldPS	Regular	PS_94073.TTF
Mona Lisa Recut	Regular	PS_14525.TTF
Monaco	Regular	PS_24524.TTF
New York	Regular	PS_24510.TTF
Optima	Regular	PS_12506.TTF
Optima	Bold	PS_12510.TTF
Optima	Bold Italic	PS_12511.TTF
Optima	Italic	PS_12507.TTF
Oxford	Italic	PS_14072.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Italic	PS_11546.TTF

Table 2-4 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
StempelGaramond Roman	Regular	PS_11545.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold	PS_11547.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold Italic	PS_11548.TTF
Taffy	Regular	PS_14507.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Regular	PS_13501.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold	PS_14023.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold Italic	PS_14024.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Italic	PS_13502.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold	PS_14030.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold Italic	PS_14040.TTF
Univers 55	Regular	PS_14021.TTF
Univers 55	Italic	PS_14022.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Regular	PS_14029.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Italic	PS_14039.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold	PS_13548.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Regular	PS_13547.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold Italic	PS_14481.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Italic	PS_14480.TTF

3 Install Windows printing-system components

The HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series comes with software and installers for Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh systems. For information about Macintosh software, see [Macintosh software and utilities on page 185](#). Linux and UNIX systems support the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series, and software is available on the Web. This chapter provides procedures for installing and uninstalling the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software for Windows operating systems.

- [Supported operating systems for Windows](#)
- [Windows operating system requirements](#)
- [Install overview](#)
- [Software installation types for Windows](#)
- [Installation options](#)
- [Microsoft Windows general installation overview](#)
- [Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions](#)
- [Use the MFP Send Fax Driver](#)
- [Create a network folder by using the Scan Setup Wizard](#)
- [Install documentation and optional software](#)
- [Uninstall software](#)


Supported operating systems for Windows

The HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series supports the following Windows operating systems:

- Windows 2000
- Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit)

Windows operating system requirements

- **Windows 2000:** 333-MHz processor with 64 MB RAM
- **Windows XP:** 333-MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- **Windows Server 2003:** 550-MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- **Windows Vista:** 800-MHz processor with 512 MB RAM
- **Windows Server 2008:** 1-GHz processor (x86) or 1.4-GHz processor (x64) with 512 MB RAM

 **NOTE:** All Windows operating systems also require a CD-ROM, DVD drive, or Internet connection to install the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software, as well as either a dedicated universal serial bus (USB 1.1 or 2.0) connectivity port or network connection to communicate with the MFP.

NOTE: Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT are not supported.

Install overview

The software for the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series comes from the Admin CD. The Setup program installs the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software from the Admin CD onto the hard disk and updates Windows files.

For all supported operating systems, each install option presents a series of screens that guide you through the installation process.

Software installation types for Windows

The HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software can be installed in the following ways:

- **HP Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU):** Recommended, included on the Admin CD and from downloaded drivers available at www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp.
- Microsoft Add Printer Wizard

Installation options

The HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software can be installed when the product is connected to the computer in the following configurations:

- Directly connected via a USB port
- Connected via the network

Microsoft Windows general installation overview

HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software Admin CD for Windows systems

In supported Windows environments (Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, Windows XP, and Windows Vista), insert the printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive to open an interactive CD Browser. Use the CD Browser to install the drivers and related components, and to gain access to online user documentation, an Installer Customization Utility, and optional HP software.

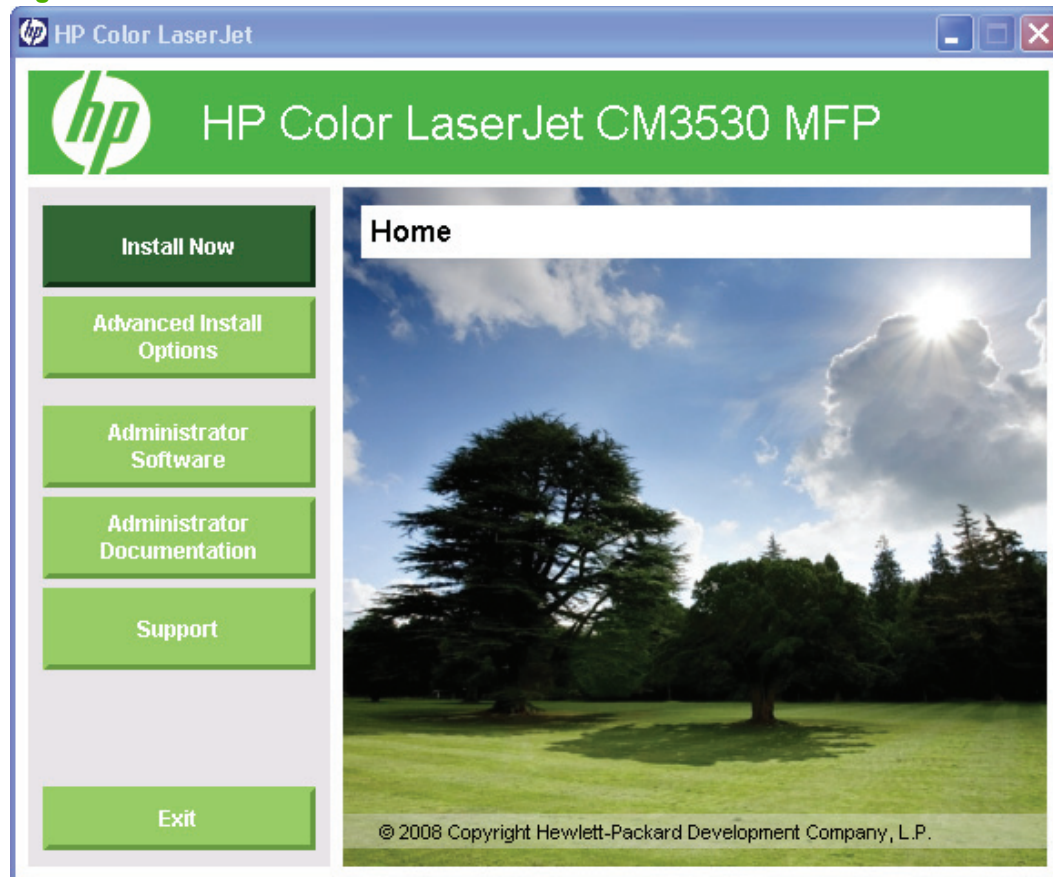
 **NOTE:** The user documents are on the User CD.

If the installation screen does not appear when you insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive, follow these steps to open the CD Browser:


1. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
2. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
3. Click the **OK** button.

The main screen of the software CD Browser contains installation and documentation options in the left panel. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel. The following figure shows the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software CD.


Figure 3-1 Admin CD Browser – Main screen



Install Now

 **NOTE:** For detailed installation instructions, see [Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions on page 77](#). For a general overview of the installation process, see either [Install Windows software for direct connections on page 75](#) or [Install Windows software for networks on page 76](#).

Click the **Install Now** button to start the HP Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU). By default, the HP DIU installs the HP PCL6 printer driver, the driver recommended for most users. Screen fonts are also installed.

 **NOTE:** For more information about HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printer drivers, see [HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows on page 129](#).

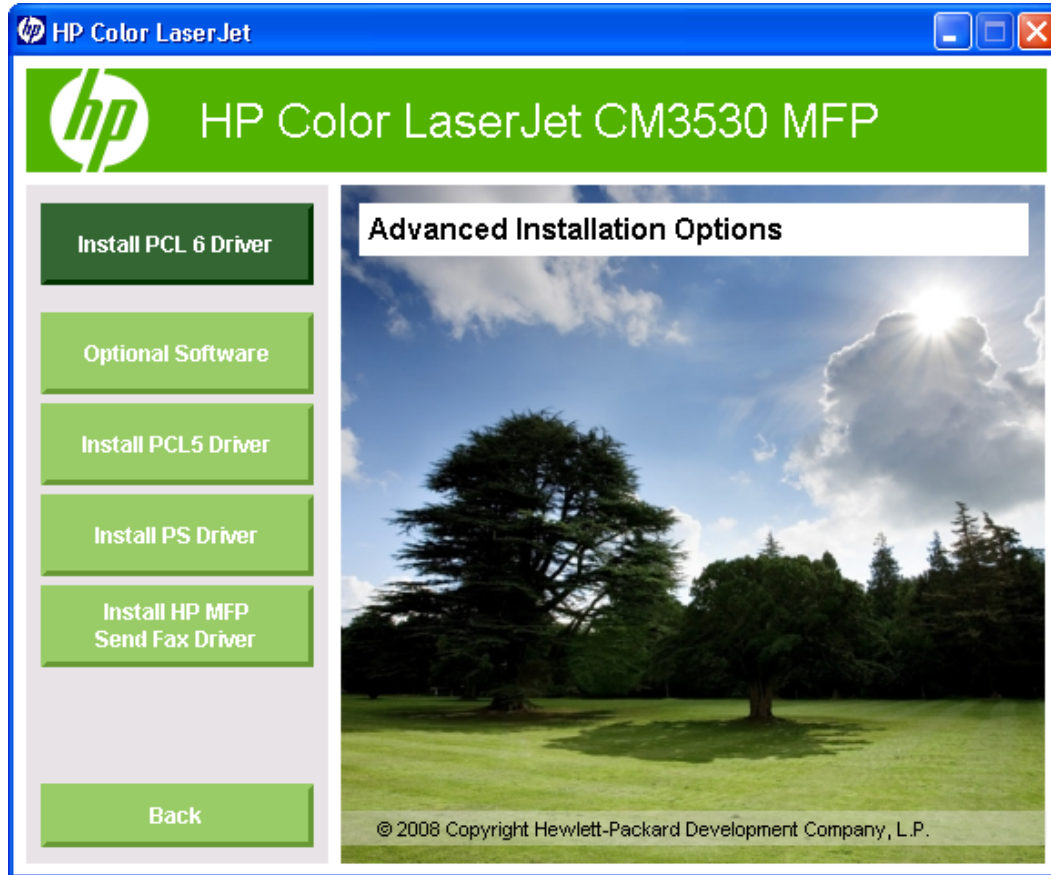
Advanced Install Options

Click the **Advanced Install Options** button to open the **Advanced Installation Options** screen.

- Click the **Install PCL 6 Driver** button to install the HP PCL 6 printer driver.
- Click the **Optional Software** button to install HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Screen Fonts.
- Click the **Install PCL 5 Driver** button to install the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver (includes an installer). This driver is also available for download from www.hp.com/go/upd

- Click the **Install PS Driver** button to install the HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver. This driver is also available for download from www.hp.com/go/upd
- Click the **Install HP MFP Send Fax Driver** button to install the Send Fax Driver. (Network connected printers only.)

Figure 3-2 Admin CD Browser – Advanced Installation Options



Administrator Software

Click the **Administrator Software** button to view a list of HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series support tools for network administrators.

- Click the **Scan Setup Wizard** button to create a network folder and to learn more about the Scan Setup Wizard.
- Click the **E-mail Setup Wizard** button to launch a wizard, by Web link or directly from the CD, for configuring E-Mail settings on the MFP.
- Click the **HP Universal Print Driver Portal** button for more information and to download a single driver that can be used to print to virtually any HP product. This button provides a Web link to the UPD page on hp.com.
- Click the **Driver Deployment Utility** button to launch the HP Driver Deployment Utility (DDU). The DDU packages drivers and the code to deploy them onto client PCs. The DDU also supports driver preconfiguration.

- Click the **HP Web Jetadmin** button for more information and to download a printer management tool designed for network administrators.
- Click the **HP Easy Printer Care** button for more information and to download a utility to manage up to 15 products.

Click the **Back** button to return to the main CD Browser screen.

Figure 3-3 Admin CD Browser – Administrator Software screen



Administrator Documentation

Click the **Administrator Documentation** button to view HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series support guides for network administrators.

- Click the **Install Notes** button to view the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Printing-System Install Notes.
- Click the **Fax Install Notes** button to view the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Fax Install Notes.
- Click the **Embedded Web Server Guide** button to view the *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.
- Click the **HP Jetdirect Guide** button to view network installation and troubleshooting information.
- Click the **HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide** button to find out how to create and deploy a printer driver with customized settings.

Click the **Back** button to return to the main CD Browser screen.

Figure 3-4 Admin CD Browser–Administrator Documentation screen



Support

Click the **Support** button to find support information for the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series on HP Web sites.

- Click the **Product Registration** button to register the product online.
- Click the **Color Printing Access and Usage** button for information about color printing.
- Click the **Supplies** button for information about ordering supplies for the product.
- Click the **Product Information** button to open the HP Instant Support Web page for product support information and updates.
- Click the **hp.com** button to go to the HP home Web page for information about products and services, support, drivers, and HP online stores.

Click the **Back** button to return to the main CD Browser screen.

Figure 3-5 Admin CD Browser–Support screen



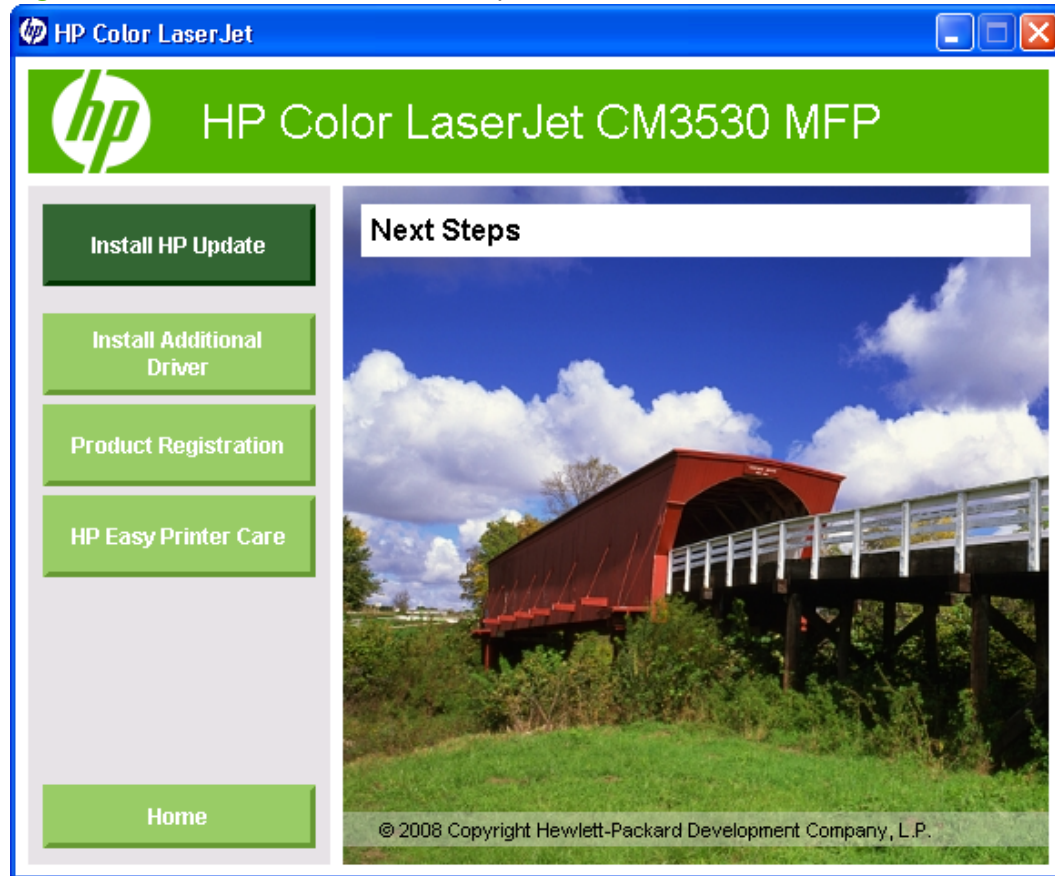
Next Steps

The **Next Steps** screen appears after you install a printer driver. The following options are available:

- Click the **Install HP Update** button to install a utility that provides software and driver updates for the product.
- Click the **Install Additional Driver** button, and then select a driver to launch the product printing-system software installation.
- Click the **Product Registration** button to register your product online.
- Click the **HP Easy Printer Care** button for more information and to download a utility to manage up to 15 products.

Click the **Home** button to return to the main CD Browser screen.

Figure 3-6 Admin CD Browser–Next Steps screen



Install Windows software for direct connections

 **NOTE:** For detailed installation instructions, see [Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions on page 77](#).


When installing the product software in a direct-connect environment, always install the software before connecting the USB cable (the software installer will prompt you to connect the cable at the appropriate time). In addition, make sure to use a standard 2-meter USB cable.

1. Close all programs.
2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive. The installer program should open.

If the installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps:
 - a. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
 - b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
 - c. Click the **OK** button.
3. Click the **Install Now** button to install the HP PCL6 printer driver by using the HP DIU, or click the **Advanced Install Options** button to install other available drivers.
4. If you selected **Advanced Install Options**, choose a driver and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.
5. After the installation is complete, you might need to restart the computer.
6. Print a test page from any software program to make sure that the software is correctly installed.

If installation fails, reinstall the software. If this fails, check the installation notes and readme files on the product CD-ROM or on the flyer that came in the product box, or go to www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp for help or more information.

Install Windows software for networks

 **NOTE:** For detailed installation instructions, see [Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions on page 77](#).

The software on the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Admin CD supports network installation with a Microsoft network. For network installation on other operating systems, go to www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp.

The installer does not support product installation or object creation on Novell servers. It supports only direct-mode network installations between Windows computers and a product. To install the product and create objects on a Novell server, use an HP utility (such as HP Web Jetadmin) or a Novell utility (such as NWAdmin).

1. Make sure that you have administrator privileges.
2. Make sure that the HP Jetdirect print server and product are correctly connected to the network. Print a configuration page, and find the HP Jetdirect page.

To print a configuration page from the product control panel, perform the following:

- a. Touch **Administration**.
- b. Touch **Information**.
- c. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
- d. Touch **Configuration Page**.
- e. Touch **Print**.

On the HP Jetdirect page, locate the IP address that is currently configured. You might need this address to initially identify the product on your network and complete the installation.

3. Close all programs.
4. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive. The installer program should open.


If the installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps:

- a. On the **Start** menu, click **Run**.
- b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
- c. Click **OK**.
5. Click the **Install Now** button to install the HP PCL6 printer driver using the HP DIU, or click the **Advanced Install Options** button to install other available drivers.
6. If you selected **Advanced Install Options**, choose a driver and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.
7. After the installation is complete, you might need to restart the computer.
8. Print a test page from any software program to make sure that the software is correctly installed.

Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions

Install the printer driver by using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU)

A series of screens appear during installation of the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software in Windows environments.

 **NOTE:** You can return to the previous dialog box by clicking the **Back** button, or exit the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software installation by clicking the **Cancel** button.

1. Close all programs.
2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive. The software installer detects the language of the operating system, and then displays the main menu of the CD Browser program in the same language.

If the installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps:

- a. On the **Start** menu, click **Run**.
- b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
- c. Click **OK**.

3. Click the **Install Now** button to start the HP DIU.


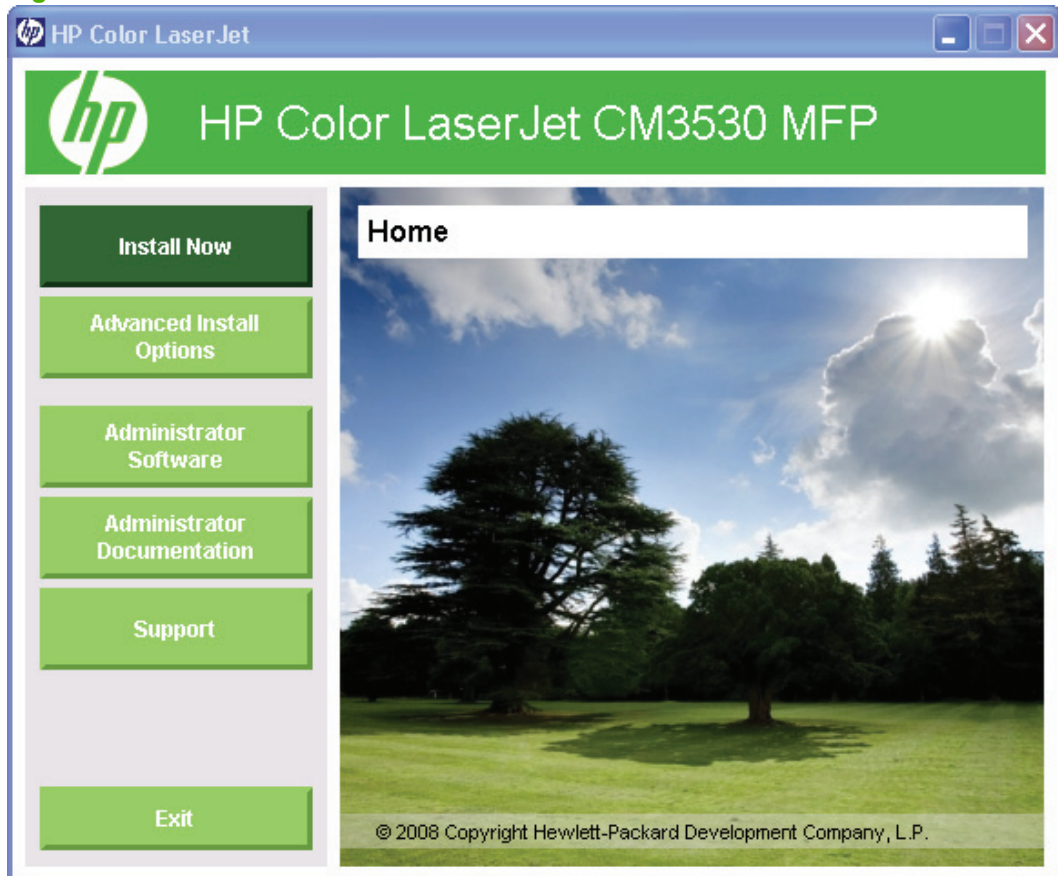
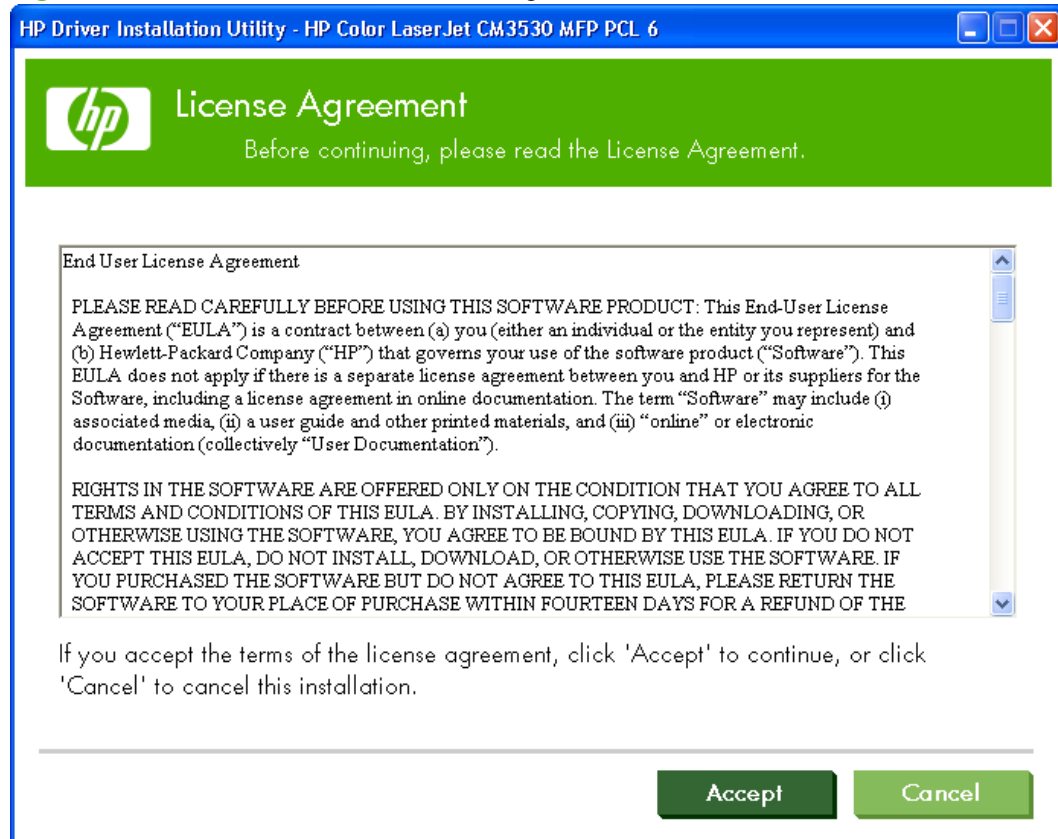
 **NOTE:** For more information about the options listed below, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series printing-system software CD for Windows systems*.

Figure 3-7 Software Installation—Initial screen



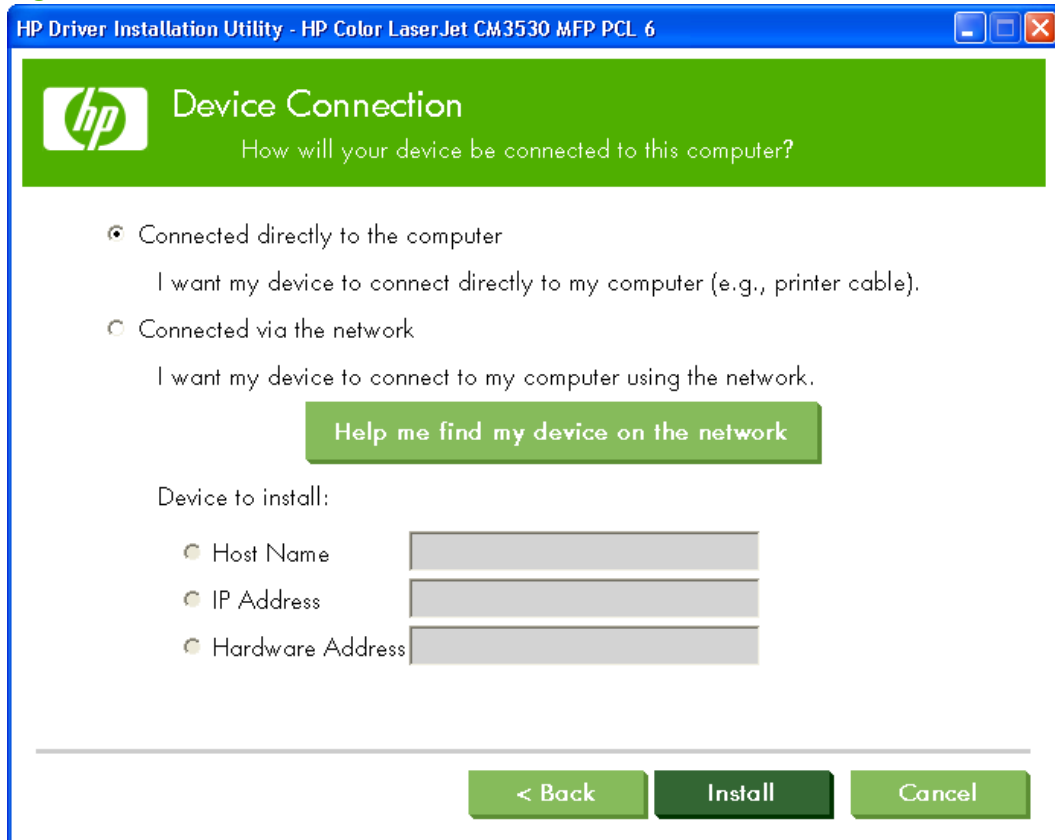
4. After reading the license agreement, click the **Accept** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-8 Software Installation–License Agreement screen




5. Select an option based on how the product will be connected to the computer.

Figure 3-9 Software Installation–Device Connection screen



- **Connected directly to the computer:** Select this option and then click the **Install** button if the product will be connected to the computer with a USB cable. Once the software is installed, the **Driver Installation Complete** screen appears.

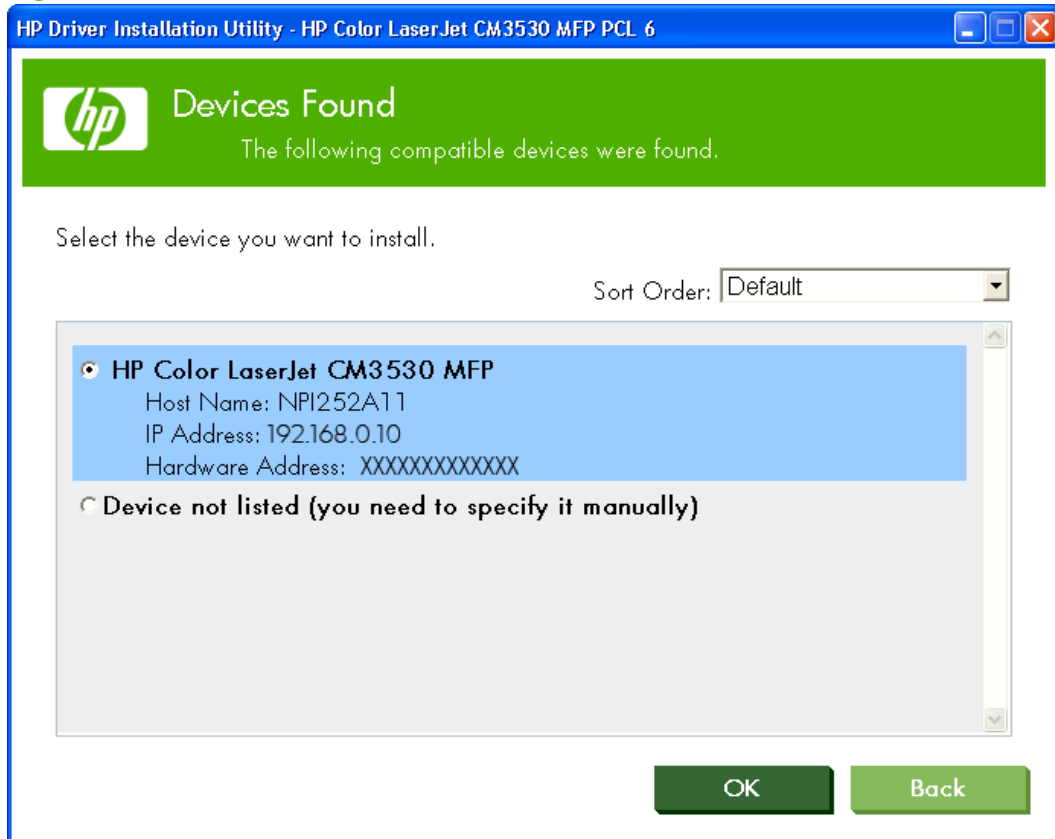
 **NOTE:** If you choose this option, the printer should not be connected to the computer until prompted during the installation process.

-or-

- **Connected via the network:** Select this option if the product will be connected to the computer with a network cable.
 - If the product's networking settings are known, you can enter either the **Host Name**, **IP Address**, or the **Hardware Address**, and then click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, the **Driver Installation Complete** screen appears.
 - If the product's network settings are not known, click the **Help me find my device on the network** button. A **Discovery in Progress** window appears. After the computer searches the network, the **Devices Found** screen appears.

6. A list of products is displayed. Select the product you want to install and then click **OK** to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-10 Software Installation–Devices Found screen



7. The network settings (**Host Name**, **IP Address**, and **Hardware Address**) for the product are displayed. Click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

Figure 3-11 Software Installation–Device Connection screen

HP Driver Installation Utility - HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP PCL 6

Device Connection

How will your device be connected to this computer?

Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

[Help me find my device on the network](#)

Device to install:

Host Name

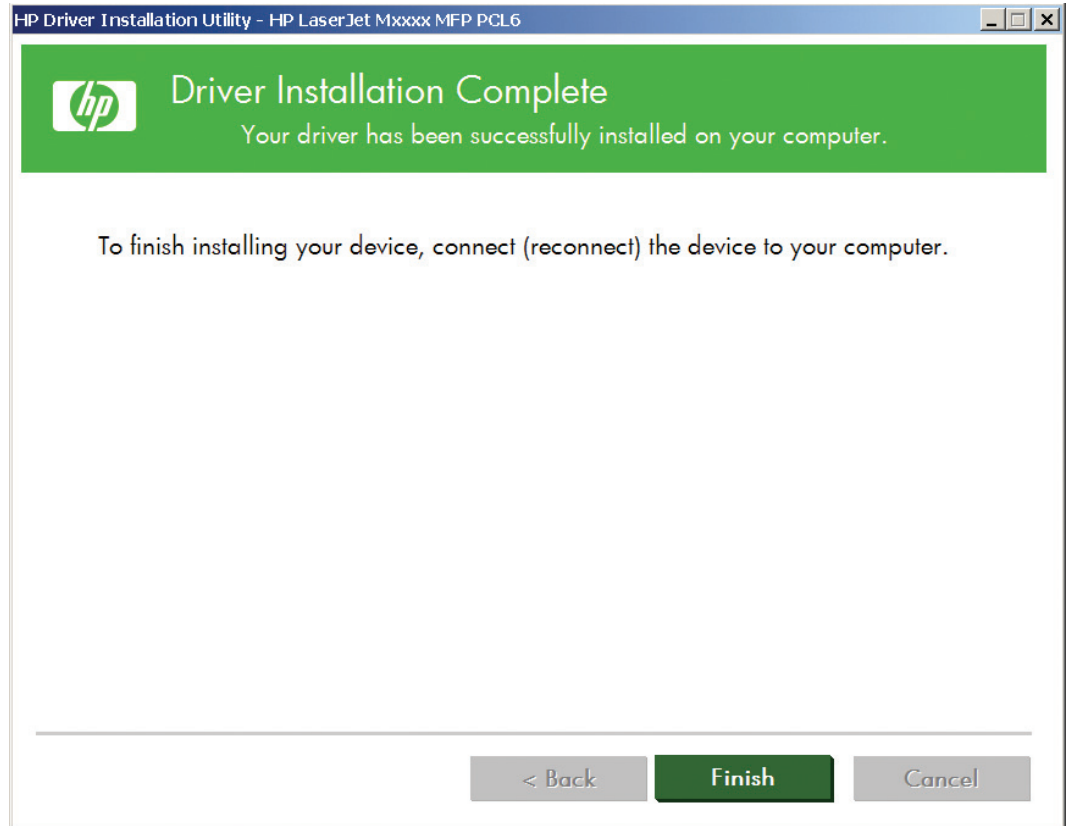
IP Address

Hardware Address

[< Back](#) [Install](#) [Cancel](#)

8. Depending on the installation method, one of the following screens appears at the conclusion of the software installation:
 - If you selected **Connected directly to the computer**, the following screen appears once the software is installed. Click **Finish** to complete the installation.

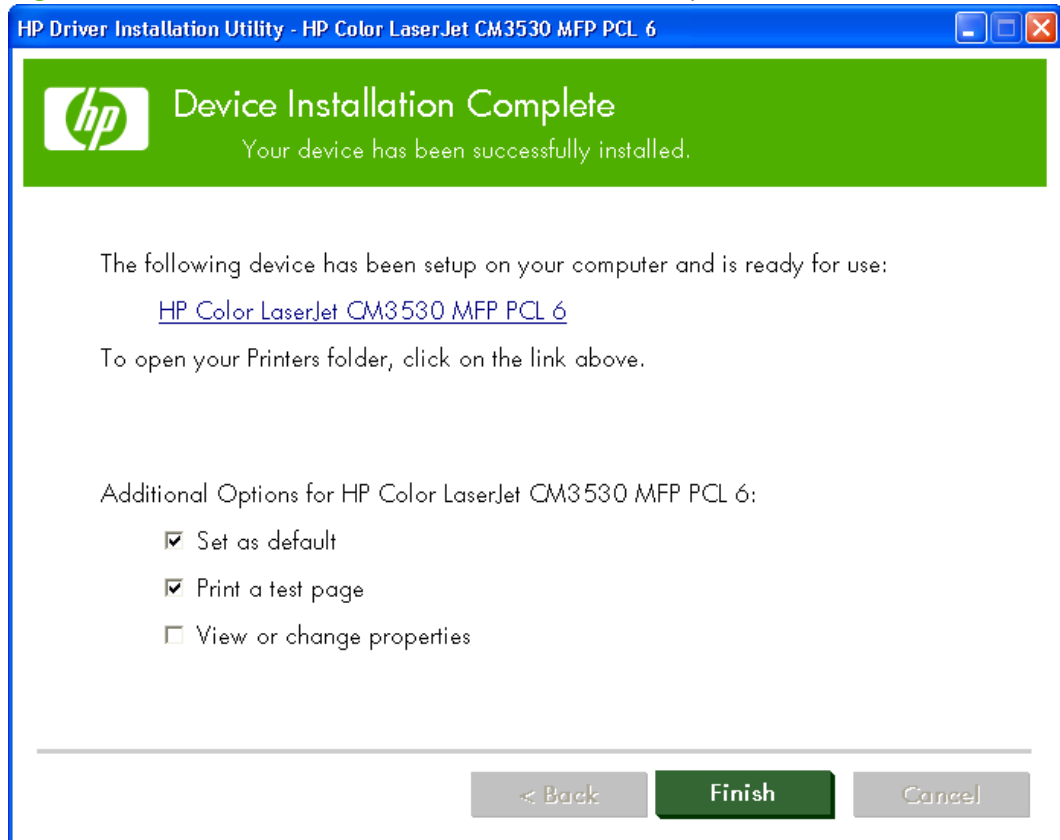
Figure 3-12 Software Installation—Driver Installation Complete screen




- If you selected **Connected via the network**, the following screen appears once the software is installed. You can make this your default product by selecting the **Set as default** check box, send a test page to the product by selecting the **Print a test page** check box, or gain access to the printer driver by selecting the **View or change properties** check box.

Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation.

Figure 3-13 Software Installation–Driver Installation Complete screen



Install the printer driver by using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard

 **NOTE:** You can return to the previous screen by clicking the **Back** button, or exit the Add Printer Wizard by clicking the **Cancel** button.

Select one of the following three options to install the printer driver by using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard:

- **Use an existing port for a direct connection:** The product is connected to the computer using a USB cable or is connected via the network without using a print server and the printer port already exists.
- **Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection:** The product is connected via the network without using a print server and the printer port does not exist.
- **Print server connection:** The product is connected via the network using a print server.

Use an existing port for a direct connection

Perform the following when the product is connected to the computer with a USB cable or when printing via the network without using a print server:

1. On the **Start** menu, click **Settings**, and then do one of the following:

Windows 2000: Click the **Printers** option.

-or-

Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003: Click the **Printers and Faxes** option.

-or-


Windows Server 2008: Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, then open the **Printers** folder.

-or-

Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click the **Printer** option.

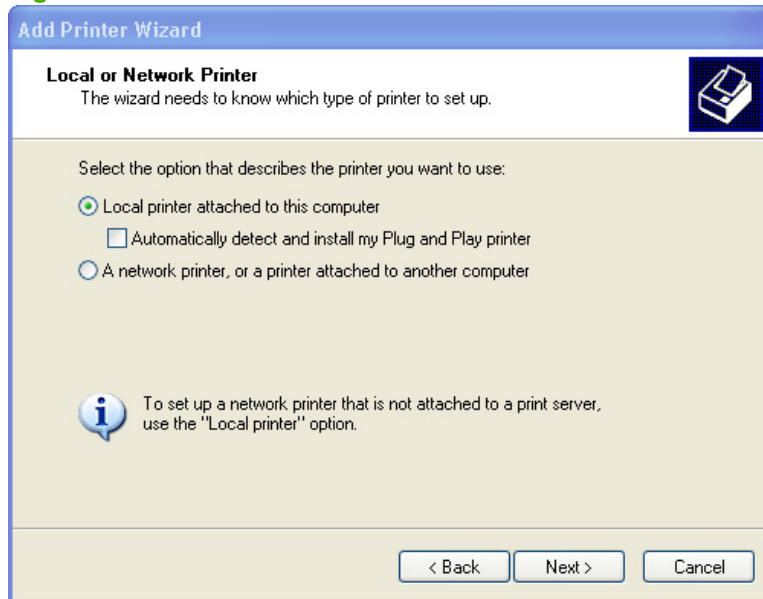
2. Click **Add a printer**. The Add Printer Wizard opens.
3. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome screen.

4. If the product is connected to the computer with a USB cable or is connected via the network without using a print server, select **Local printer attached to this computer**, and then click the **Next** button.

 **NOTE:** If you select the **Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer** check box prior to clicking the **Next** button, the computer automatically installs the printer driver.

NOTE: If the product is connected via the network using a print server, select the **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer** (Point and Print installation), and then click the **Next** button. For detailed installation instructions, see [Print server connection on page 94](#).

Figure 3-14 Add Printer Wizard–Local or Network Printer screen



5. If the product is connected to the computer with a USB cable or is connected via the network without using a print server and the printer port already exists, select **Use the following port**, select the product name, print path, or IP address of the product from the **Use the following port** drop-down list, and then click the **Next** button.


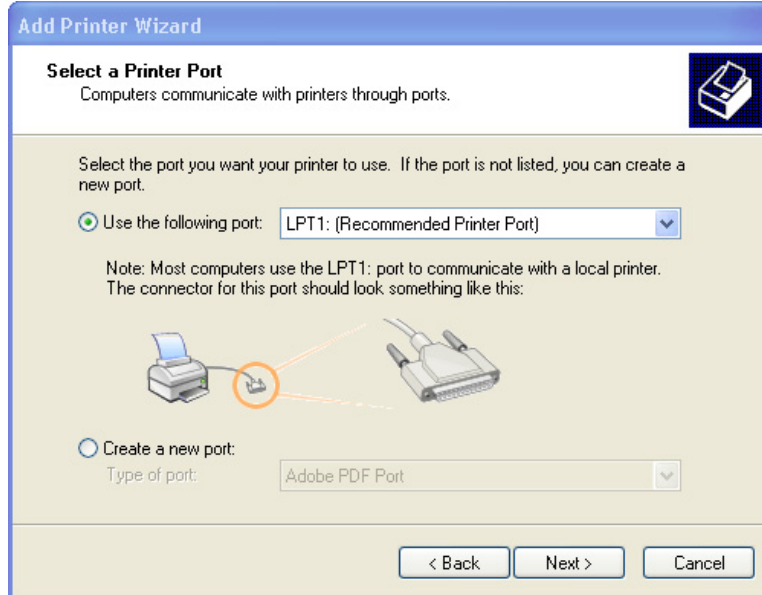
 **NOTE:** If the printer port does not appear in the **Use the following port** drop-down list, see [Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection on page 91](#). If the product is connected via the network using a print server, see [Print server connection on page 94](#).

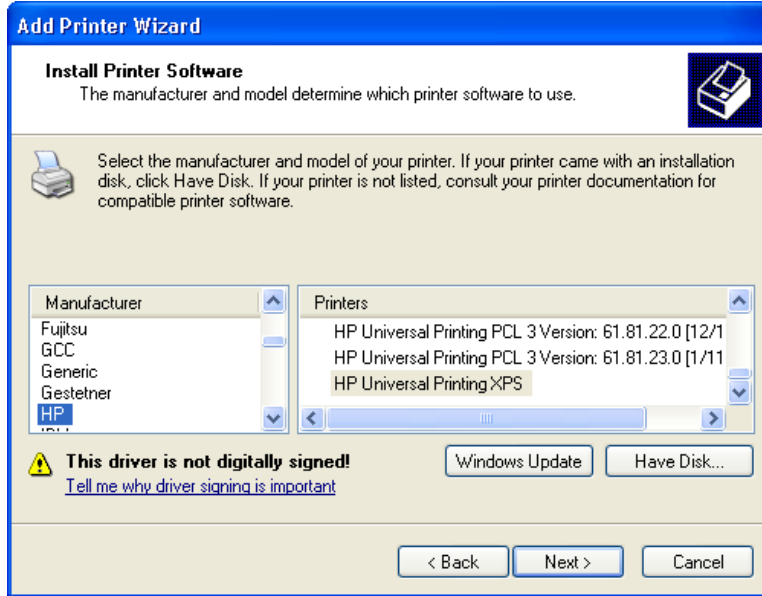
Figure 3-15 Add Printer Wizard–Select a Printer Port screen



- (Optional) Click the **Windows Update** button to display a list of drivers that can be downloaded from the Microsoft Windows Update Web site. The most recent HP drivers are available at www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp

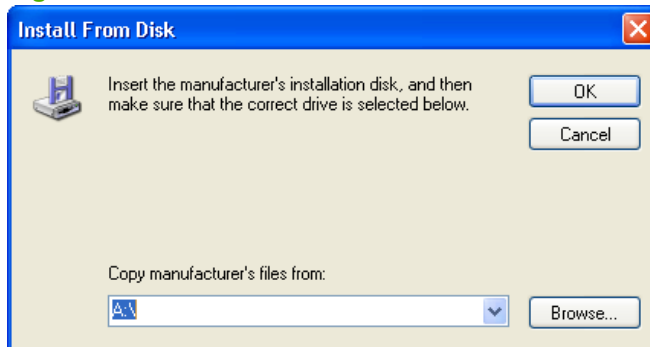
If the appropriate product model is already listed, select it and then click the **Next** button. If the product is not listed, click the **Have Disk** button to continue to the **Install From Disk** screen.

Figure 3-16 Add Printer Wizard—Install Printer Software screen



- If the correct path to the CD-ROM drive is listed in the **Copy manufacturer's files from...** text box, click **OK**. If not, click the **Browse...** button to continue to the **Locate File** screen.

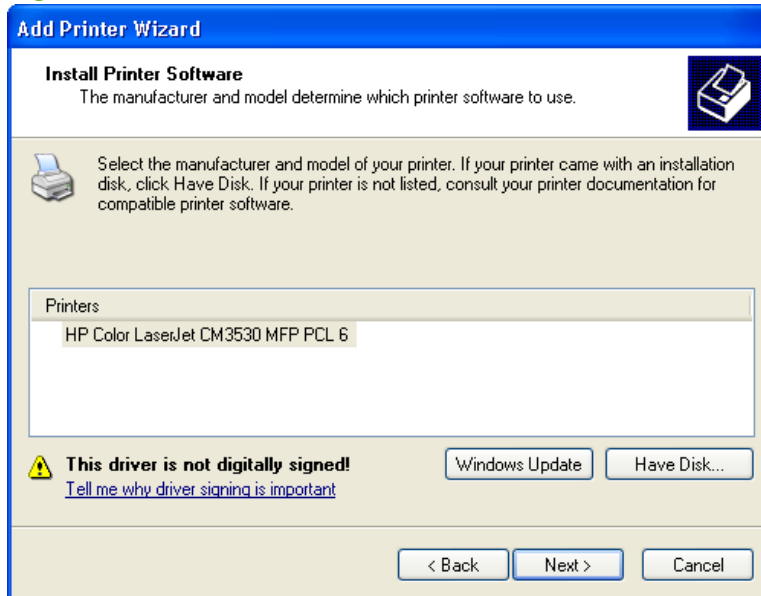
Figure 3-17 Add Printer Wizard — Install from Disk screen



- Navigate to your CD-ROM drive.
 - Open the \Drivers folder.
 - Open the folder that applies to your operating system, either i386 or x64.
 - Open the folder with the name of the driver you want to install.
 - Select the .INF file. The .INF file will have a name similar to "hpc3530c.inf".
- Click **OK** to continue to the **Install Printer Software** screen.

10. Select the appropriate product model from the list and click the **Next** button to continue to the **Name Your Printer** screen.

Figure 3-18 Add Printer Wizard—Install Printer Software, screen

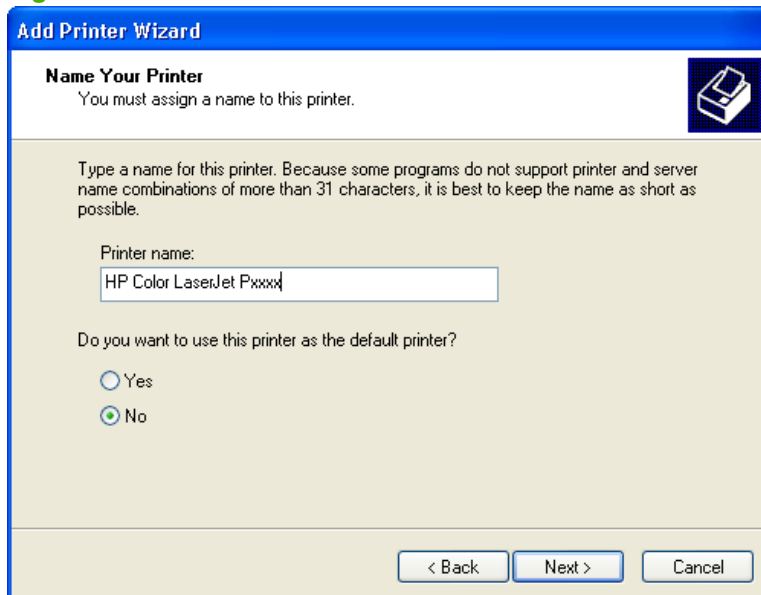


11. You can either type a name for the product in the **Printer name:** text box or use the default name provided.

Select **Yes** to use this printer as the default printer or select **No** to keep the existing product as the default printer.

Click the **Next** button to continue to the **Printer Sharing** screen.

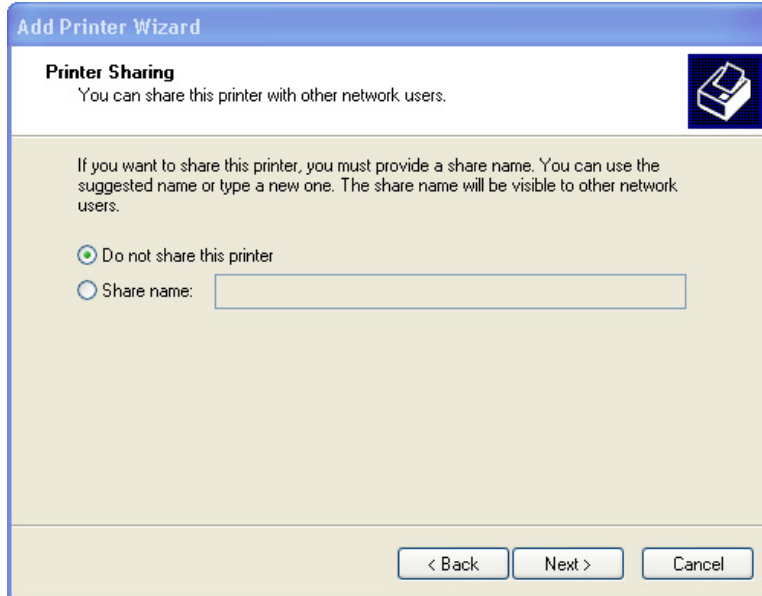
Figure 3-19 Add Printer Wizard—Name Your Printer screen



12. Select either **Do not share this printer**, or select **Share name:** and type the share name, and then click the **Next** button to continue to the **Print Test Page** screen.

 **NOTE:** For more information, see either [Microsoft Windows Sharing \(peer-to-peer networking\) on page 98](#) or [Microsoft Point and Print on page 100](#).

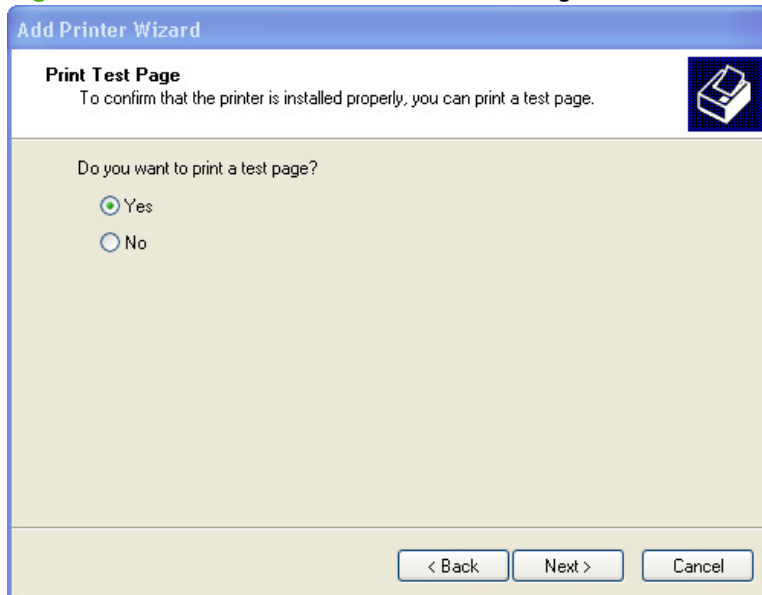
Figure 3-20 Add Printer Wizard–Printer Sharing screen



13. Select **Yes** if you want to print a test page after the software is installed. Select **No** if you do not want to print a test page after the software is installed.

Click the **Next** button to continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** screen.

Figure 3-21 Add Printer Wizard–Print Test Page screen



14. Review the installation details, and then click **Finish** to complete the Add Printer Wizard.

Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection

Perform the following when the product is connected via the network without using a print server and a printer port does not exist:

1. On the **Start** menu, click **Settings**, and then

Windows 2000: Click **Printers**.

-or-

Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003: Click **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-


Windows Server 2008: Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, then open the **Printers** folder.

-or-

Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click **Printer**.

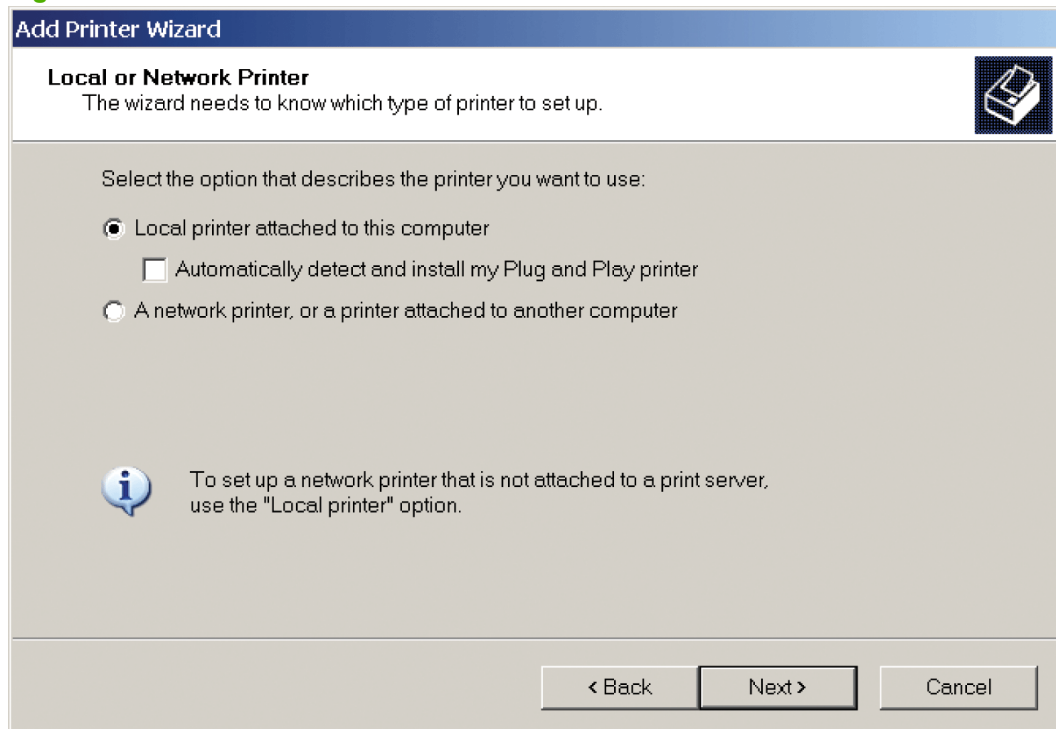
2. Click **Add a printer** on the **Printer Tasks** pane.
3. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome screen.

4. If the product is connected to the computer with a USB cable, or is connected via the network without using a print server, select **Local printer attached to this computer**, and then click the **Next** button.


 **NOTE:** If you select the **Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer** check box prior to clicking the **Next** button, the computer automatically installs the printer driver.

NOTE: If the product is connected via the network using a print server, select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer** (Point and Print installation), and then click the **Next >** button. For detailed installation instructions, see [Print server connection on page 94](#).

Figure 3-22 Local or Network Printer screen

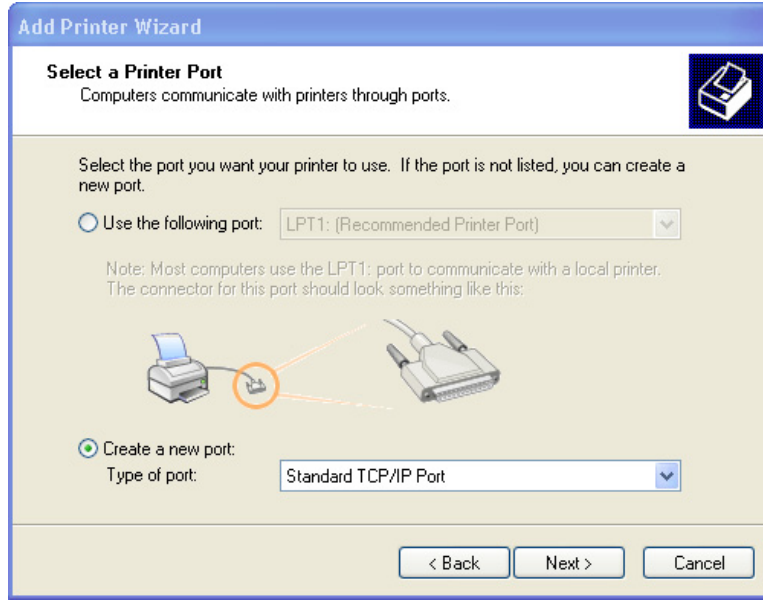


5. If the printer port does not appear in the **Use the following port:** drop-down list, select **Create a new port**.
 - If the **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option appears in the **Type of port:** drop-down list, select this option, and then click the **Next** button. The **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard** screen appears.
 - If the **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option does not appear in the **Type of port:** drop-down list, select **Standard TCP/IP Port** from the **Type of port:** drop-down list, and then click the **Next** button. The **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard** screen appears.

 **NOTE:** The **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option provides additional network functionality and is the recommended printer port for HP products.

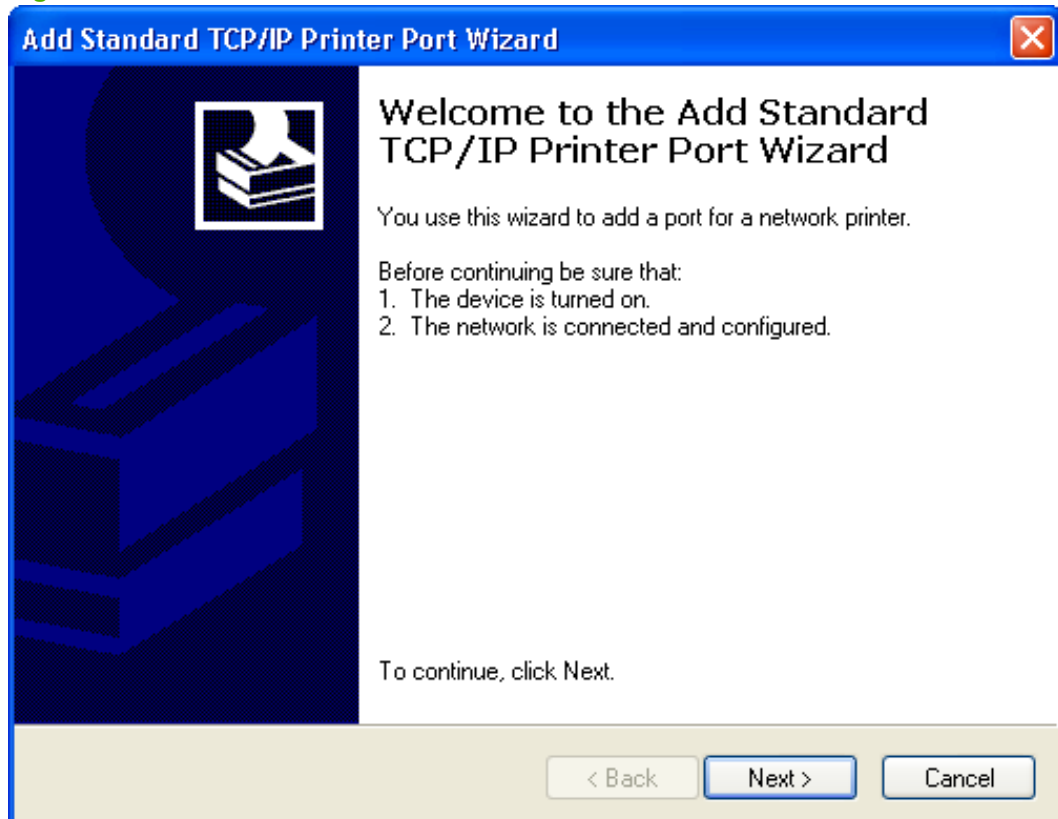
NOTE: If the printer port already appears in the **Use the following port:** drop-down list, see [Use an existing port for a direct connection on page 85](#). If the product is connected via the network using a print server, see [Print server connection on page 94](#).

Figure 3-23 Select a Printer Port screen




6. Click the **Next** button.

Figure 3-24 Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard

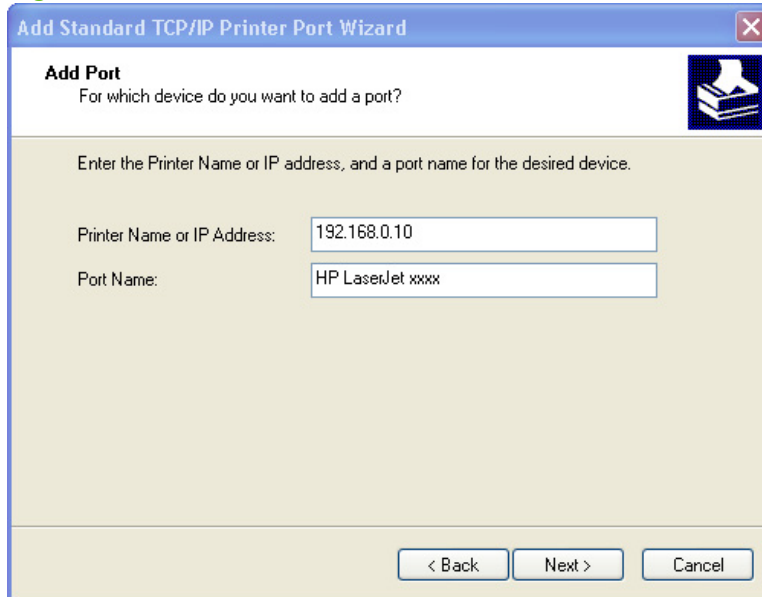


7. Type the product's IP address or host name in the **Printer Name or IP Address:** text box, and then click the **Next** button.

 **NOTE:** The default port name is the name that you typed in the **Printer Name or IP Address:** text box. You can change this name by typing a new name in the **Port Name:** text box.

NOTE: The **Always print to this device, even if its IP address changes** check box is only available if you select **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** from the **Select a Printer Port** screen. This feature allows the computer to communicate with the product by using the MAC address of the network card rather than the IP address.

Figure 3-25 Add Port screen



8. Review the installation details, and then click the **Finish** button to complete the Add Printer Wizard.

Print server connection

Perform the following when the product is connected via the network using a print server:

1. On the **Start** menu, click **Settings**, and then do one of the following:

Windows 2000: Click **Printers**.

-or-

Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003: Click **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

Windows Server 2008: Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then open the **Printers** folder.

-or-

Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click **Printer**.

2. Click **Add a printer**. The **Add Printer Wizard** opens.
3. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome screen.

4. If the product is connected via the network using a print server, select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click the **Next** button.


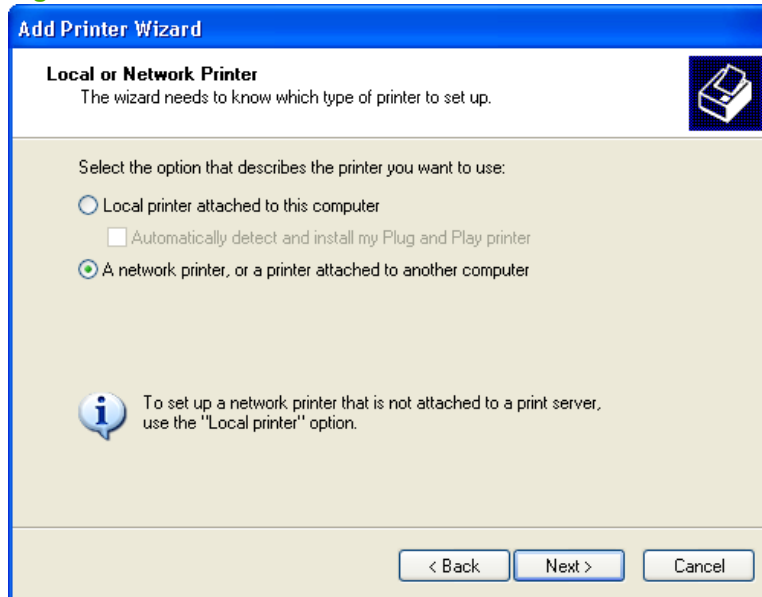
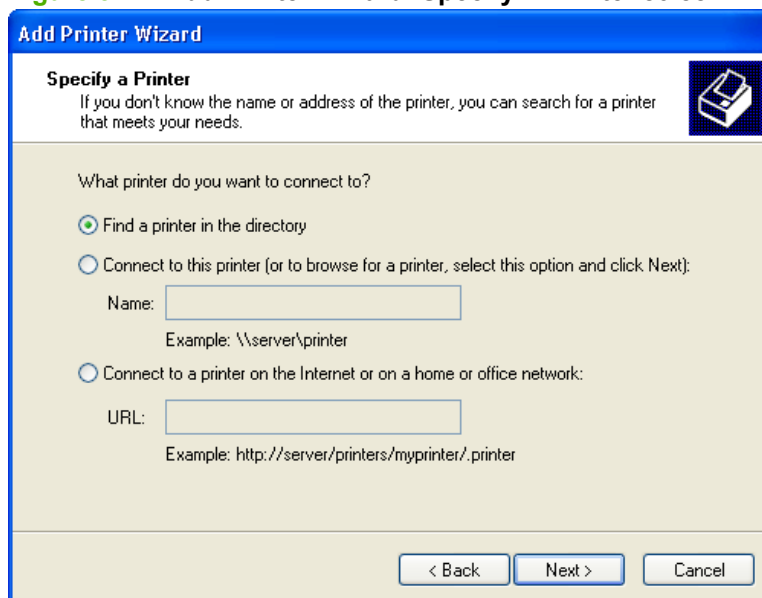
 **NOTE:** If the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable, or is connected via the network without using a print server, select **Local printer attached to this computer**, and then click the **Next** button. You can also select the **Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer** check box prior to clicking the **Next** button to have the computer automatically install the printer driver. For detailed installation instructions, see either [Use an existing port for a direct connection on page 85](#) or [Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection on page 91](#).

Figure 3-26 Add Printer Wizard–Local or Network Printer screen



5. Select **Find a printer in the directory**, **Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next):**, or **Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:**, and then click the **Next** button.

Figure 3-27 Add Printer Wizard–Specify A Printer screen



If you select **Find a printer in the directory** and then click the **Next** button, you will continue to the **Find Printers** screen.

If you select **Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next)**: and then click the **Next** button, you will continue to the **Browse for Printer** screen.

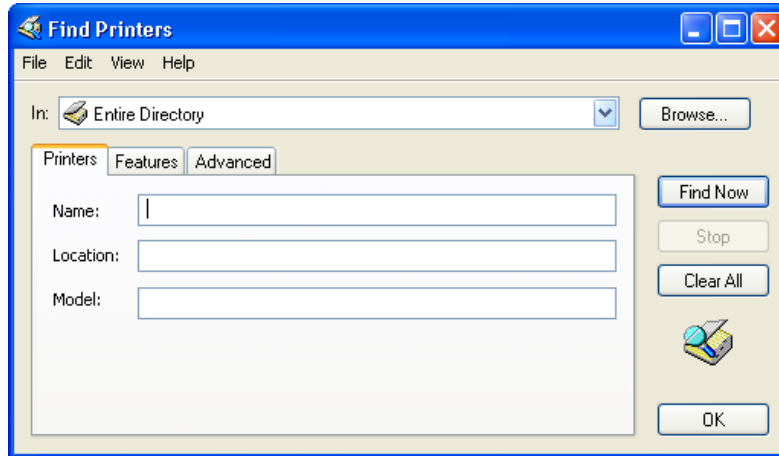
If you select **Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network** and then click the **Next** button, you will continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** screen.

Complete one of the following sequences depending on the option you chose on the **Specify A Printer** screen.

a. (Find a printer in the directory option only)

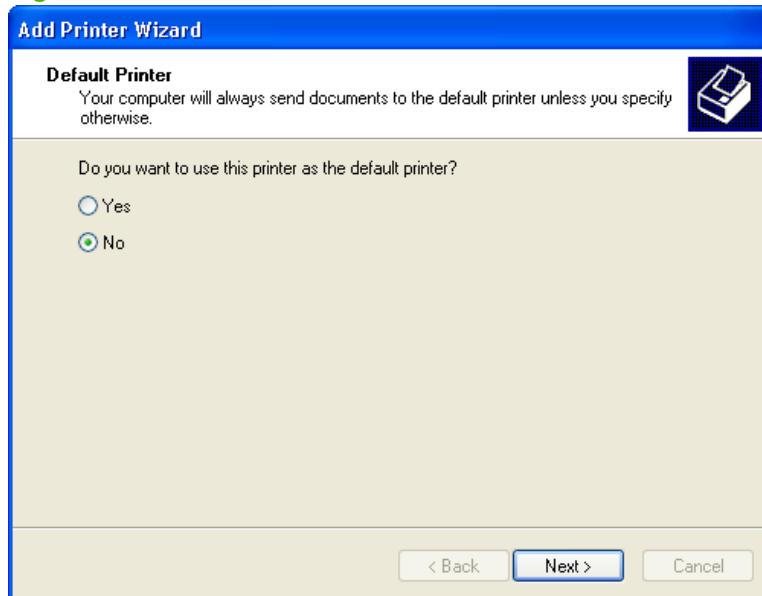
Specify search attributes to find your product on the network, and then click **Find Now** to search the specified location for your product. Once the search has completed, select the product, and then click **OK** to continue to the **Default Printer** screen.

Figure 3-28 Add Printer Wizard–Find Printers screen



Select **Yes** to use this printer as the default printer, or **No** to keep the existing product as the default printer, and then click the **Next** button to continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** screen.

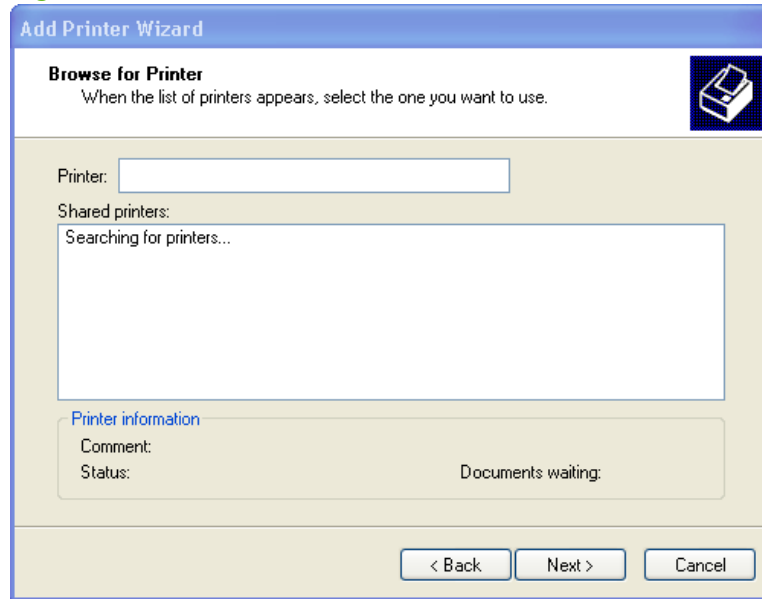
Figure 3-29 Add Printer Wizard–Default Printer screen



- b. (Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next) option only)

Specify the print path for the product and then click the **Next** button. The computer will search the network for shared products. Select the product from the list and then click the **Next** button to continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** screen.

Figure 3-30 Add Printer Wizard — Browse for Printer screen




- c. (Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network option only)

Type the URL for the product, and then click the **Next >** button. Follow the onscreen instructions to connect to the product, and then you will continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** dialog box.

6. Review the installation details, and then click the **Finish** button to complete the **Add Printer Wizard**.

Microsoft Windows Sharing (peer-to-peer networking)

Windows Sharing (peer-to-peer networking) is a feature of the Microsoft operating system that allows network computers that are not directly connected to the product to print to it. When using Windows sharing, the product printer driver must be installed and configured on both the host computer as well as any network computers that will print to the product.

 **NOTE:** Windows Sharing is a feature of Microsoft operating systems, not of HP printer drivers. If these procedures are not successful, or for more information about peer-to-peer networking procedures, contact Microsoft at the following Web site:

www.microsoft.com

The link above will take you outside the Hewlett-Packard Web site. HP does not control and is not responsible for information outside of the HP Web site.

Setting up the host computer running Windows 2000

1. Click the **Start** button, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. In the printer list, right-click the icon for the product you want to share, and then click **Sharing**.
3. On the **Sharing** tab, click **Share As**, and then type a name for the product in the **Share Name** text box. Click **OK**.

Setting up the host computer running Windows XP

1. On the **Start** menu, click **Printers and Faxes**.
2. In the printer list, right-click the icon for the product you want to share, and then click **Sharing**.
3. On the **Sharing** tab, click **Share this printer**, and then type a name for the product in the **Share Name** text box. Click **OK**.
4. Click the **Ports** tab. Clear the **Enable bidirectional support** check box, and then click **OK**.

Setting up client computers running Windows 2000

1. Click the **Start** menu, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Double-click the **Add Printer** icon to open the **Add Printer Wizard**.
3. Click the **Next** button to start the wizard.
4. Click **Network Printer**, and then click the **Next** button.
5. Type in the path and share name of the product to which you want to connect.

-or-

Click the **Browse** button and navigate to find the product to which you want to connect.

Click the **Next** button.

6. Select either **Yes** or **No** when asked if you want to use this product as your default printer for Windows-based programs, and then click the **Next** button.
7. Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation and close the **Add Printer Wizard**.

 **NOTE:** You might need to use the product software CD to complete the printer driver installations.

Setting up client computers running Windows XP

1. On the **Start** menu, click **Printers and Faxes**.
2. On the left-hand column, under **Printer Tasks**, click **Add a printer** to open the **Add Printer Wizard**.
3. Click the **Next** button to start the wizard.
4. Click **A network printer or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click the **Next** button.
5. Type in the path and share name of the product to which you want to connect.

-or-


Click the **Browse** button and navigate to find the product to which you want to connect.

Click the **Next** button.

6. Click either **Yes** or **No** when asked if you want to use this product as your default printer for Windows-based programs, and then click the **Next** button.
7. Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation and close the **Add Printer Wizard**.

Microsoft Point and Print

Microsoft Point and Print is a two-step driver installation process that allows network computers to print via a print server rather than printing directly to a product. Point and Print is similar to Window Sharing except that the printer driver is installed on a network print server rather than a client directly connected to the product. The first step is to install a shared driver on a network print server. The second step is to "point" to the print server from a network client so that the client can use the printer driver.


 **NOTE:** Point and Print is a feature of Microsoft operating systems, not of HP printer drivers. If these procedures are not successful, or for more information about Point and Print networking procedures, contact Microsoft at the following Web site:

www.microsoft.com

The link above will take you outside the Hewlett-Packard Web site. HP does not control and is not responsible for information outside of the HP Web site.

Use the MFP Send Fax Driver

You can use the HP Send Fax Driver to send faxes from your computer via the product if the optional Analog Fax Accessory 500 is installed. After the HP Send Fax Driver is installed, it can be accessed and used in the same manner as a printer driver. The HP Send Fax Driver can only be used with network connected printers.

 **NOTE:** For complete information about using the HP Send Fax Driver, see the *HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Send Fax Driver Guide*, which can be downloaded from www.hp.com/go/mfpfaxaccessory500. Click **Manuals** from the left navigation bar. It is also available on the User CD.

Download the HP Send Fax Driver

The HP Send Fax Driver is on the Admin CD under **Advanced Install Options**. The Admin CD is the primary install method for the HP Send Fax Driver; alternatively, you can download the HP Send Fax Driver by using the following procedure:

1. Go to www.hp.com/go/mfpfaxaccessory500, and then click the **Download drivers and software** option from the left navigation bar.
2. In the **Select operating system** pane, click the appropriate operating system.
3. In the driver table that appears, click **Download >>** next to the MFP Send Fax Driver.
4. In the **File Download** dialog box that opens, click the **Save** button.
5. In the **File Name** text box on the **Save As** dialog box that opens, type the location on your computer where you want to save the self-extracting Send Fax Driver file.
6. Click the **Save** button.
7. After the file has been downloaded, close the **File Download** dialog box if necessary.


Install the HP Send Fax Driver

You can install the HP Send Fax Driver by using either the HP Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU) or the Windows Add Printer Wizard. The HP DIU is included with the downloaded driver. Installing the HP Send Fax Driver by using the HP DIU is the same process as installing from the Admin CD.

HP Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU)

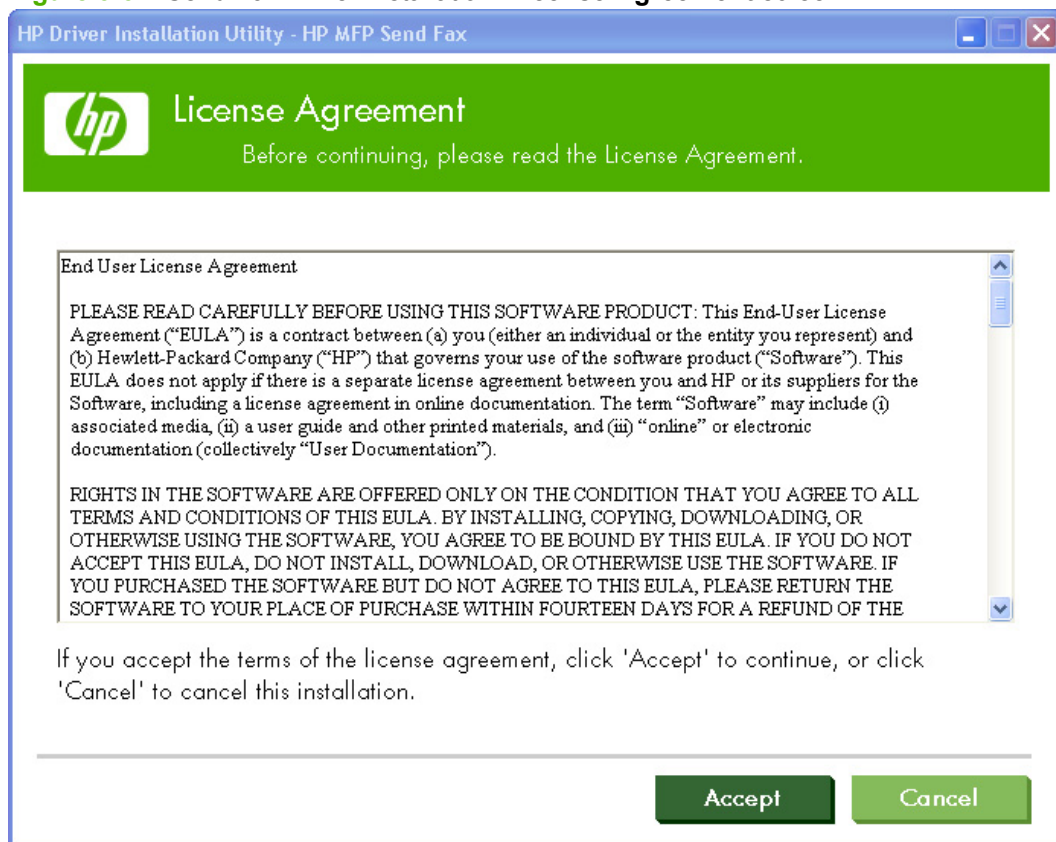
To install the HP Send Fax Driver by using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU), use the following steps:

1. In Windows Explorer, double-click the downloaded HP Send Fax Driver executable file to extract the driver files. A folder is created containing the HP Send Fax Driver files.
2. Browse to the location of the HP Send Fax Driver folder, and then double click the **HPDIU.EXE** file. The HP Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU) opens to the License Agreement.

 **NOTE:** If installing from the Admin CD, click the **Advanced Install Options** button and then click the **Install HP MFP Send Fax Driver** button.


3. After reading the license agreement, click the **Accept** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-31 Send Fax Driver Installation—License Agreement screen



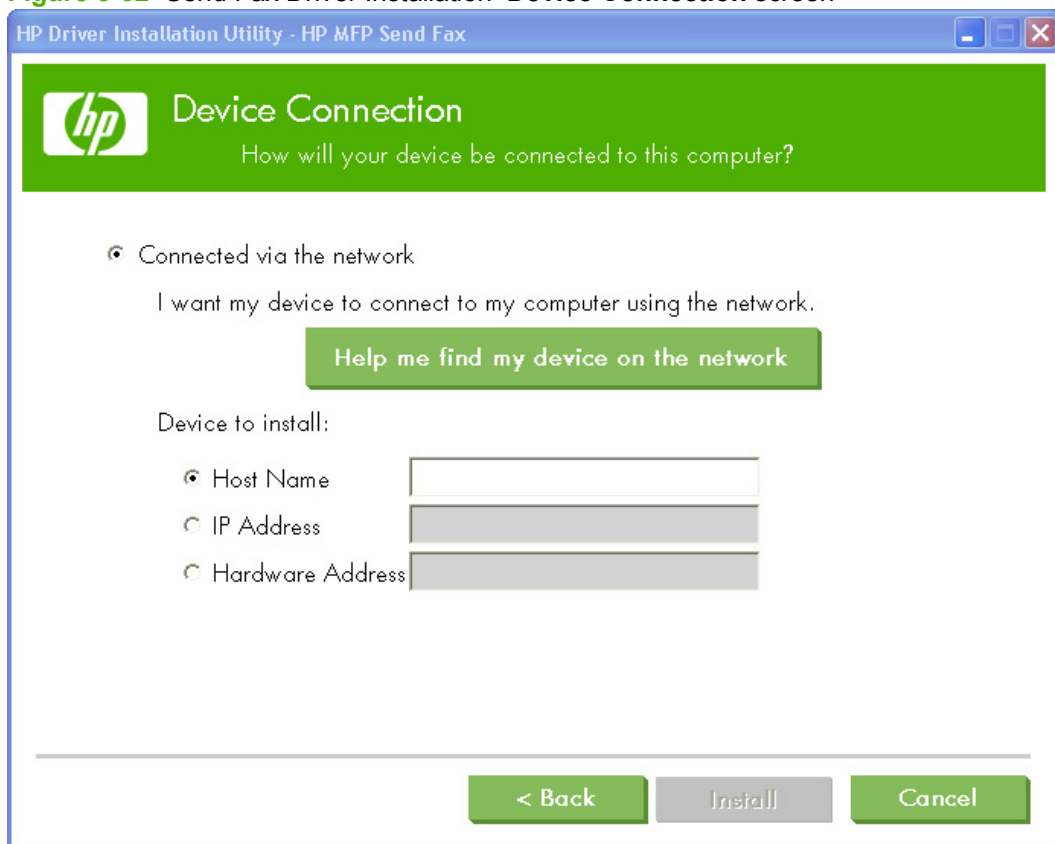
4. Select **Connected via the network**.

- If the product's networking settings are known, you can enter either the **Host Name**, **IP Address**, or the **Hardware Address**, and then click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, the **Driver Installation Complete** screen appears.
- If the product's network settings are not known, click the **Help me find my device on the network** button. A **Discovery in Progress** window appears. After the computer searches the network, the **Devices Found** screen appears.

 **NOTE:** The product name is HP MFP Send Fax when the HP Send Fax Driver is installed on a local printer.

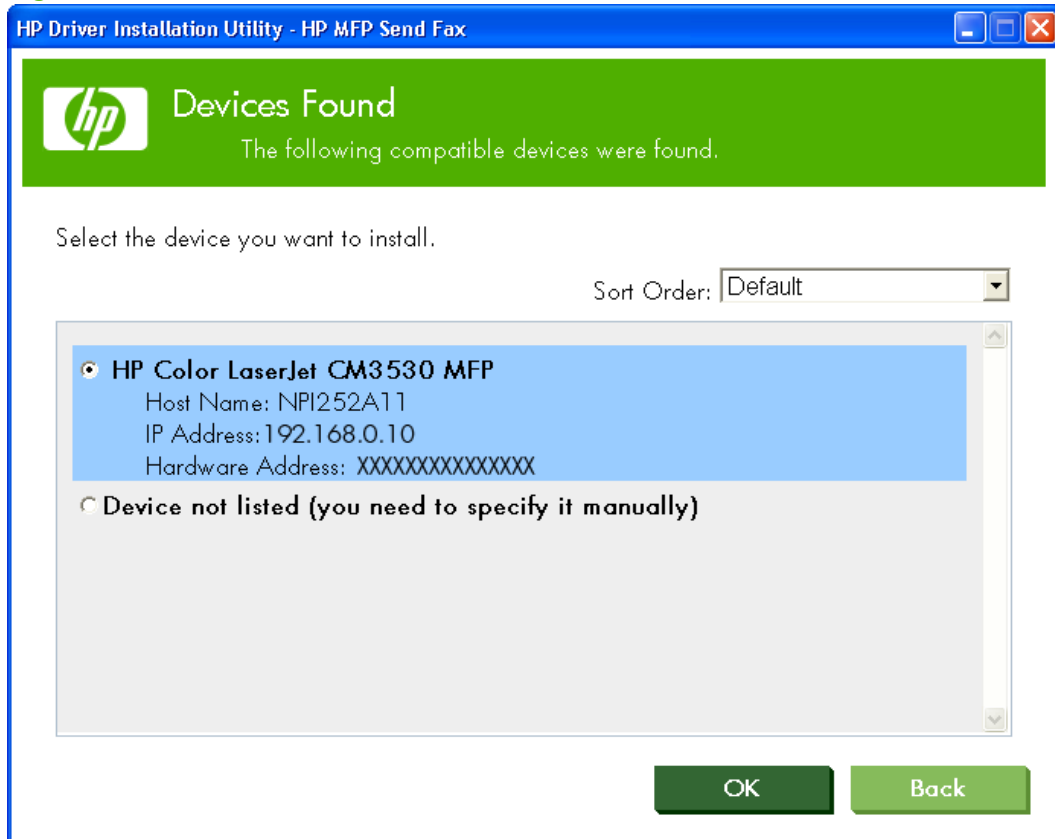
The HP Send Fax Driver cannot be installed on a product that is connected to the computer via a serial or parallel port. It must be on a network.

Figure 3-32 Send Fax Driver Installation–**Device Connection** screen



5. A list of products is displayed. Select the product you want to install, and then click the **OK** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-33 Send Fax Driver Installation—**Devices Found** screen



6. The network settings (**Host Name**, **IP Address**, and **Hardware Address**) for the product are displayed. Click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Device Installation Complete** screen.

Figure 3-34 Send Fax Driver Installation–Device Connection screen

HP Driver Installation Utility - HP MFP Send Fax

Device Connection

How will your device be connected to this computer?

Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.
[Help me find my device on the network](#)

Device to install:

Host Name

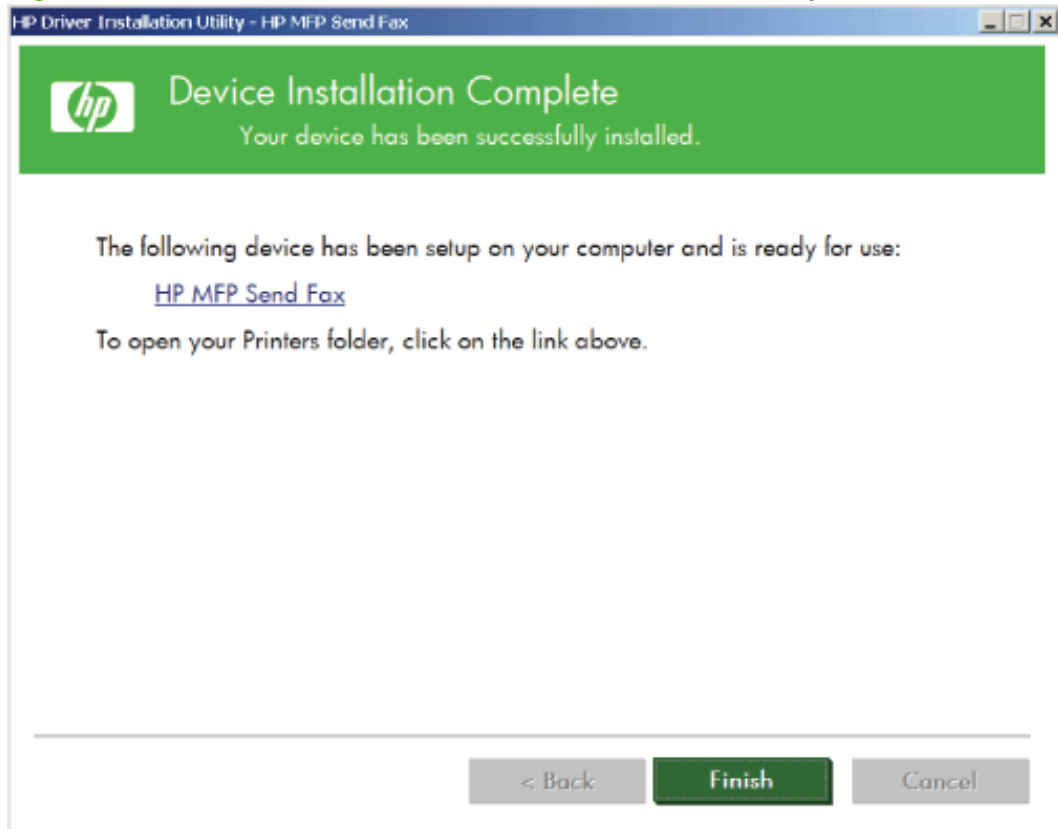
IP Address

Hardware Address

[< Back](#) [Install](#) [Cancel](#)

7. The following screen appears once the software is installed. Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation.

Figure 3-35 Send Fax Driver Installation—**Device Installation Complete** screen



Add Printer Wizard

To install the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Windows Add Printer Wizard, use the following steps:

1. In Windows Explorer, double-click the downloaded HP Send Fax Driver executable file to extract the driver files.
2. On the **Start** menu, click **Settings**, and then do one of the following:
 - Windows 2000:** Click **Printers**.
 - or-
 - Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003:** Click **Printers and Faxes**.
 - or-
 - Windows Server 2008:** Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then open the **Printers** folder.
 - or-
 - Windows Vista:** Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click **Printer**.
3. Click **Add a printer**.
4. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome screen.

5. Select **Local printer attached to this computer**, and then click the **Next** button.

 **NOTE:** The printer name is HP MFP Send Fax when the driver is installed on a local printer.

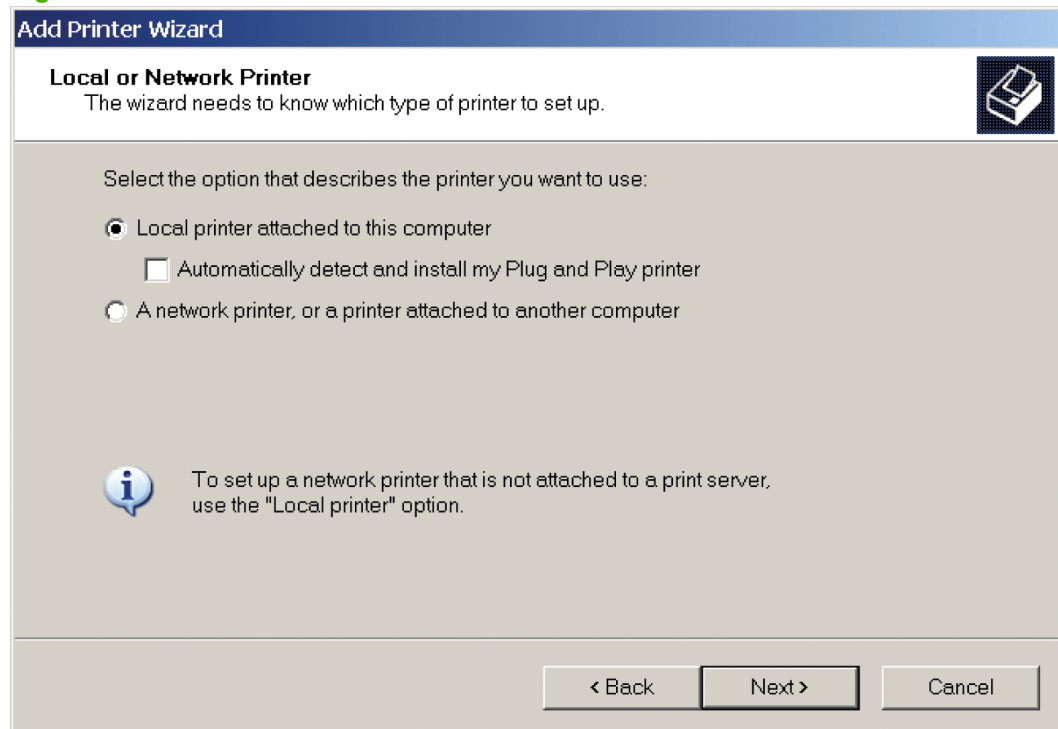
Select **Local printer attached to this computer** to install the HP Easy Printer Care on a network printer.

If the printer port does not appear in the **Use the following port:** drop-down list, see [Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection on page 91](#).

If you select the **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer** option (Point and Print installation), the IP address of the computer is required. Some features, such as fax preview, are not available if the driver is installed by using the network printer installation. For detailed installation instructions, see [Print server connection on page 94](#).

The HP Send Fax Driver cannot be installed on a printer that is connected to the computer via a USB, serial, or parallel port. It must be on a network.

Figure 3-36 Send Fax Driver Installation–**Local or Network Printer** screen



6. Select the product name, print path, or IP address of the product from the **Use the following port:** drop-down list, and then click the **Next** button.


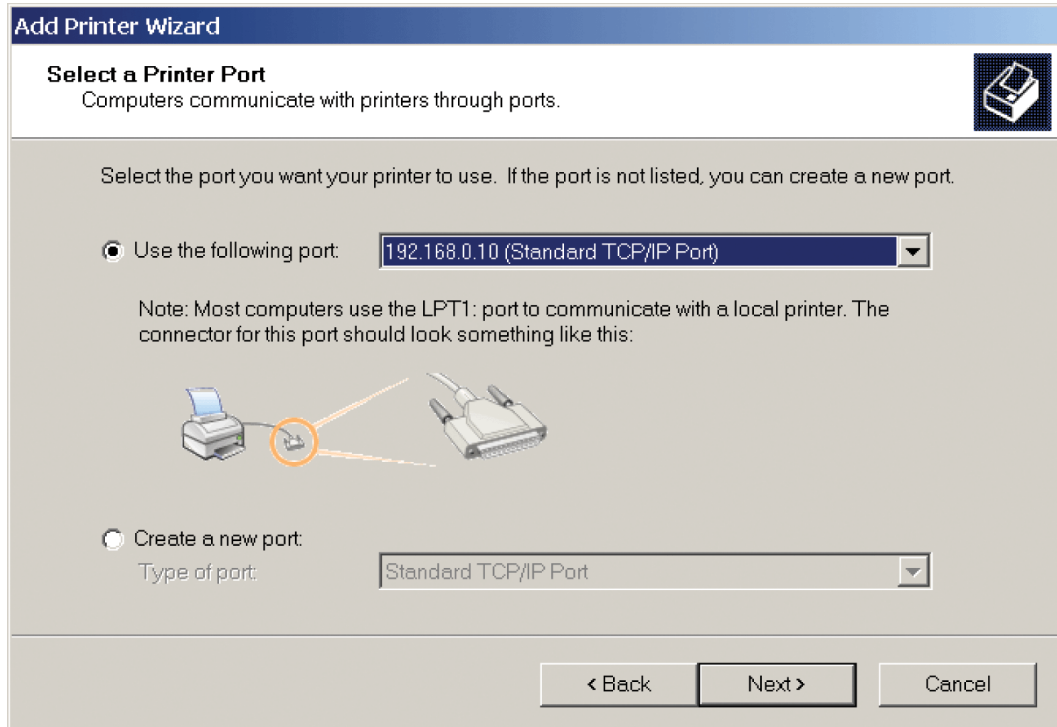
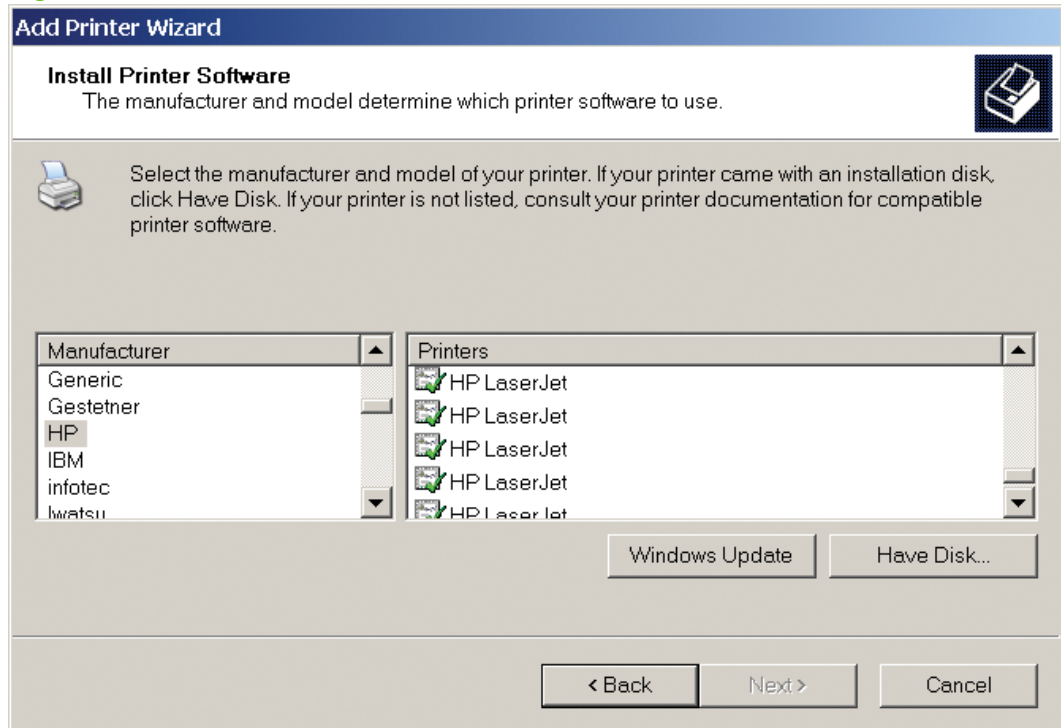
 **NOTE:** If the product name, print path, or IP address of the product is not listed, see [Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection on page 91](#). If the product is connected via the network using a print server, see [Print server connection on page 94](#).

Figure 3-37 Send Fax Driver Installation—**Select a Printer Port** screen



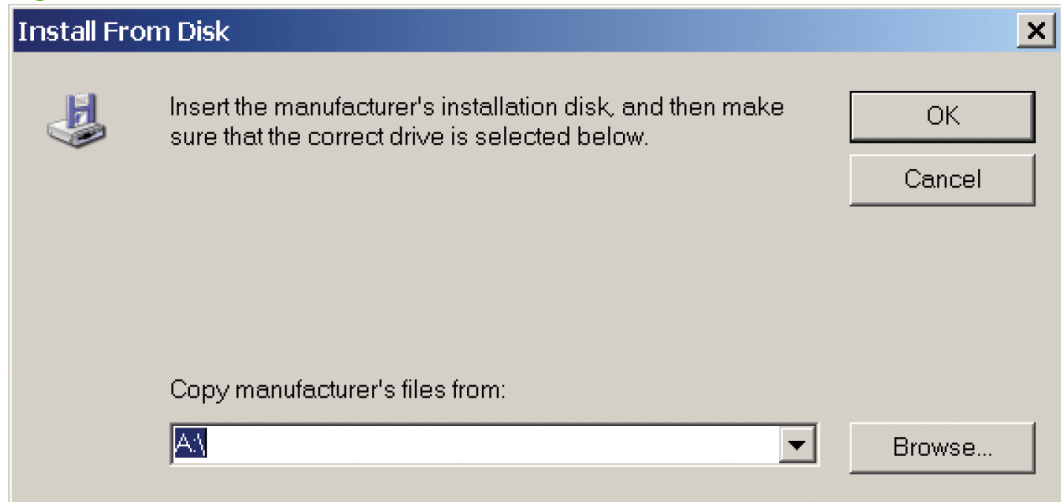
7. Click the **Have Disk...** button.

Figure 3-38 Send Fax Driver Installation–Install Printer Software screen



8. Click the **Browse...** button.

Figure 3-39 Send Fax Driver Installation–Install From Disk screen



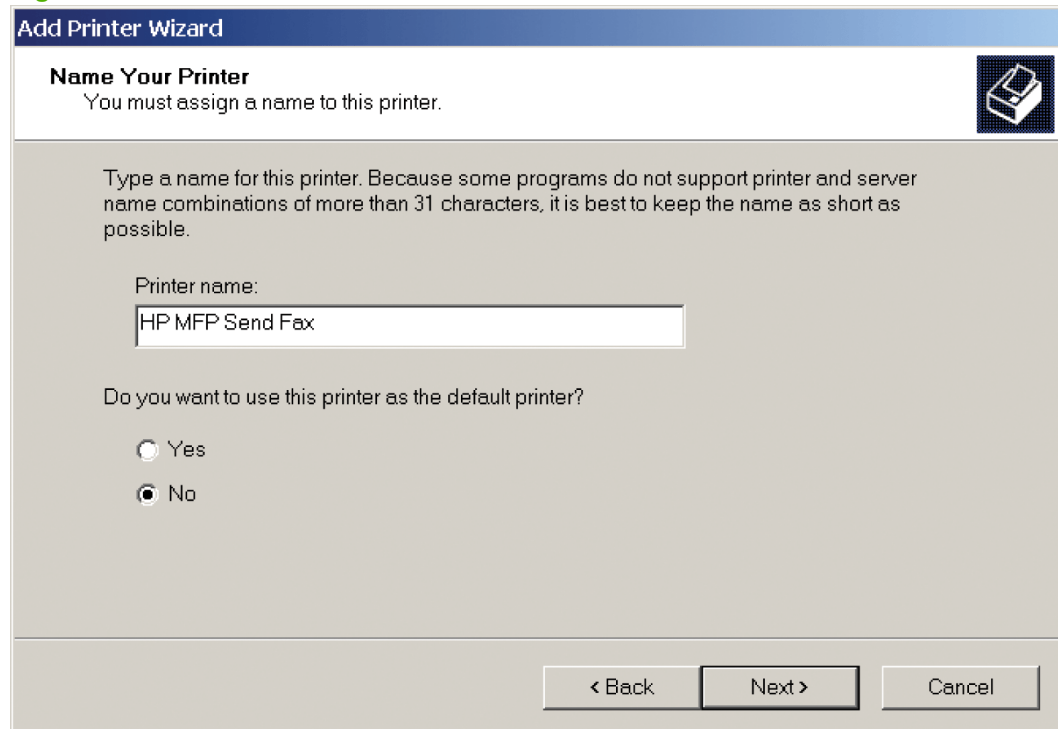
9. Navigate to and select the HP Send Fax Driver .INF file.

NOTE: Different versions of the .INF file are available: a 32-bit version for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista; and a 64-bit version for Windows XP Professional x64, Windows Server 2003 x64, Windows Server 2008 x64, and Windows Vista x64.


The following message displays if you select the wrong version of the file: **The specified location does not contain information about your printer.**

10. Click the **Open** button.
11. Click the **OK** button.
12. Click the **Next** button.
13. Type a name for the driver in the **Printer name:** text box, and then click the **Next** button. The default name is HP MFP Send Fax.

Figure 3-40 Send Fax Driver Installation—Name Your Printer screen

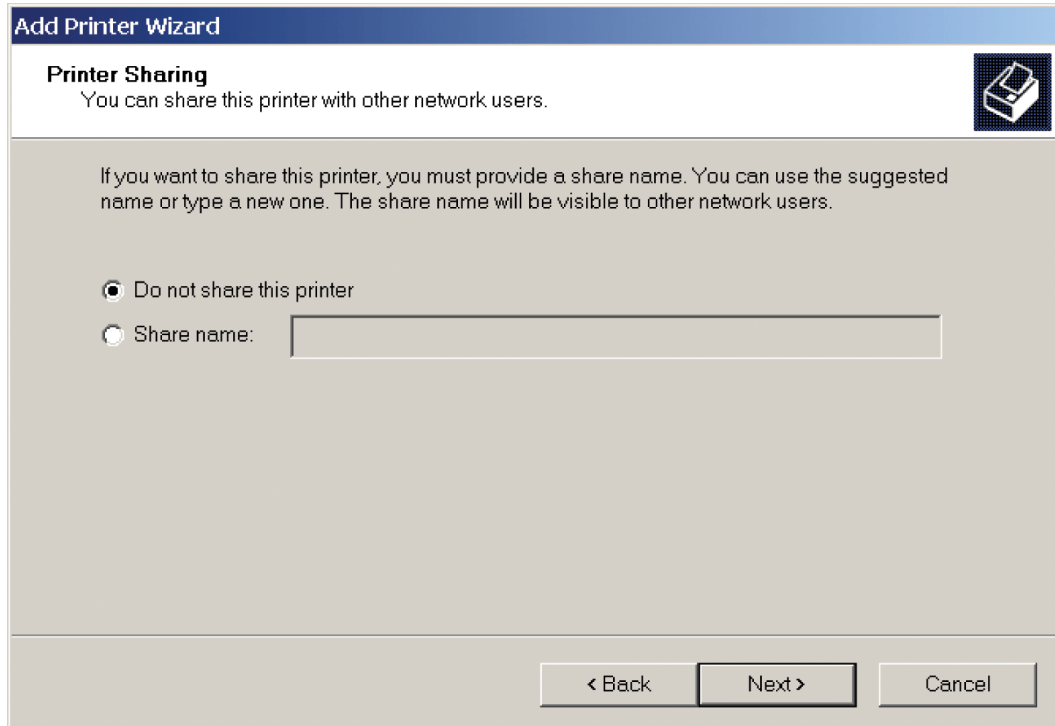


14. Select an option, and then click the **Next** button.

 **NOTE:** You can share the product by selecting **Share name:** on the **Printer Sharing** screen. The HP Send Fax Driver is then available for a Point and Print connection. Some features, such as fax preview, are not available if the driver is accessed by using a Point and Print connection.

For more information, see either [Microsoft Windows Sharing \(peer-to-peer networking\) on page 98](#) or [Microsoft Point and Print on page 100](#).

Figure 3-41 Send Fax Driver Installation–Printer Sharing screen



15. Select either **Yes** or **No** to send a test fax, and then click the **Next** button.


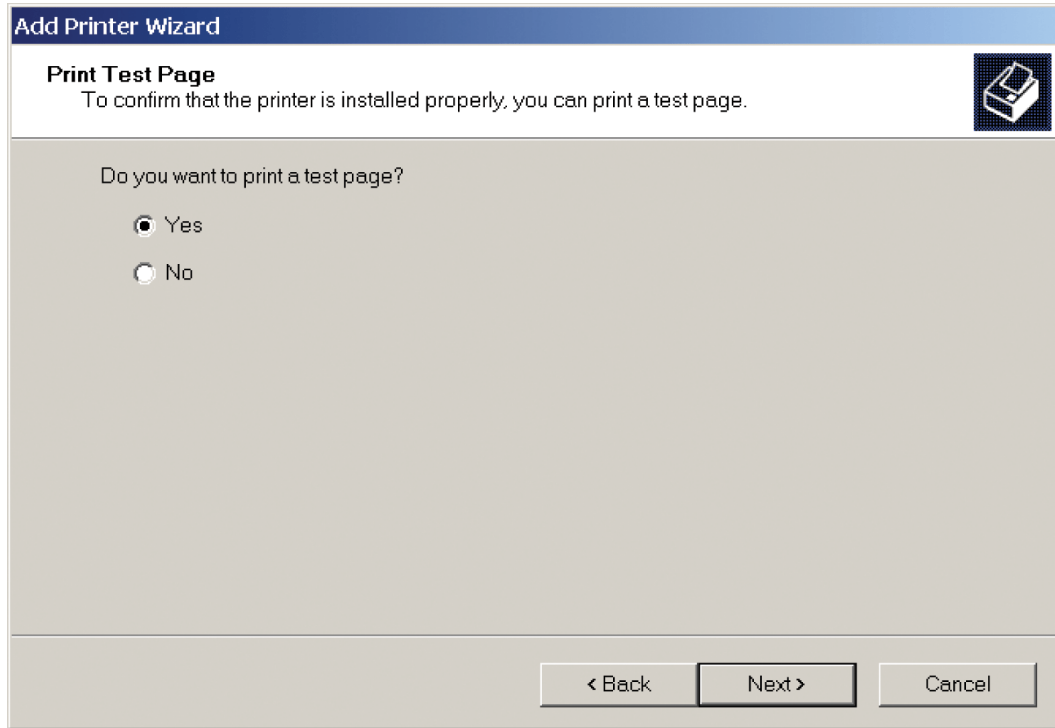

 **NOTE:** If you select **Yes**, the HP Send Fax Driver opens once the installation is complete. No page is printed from the product; however, a fax is sent.

Figure 3-42 Send Fax Driver Installation–**Print Test Page** screen




16. Click the **Finish** button to complete the wizard.


 **NOTE:** If you selected **Yes** to print a test page in the previous step, the **Setup** tab of the HP Easy Printer Care appears.

Send a fax by using the HP Send Fax Driver

You can use the HP Send Fax Driver to send faxes from your computer via the product if the optional Analog Fax Accessory 500 is installed. After the HP Send Fax Driver is installed, it can be accessed and used in the same manner as a printer driver.

 **NOTE:** For complete information about using the HP Send Fax Driver, see the *HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 Send Fax Driver Guide*, which can be accessed on your User CD or downloaded from www.hp.com/go/mfpfaxaccessory500. Click **Manuals** from the left navigation bar.

Create a network folder by using the Scan Setup Wizard

 **NOTE:** You can return to the previous dialog box by clicking the **Back** button, or exit the Scan Setup Wizard by clicking the **Cancel** button.

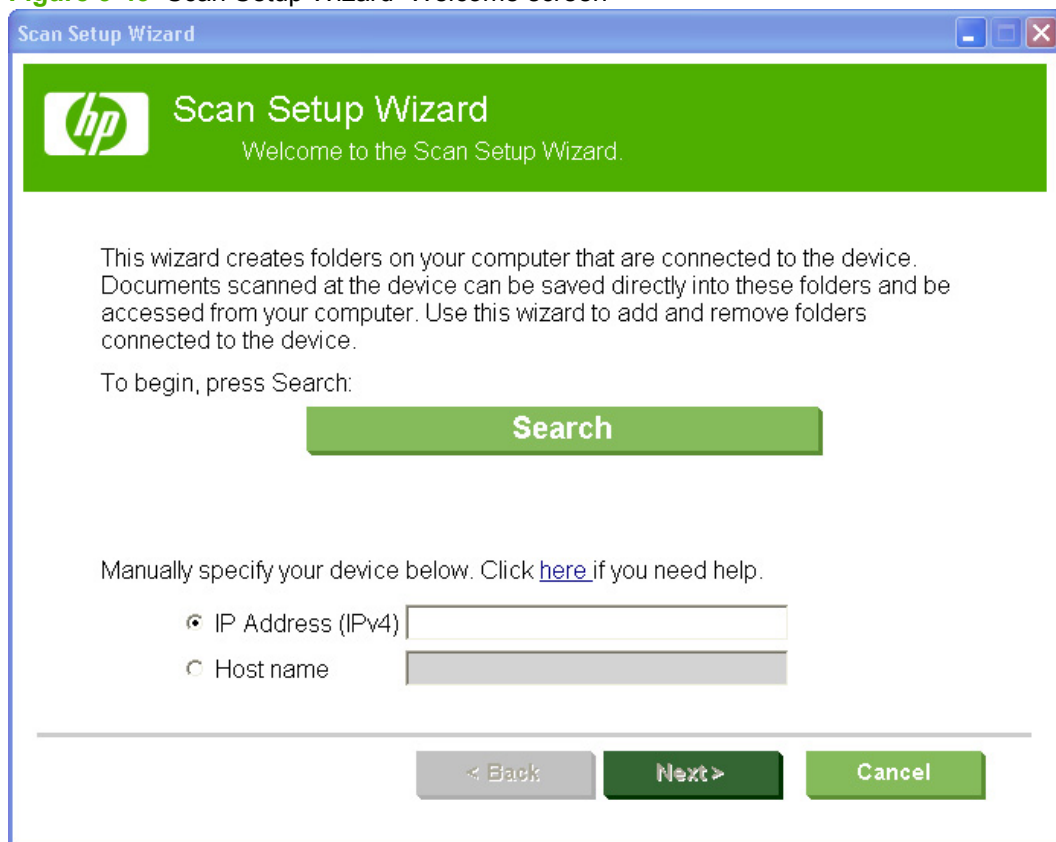
1. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 printing-system Admin software CD in the CD-ROM drive to open an interactive CD Browser.

If the CD Browser does not open, follow these steps:

- a. On the **Start** menu, click **Run**.
 - b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
 - c. Click **OK**.
2. Click **Administrator Software**, and then click the **Scan Setup Wizard** button from the main screen of the CD Browser.
 3. Click the **Install Scan Setup Wizard** button.
 4. If the product's networking settings are known, enter the **Host name** or **IP Address** into the appropriate text box, and then click the **Next** button to continue to the **Contacting Device** screen.

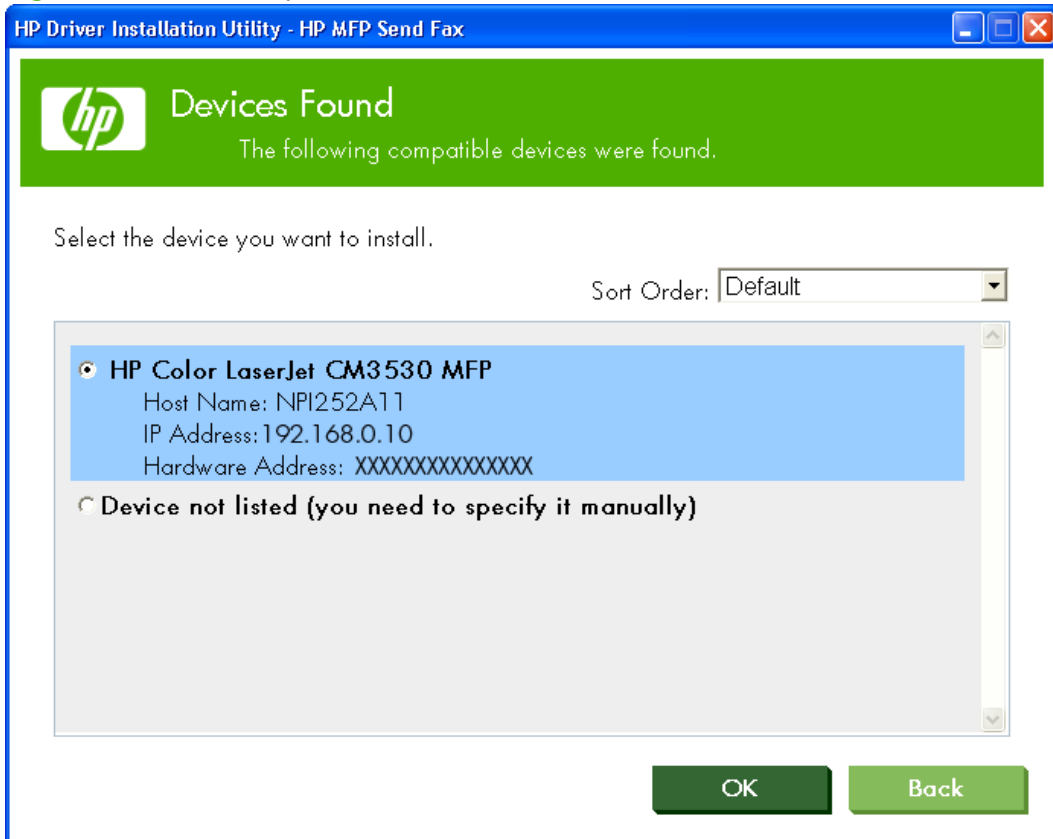
If the product's network settings are not known, click the **Search** button. A **Discovery in Progress** window appears. After the computer searches the network, the **Devices Found** screen appears.

Figure 3-43 Scan Setup Wizard–Welcome screen



5. A list of HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series products is displayed. Select the product you want to install and then click **OK** to continue to the **Network Settings** screen.

Figure 3-44 Scan Setup Wizard–Devices Found screen



6. The product's network settings (**IP Address** and **Host name**) are displayed. Click the **Next** button to continue to the **Contacting Device** screen.

Figure 3-45 Scan Setup Wizard–Welcome screen

hp Scan Setup Wizard
Welcome to the Scan Setup Wizard.

This wizard creates folders on your computer that are connected to the device. Documents scanned at the device can be saved directly into these folders and be accessed from your computer. Use this wizard to add and remove folders connected to the device.

To begin, press Search:


Search

Manually specify your device below. Click [here](#) if you need help.

IP Address (IPv4) 192.168.0.10
 Host name NPI252A11

< Back **Next >** Cancel

7. The computer communicates with the product, and then you continue to the **Add or Remove Folders** screen.


 **NOTE:** If the **Scan to Desktop has been disabled in the EWS** error message appears, open the HP EWS, click the **Device Settings** tab, click the **Send to Folder** menu item, and then select both the **Enable Send to Folder** and the **Enable Scan Setup Wizard** check boxes. You might also need to close and reopen the Scan Setup Wizard.

To gain access to the HP EWS, perform the following:

- a. Make note of the TCP/IP address of the product on the Embedded Jetdirect Page. The Embedded Jetdirect Page is the second page of the configuration page printout.

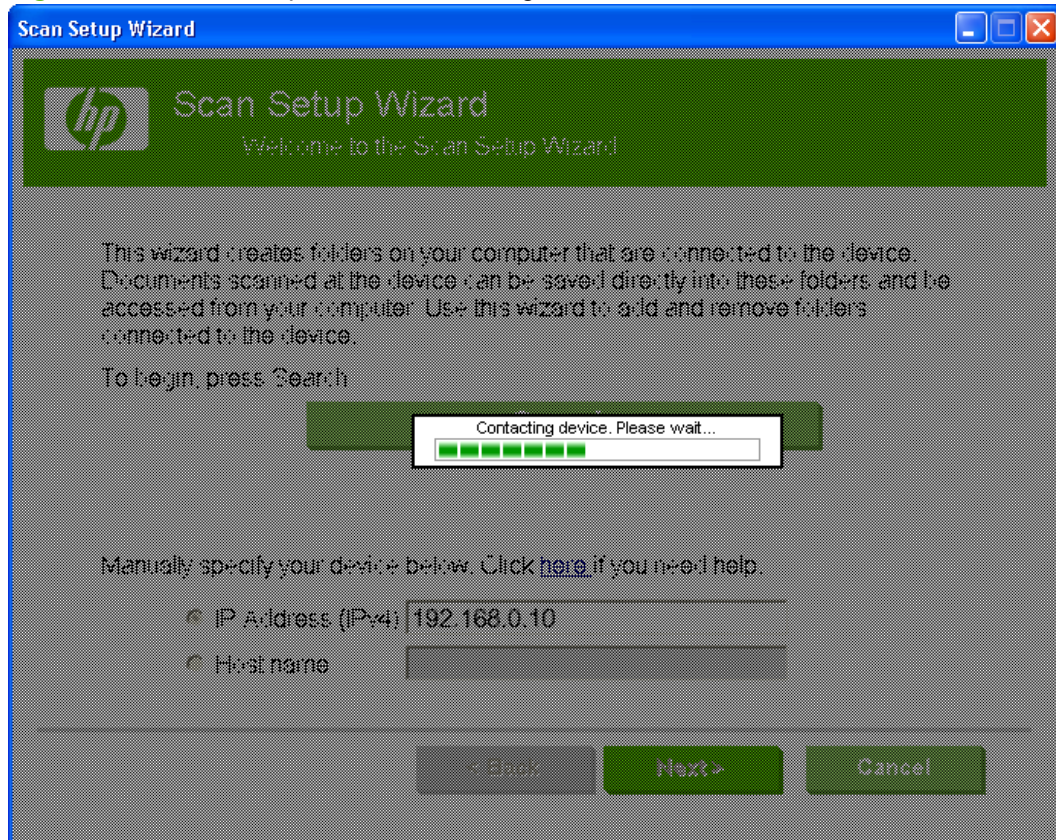
To print a configuration page from the product control panel, perform the following:

- i. Touch **Administration**.
- ii. Touch **Information**.
- iii. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
- iv. Touch **Configuration Page**.
- v. Touch **Print**.

 **NOTE:** If the product contains an HP Jetdirect EIO print server or an optional hard disk drive, additional configuration pages print that provide information about those options.

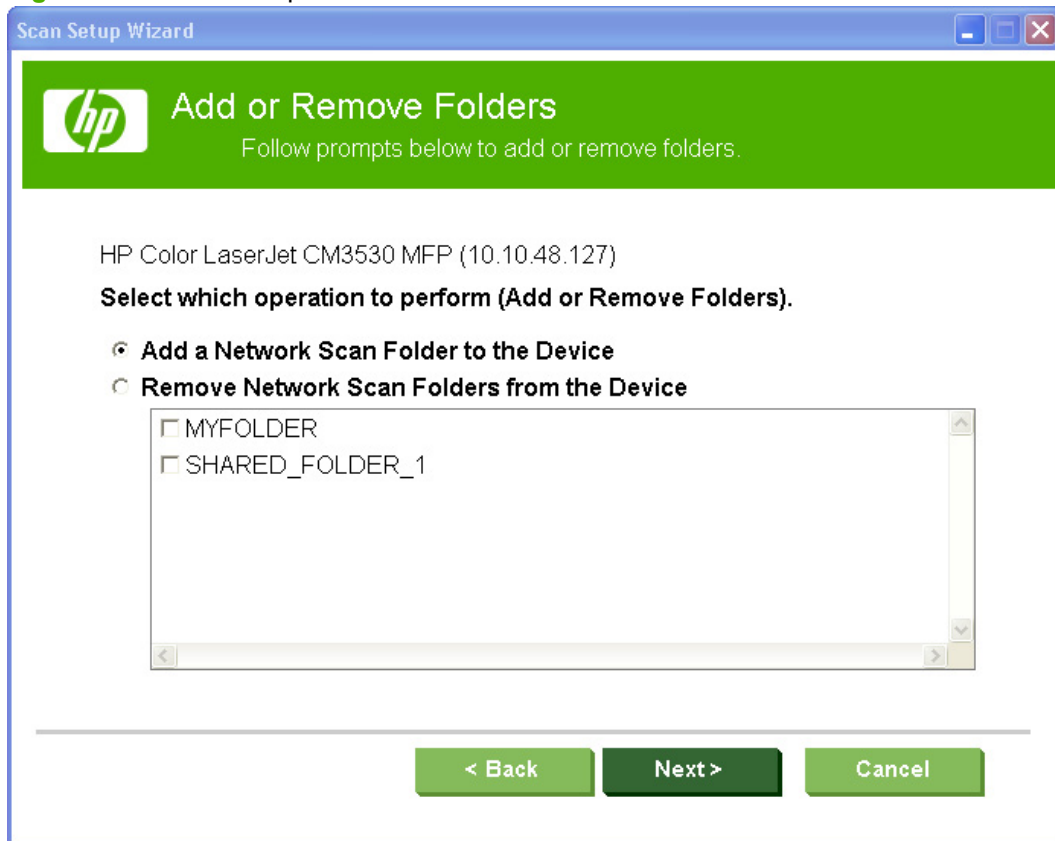
- b. Open a Web browser window.
- c. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`, where `<IPADDRESS>` is the TCP/IP address of your product. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.10, type `ftp://192.168.0.10`.
- d. Press the **Enter** button.

Figure 3-46 Scan Setup Wizard–Contacting Device screen



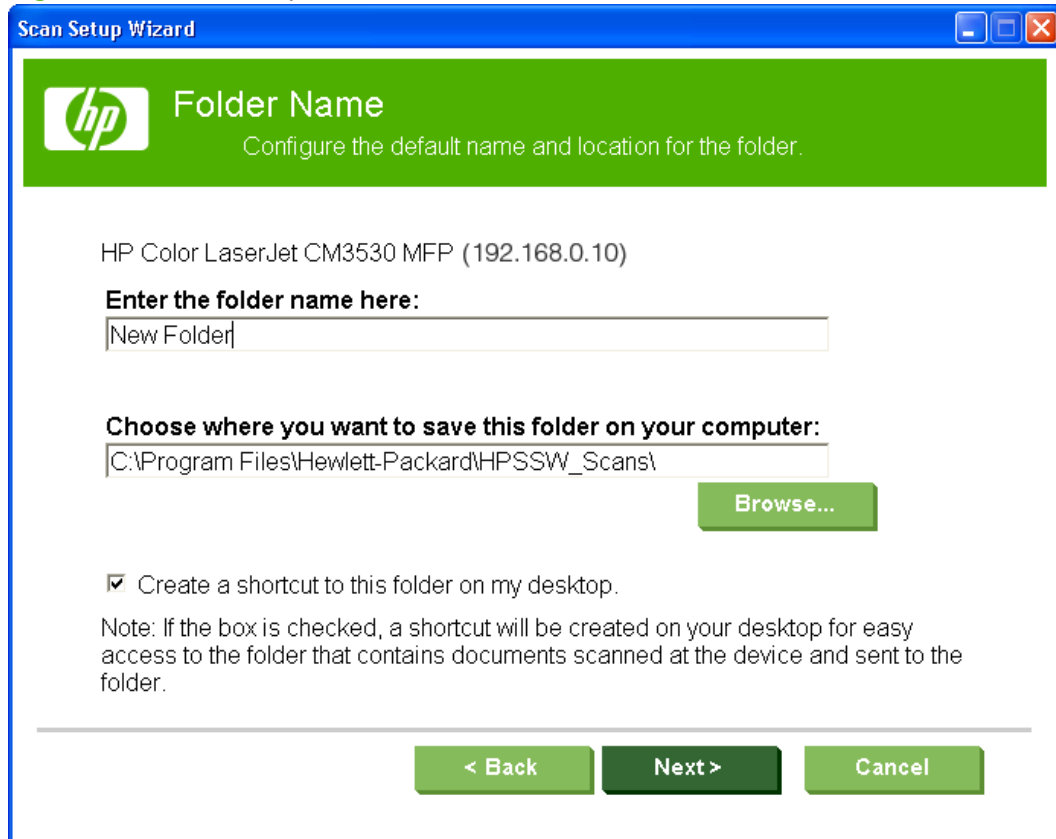
8. Select **Add a Network Scan Folder to the Device** and then click the **Next** button to continue to the **Folder Name** screen.

Figure 3-47 Scan Setup Wizard–Add or Remove Folders screen



9. Specify the folder name and location of the folder, and then click the **Next** button. Once the folder has been created, you will continue to the **Authentication** screen.
 - You can either type a folder name in the **Enter the folder name here:** text box, or use the default folder name.
 - You can either click the **Browse...** button and navigate to the path where scanned documents will be stored, or enter the path in the Location text box.
 - To create a shortcut, select the **Create a shortcut to this folder on my desktop** check box.

Figure 3-48 Scan Setup Wizard–Folder Name screen



10. To require users to enter their credentials at the product, clear the **Save password on device** check box, and then click the **Next** button to continue to the **Folder Settings** screen.

-or-

To use default credentials (users do not enter their credentials at the product), select the **Save password on device** check box and enter your **Domain:**, **User Name:**, and **Password:** into the corresponding text boxes. Click the **Next** button to continue to the **Folder Settings** screen.

Figure 3-49 Scan Setup Wizard — Authentication screen

Scan Setup Wizard

hp Authentication
Configure user credentials.

Enter your password so you will not need to sign in at the device each time you scan.

Save password on device.

Domain:

User Name:

Password:

< Back Next > Cancel

11. Select the default scan settings from the drop-down lists and then click the **Next** button to continue to the **Summary** screen.

Figure 3-50 Scan Setup Wizard—Folder Settings screen

Scan Setup Wizard

hp Folder Settings
Configure the default options for the folder.

Enter the default scan settings that you want to use when scanning to this folder.

Scan Type: Color Scan

Resolution: 150 dpi

Document Type: PDF

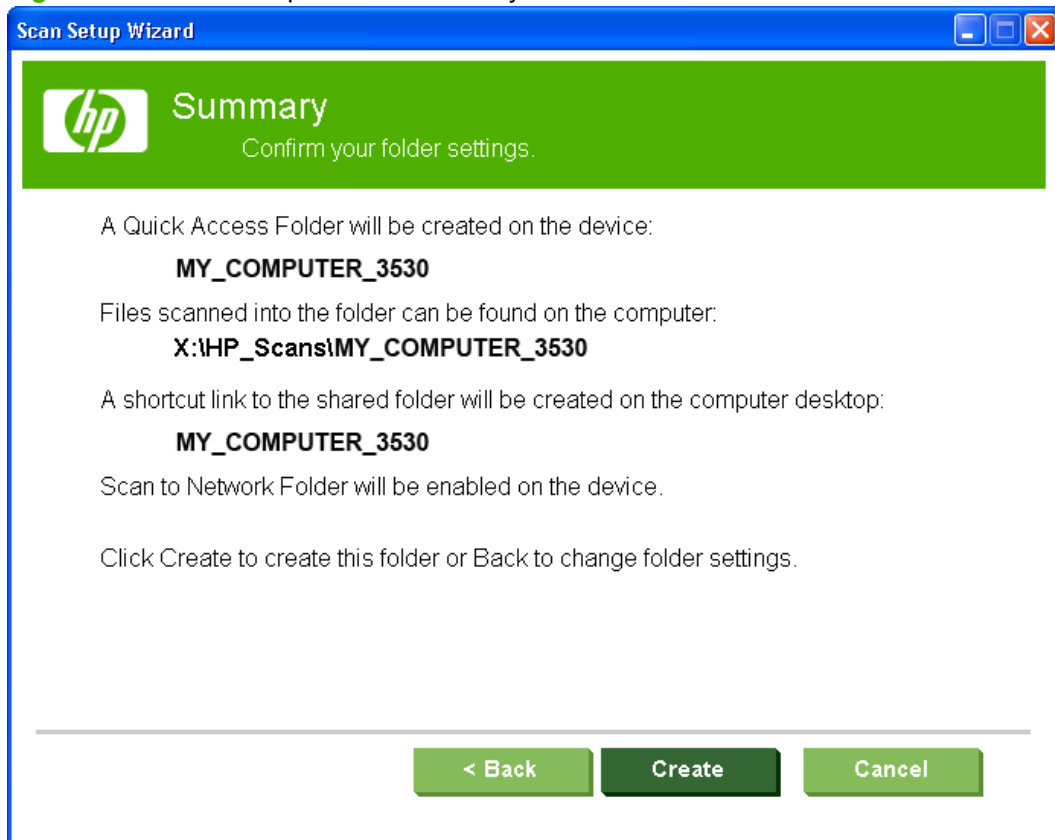
Quality: Medium

< Back Next > Cancel

12. The **Summary** screen lists the details of the folder created: the name of the computer where the folder was created, the name of the folder, and the name of the desktop shortcut link to the folder that was created on the computer.

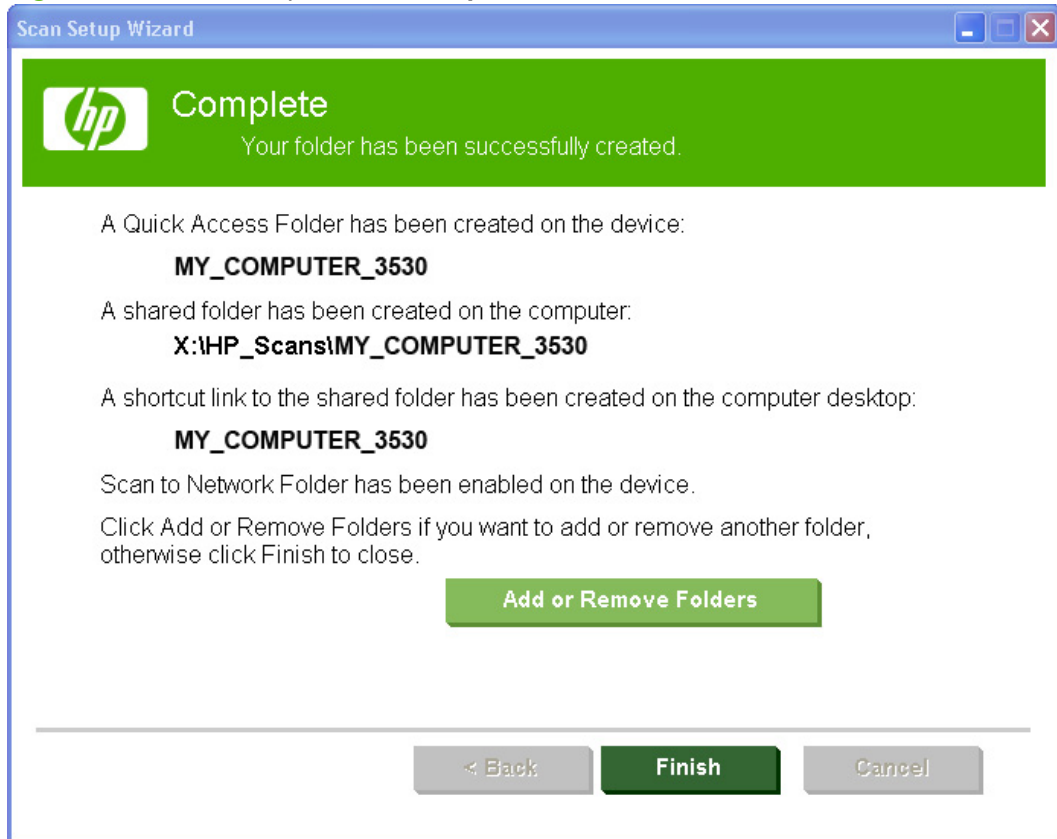
To complete the creation of the folder, click **Create**. To make changes to the folder settings, click **Back**.

Figure 3-51 Scan Setup Wizard–Summary screen



13. Click the **Add or Remove Folders** button to add another folder, or click the **Finish** button to exit the Scan Setup Wizard.


Figure 3-52 Scan Setup Wizard–**Complete** screen



Install documentation and optional software

The following optional software program is available for the product:

- HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Screen Fonts: Printer-matching TrueType fonts to help ensure screen match printing.

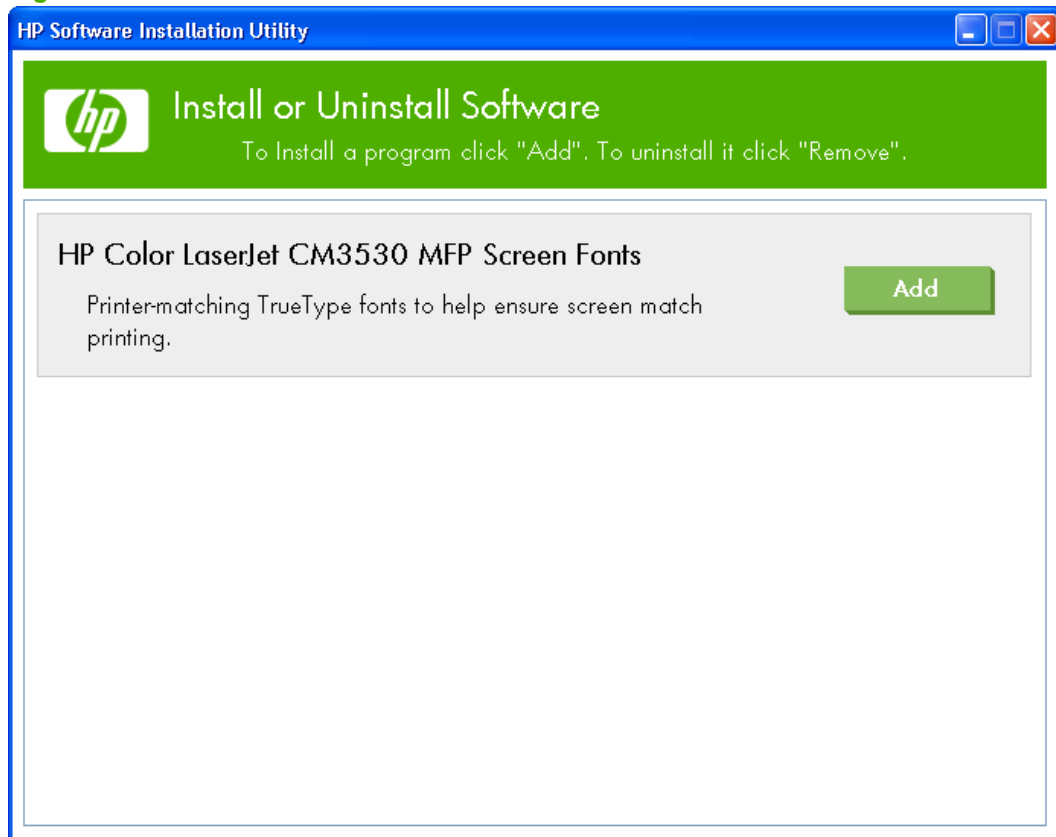
 **NOTE:** User guides are available on the User CD but are not installable.

Perform the following to install or uninstall the documentation and optional software programs:


1. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 Admin software CD into the CD-ROM drive. The installer program should open.

If the installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps:
 - a. On the **Start** menu, click **Run**.
 - b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
 - c. Click the **OK** button.
2. Click the **Advanced Install Options** button. The **Advanced Installation Options** screen appears.
3. Click the **Optional Software** button.
4. Accept the License Agreement and then click either the **Add** or the **Remove** button next to the documentation or optional software program you want to install or uninstall.

Figure 3-53 Install or Uninstall Software



Uninstall software

 **NOTE:** If the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver was installed by using the HP Driver Installation Utility, follow the instructions in the [Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Windows Add or Remove Programs feature on page 125](#). If either one was installed using the Add Printer Wizard, follow the instructions in the [Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Server Properties feature on page 128](#).


Uninstall component list

You can remove the following product components from your computer by using the Windows Add or Remove Programs feature:

- HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PCL 5 driver
- HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PCL 6 driver
- HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PS driver
- HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Screen Fonts
- HP Send Fax Driver

Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Windows Add or Remove Programs feature

If the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver was installed by the HP Driver Installation Utility (HP DIU), perform the following to uninstall the driver:

 **NOTE:** You do not need the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 printing-system software CD to use this uninstall method.

NOTE: To uninstall the software, you must log on with Administrator privileges.

1. Close all programs.
2. **Windows 2000:** On the **Start** menu, click **Settings**, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click **Add/Remove programs**.

- or -

Windows XP and Windows Server 2003: On the **Start** menu, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Add/Remove programs**.

- or -

Windows Vista: On the **Start** menu, click **Control Panel**, and then under the **Programs** menu click **Uninstall a program**.

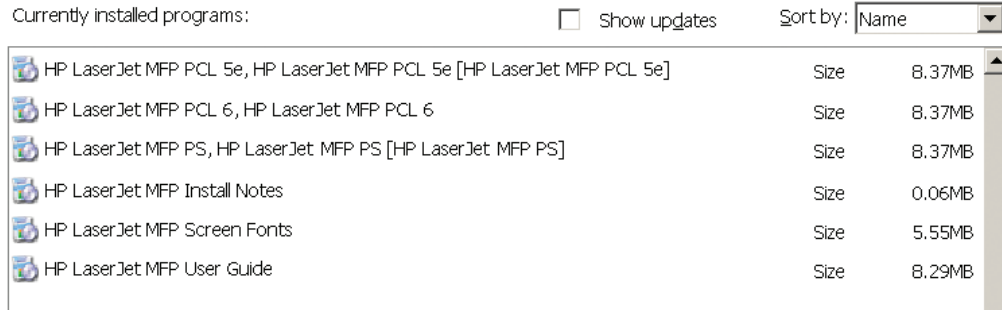
Figure 3-54 Windows Control Panel screen



3. Click **Change or Remove Programs**, select the component you want to remove, and then click **Change/Remove**. The following components might appear in the list of programs:
 - HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PCL 5 driver
 - HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PCL 6 driver

- HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PS driver
- HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Screen Fonts
- HP Send Fax Driver

Figure 3-55 Windows Change or Remove Programs screen

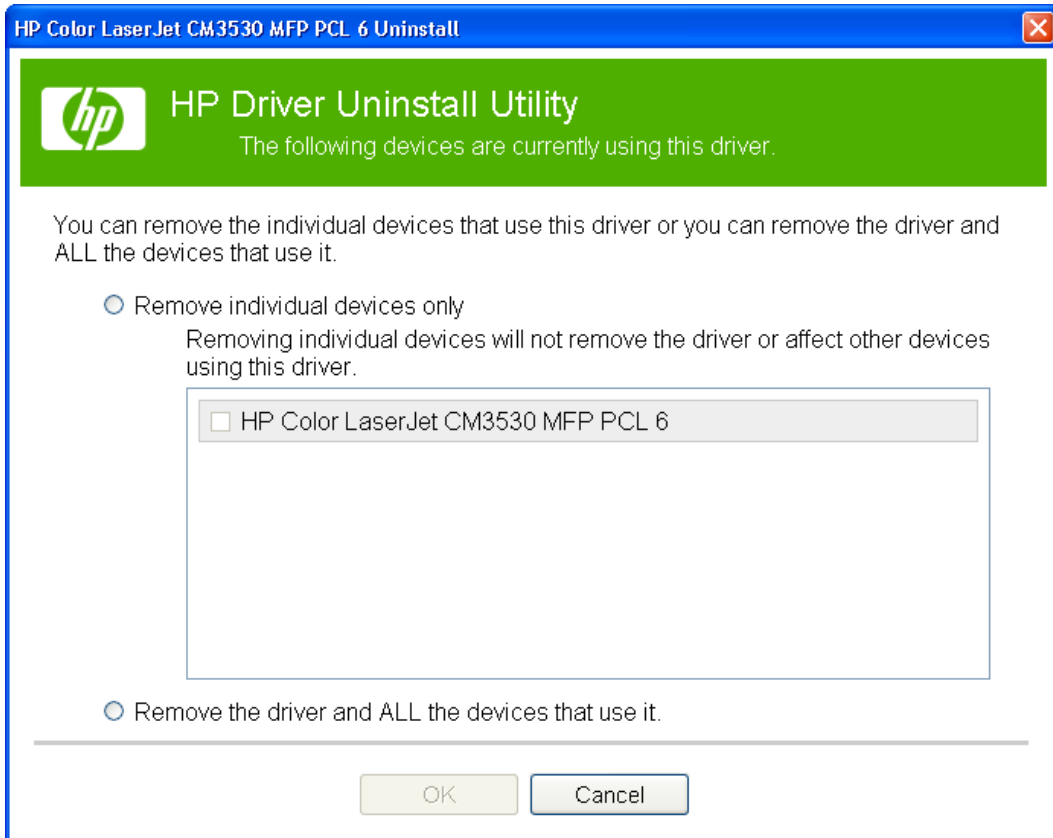


4. If you are uninstalling the PCL 5, PCL 6, PS printer driver, or the HP Send Fax Driver, go to step 5.

If you are uninstalling the screen fonts go to step 7.

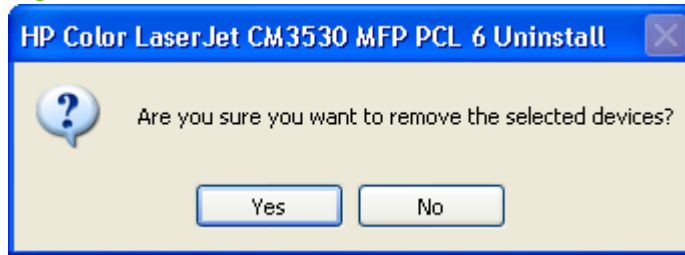
5. If you are uninstalling the PCL 5, PCL 6, PS printer driver, or the HP Send Fax Driver, the HP Driver Uninstall Utility (HPDUU) appears. Select either the **Remove individual devices only** option or the **Remove the driver and ALL the devices that use it.**, and then click **OK**.

Figure 3-56 HP Driver Uninstall Utility screen



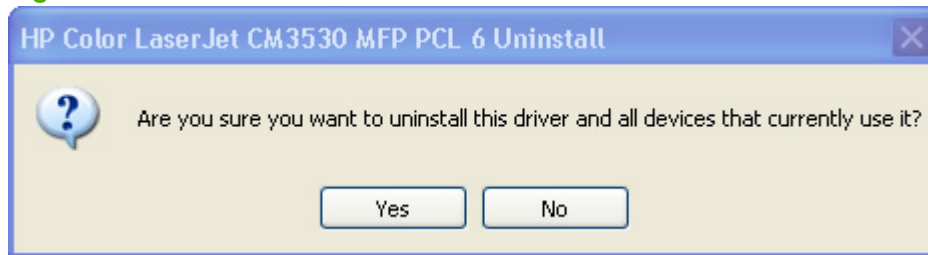
6. If you select **Remove individual devices only**, the following dialog box appears. Click the **Yes** button to continue.

Figure 3-57 Uninstall selected device screen



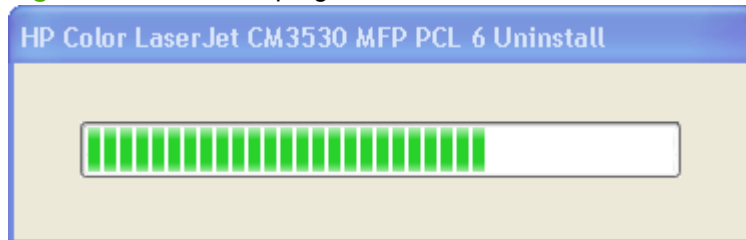
If you select **Remove the driver and ALL the devices that use it.**, the following dialog box appears. Click the **Yes** button to continue.

Figure 3-58 Uninstall all devices screen



For both options, an uninstall progress window appears. Once the uninstall has completed, the progress window closes and the Windows Add or Remove Programs dialog box refreshes.

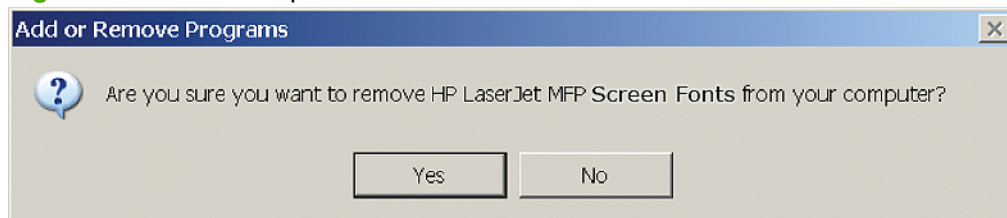
Figure 3-59 Uninstall progress window



7. If you are uninstalling the screen fonts a dialog box similar to the one below appears. Click the **Yes** button to continue.


An uninstall progress window opens. Once the uninstall has completed, the progress window closes and the Windows Add or Remove Programs dialog box refreshes.

Figure 3-60 Uninstall optional software screen



Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Server Properties feature

If the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver was installed by the Add Printer Wizard, perform the following to uninstall the driver:

 **NOTE:** To uninstall the software, you must log on with Administrator privileges.

1. Close all programs.
2. On the **Start** menu, click **Settings**, and then do one of the following:
 - Windows 2000:** Click **Printers**.
 - or-
 - Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003:** Click **Printers and Faxes**.
 - or-
 - Windows Server 2008:** Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then open the **Printers** folder.
 - or-
 - Windows Vista:** Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click **Printer**.
3. Right-click the icon for your product and then click the **Delete** button. This removes the icon for the product only, but it does not remove the associated files.
4. To remove the associated files, click the **File** menu from inside the **Printers** folder, and then click **Server Properties**.
5. Click the **Driver** tab, click the name of your product, and then click the **Remove** button. When you are prompted to confirm the deletion, click the **Yes** button.
6. Click the **Close** button to close the **Server Properties** screen, and then close the **Printers** folder.

4 HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows

Introduction

This chapter describes the features of the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit).

You can control print jobs from several places:

- The product control panel
- The software program print dialog box
- The driver user interface

Generally, for features that are duplicated in more than one location (for instance, you can select the paper input tray from any of them), settings that are established in the software program take precedence over print-driver settings. Print-driver settings, in turn, override product control-panel settings.

When you install the printing-system software in Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Microsoft Windows Vista, and Windows Server 2008, the HP PCL 6 Print Driver is the recommended driver and the first selection in the CD Browser. The HP PS Universal Print Driver and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver can be installed by download from hp.com (link in browser button). An installer is included with the driver.

Topics:

- [Gain access to print drivers](#)
- [Help system](#)
- [Advanced tab features](#)
- [Printing Shortcuts tab features](#)
- [Paper/Quality tab features](#)
- [Effects tab features](#)
- [Finishing tab features](#)
- [Job Storage tab features](#)
- [Color tab features](#)
- [Services tab features](#)
- [Device Settings tab features](#)

- [About tab features](#)

Gain access to print drivers

Depending on the operating system on which you are installing the print drivers, you can gain access to the print drivers and different print-driver interfaces in several ways.

To gain access to the print-driver settings from within most software programs, follow these steps:

1. Click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. Click **Properties**.

The appearance and names of the driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system. These driver settings apply only while that software program is open.

You can control the drivers directly from the **Printers** folder. Here you have access to two sets of driver tabs: the **Printing Preferences** tabs and the **Properties** tabs. The settings that you make on the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs control the driver default settings for each user's profile. Installable options can be configured in the **Properties** driver tabs.

Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. To gain access to these tabs, follow these steps:

1. **Windows Vista:** Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

Windows XP and Windows Server 2003: Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

Windows 2000: Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

Windows Server 2008: Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then open the **Printers** folder.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Printing Preferences**.

The following **Printing Preferences** print-driver tabs are available:

- **Advanced**
- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Job Storage**
- **Color**
- **Services**

Properties driver tabs

This set of tabs controls the driver behavior and driver connections. To gain access to the **Properties** tabs, follow these steps:

1. **Windows Vista:** Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

Windows XP and Windows Server 2003: Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

Windows 2000: Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

Windows Server 2008: Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then open the **Printers** folder.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.

The following **Properties** print-driver tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Color Management**
- **Security**
- **Device Settings**
- **About**

Help system

The HP PCL 6 Print Driver includes a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.


“What's this?” Help

Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista support **What's this?** Help. You can gain access to What's this? Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a feature or control. A pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the ? question mark button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the **X**, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. When you use this special cursor to select a control, the pop-up Help window for that control appears.
- Click a feature or control, and then press the **F1** key. The Help window for the currently selected control appears.

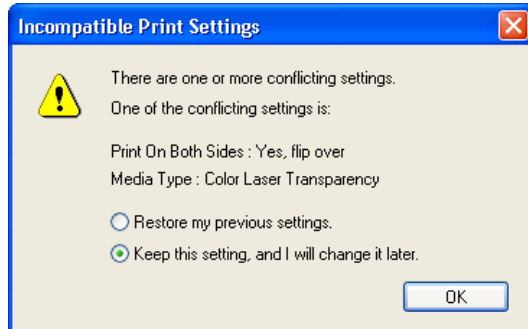
Incompatible Print Settings messages

Incompatible Print Settings (constraint) messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific print-driver selections. These messages alert you to selections that are illogical or impossible given the product capabilities or the current settings of other controls.

 **NOTE:** Constraint messages are limited, and the underlying software architecture might accept some settings that are illogical or impossible for the product to perform. Sending a job with incompatible settings can lead to unexpected results. If print jobs do not print as expected, check the product documentation for the product capabilities.


In supported Windows operating environments, some technically invalid print-driver configurations result in warning messages. Duplexing, for example, is not possible when the Transparency paper type is selected. The following figure shows an **Incompatible Print Settings** message.

Figure 4-1 An **Incompatible Print Settings** message



To resolve the conflicting settings, click **Restore my previous settings.** and then click **OK.** The driver resets the conflicting control back to its previous state.

If you want to keep the conflicting setting, click **Keep this setting, and I will change it later.** and then click **OK.**

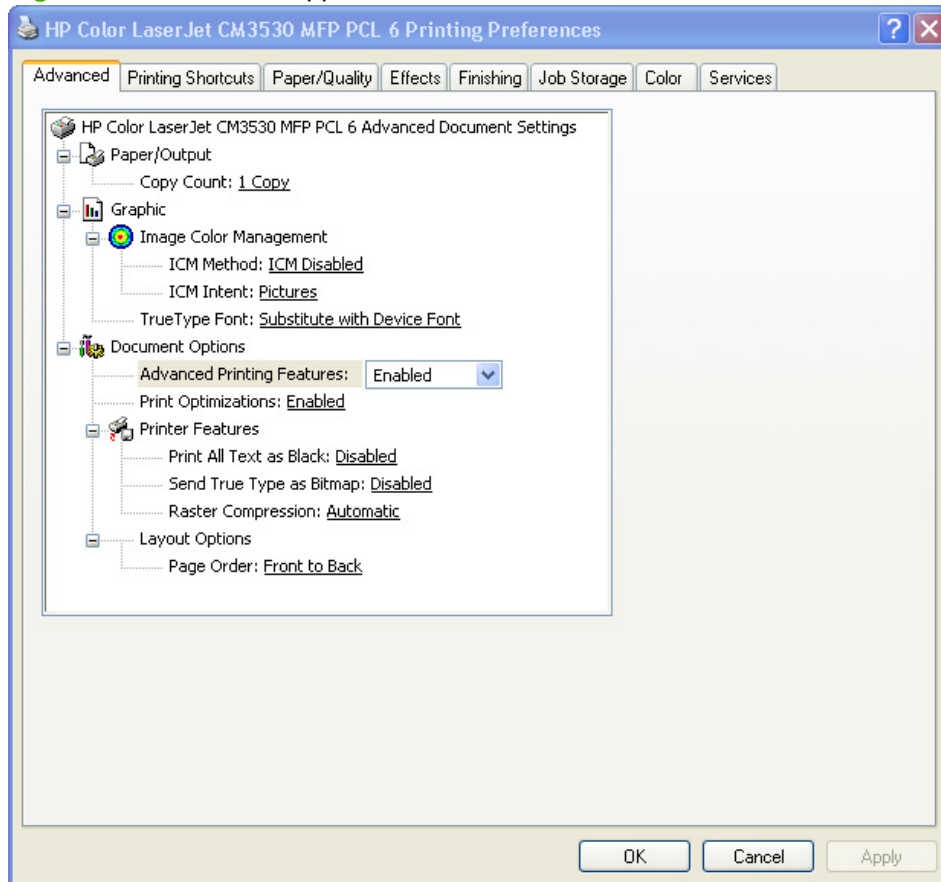
 **NOTE:** In this example, the conflict can be resolved manually. If the conflict is not resolved when the driver is closed, then the same message appears again when a print job is sent to the product.

Advanced tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Advanced** tab is in the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to gain access to these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 131](#).

Use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages. Use this tab to configure special controls that are not commonly used, as well as to control features such as paper size and copies in the driver (although most current software programs support these features in the **Print** dialog box or through the page settings in the software program). The following figure shows the **Advanced** tab.

Figure 4-2 The default appearance of the **Advanced** tab



The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls:

- [Paper/Output](#)
- [Graphic](#)
- [Document Options](#)

Paper/Output

The **Paper/Output** control contains the **Copy Count** setting.

Copy Count

Copy Count: Specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The number of copies that you request appears in the **Copy Count** option. You can select the number by typing in the text box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the text box. Valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used. When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the text box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than the maximum allowed) are changed to the last valid value that appeared in the text box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because you can set the number of copies that you want from some software programs, conflicts between the software program you are using and the driver can arise. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For these programs, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. It is recommended that you set the number of copies in the program, whenever possible.

Graphic

The **Graphic** control contains the following settings:

- **Image Color Management** settings
- **TrueType Font** settings

Image Color Management

The Image Color Management (ICM) options are used for printing color graphics. ICM, a set of calculations for color matching, makes it possible for programs to adjust colors before printing so that the color of images on the screen more closely match the color of those images when they are printed. The following options are available:

- **ICM Method:** This setting specifies how to print color graphics. **ICM Disabled** is the default setting.
 - Select **ICM Handled by Host System** if you want the host computer to perform calculations for color matching before it sends the document to the product.
 - Select **ICM Handled by Printer** if you want the HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series product to perform calculations for color matching. In this case, a set of rules for mapping the colors is created and downloaded to the product. The product uses these rules to adjust colors in the document.
- **ICM Intent:** This setting specifies how color images are created to produce the image that looks best on the printed page.
 - Select **Graphics** if you are printing a chart or using fully saturated, bright colors.
 - Select **Pictures** for photographs or pictures where the colors blend together to maximize the contrast. **Pictures** is the default setting.
 - Select **Proof** if your document uses a color that you need to match exactly, and you are sending the document to a product that has that specific color of ink.
 - Select **Match** if you want to preview the color settings from another product.

TrueType Font

Use **Substitute with Device Font** (the default setting) to print documents that contain TrueType fonts by using equivalent printer fonts. This permits faster printing; however, you might lose special characters that the equivalent printer font does not support. Select **Download as Softfont** to download TrueType fonts for printing instead of using printer fonts.

Document Options

The **Document Options** control contains the following settings:

- [Advanced Printing Features](#)
- [Print Optimizations](#)
- [Printer Features](#)
- [Layout Options](#)

Advanced Printing Features

When the **Advanced Printing Features:** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and **Finishing** tab options such as **Page order:**, **Booklet layout:**, and **Pages per sheet:** are available, depending on your product.

Enhanced metafile spooling is used to greatly reduce the amount of time that elapses between a request to print (initiated by an application) and the return of control to the application by the operating system.

For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features:** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, you can disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still appear in the print driver, even though they have been disabled. If you select an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab, the feature is automatically re-enabled.

Print Optimizations

The default setting for **Print Optimizations:** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and your document contains overlapping text and graphics, the text that is placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, you can disable this feature. When this feature is disabled, print optimization features, such as substituting device fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

Printer Features

The **Printer Features** control contains the following settings:

- **Print All Text as Black**

The feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (Using white text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic.

- **Send TrueType as Bitmap**

Send TrueType as Bitmap: Provides an alternative for software programs that have trouble using TrueType fonts for special graphic aspects such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are converted to Bitmap soft fonts before downloading. The **Enabled** setting causes the driver to send TrueType fonts to the product as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

- **Raster Compression**

Use the **Raster Compression:** feature to select the graphics-compression method.

- **Automatic.** The software determines the best compression method to use.
- **Best Quality.** This option forces the software to use a lossless compression method. (Lossless means that no data is lost during compression.)
- **Maximum Compression.** Where applicable, this option requires the software to always use a lossy compression method (some data is lost).

- **Alternative Letterhead Mode**

When selected, this option eliminates the need to flip or reload letterhead or preprinted paper in a tray, whether you are printing on one or both sides of the sheet. Load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. If the product tray has an icon that indicates whether to load paper either face-up or face-down, load the paper in the opposite orientation of that shown. The default setting is **Off**.


When this option is selected, you must use one of the following options in the **Paper type** setting:

- Letterhead
- Preprinted

Layout Options

Layout Options contains the **Page Order:** setting.

Page Order: Specifies the order in which the pages of your document are printed. **Front to Back** (default setting) prints the document so that page 1 prints first. **Back to Front** prints the document so that page 1 prints last.

 **NOTE:** The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if you set **Pages per sheet:** (on the **Finishing** tab) to be greater than 1, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

Printing Shortcuts tab features

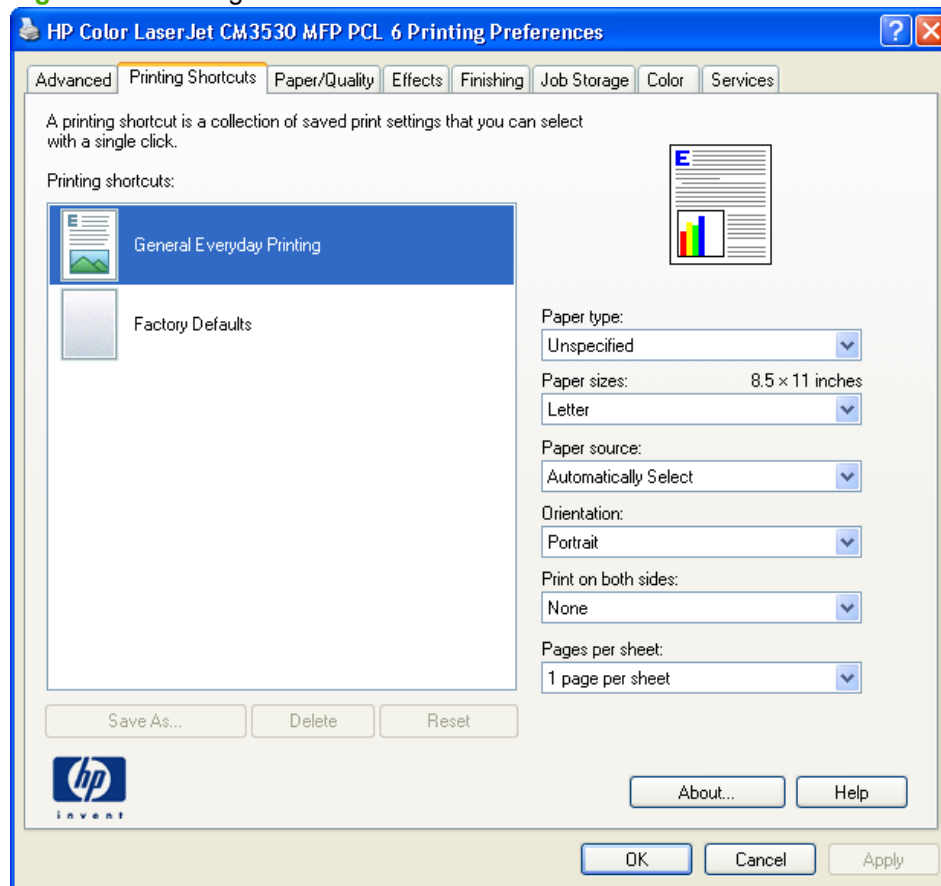
- [Use defined printing shortcuts](#)
- [Create a custom printing shortcut](#)

 **NOTE:** The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is in the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to gain access to these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 131](#).

Use the **Printing Shortcuts** tab to store specific combinations of driver settings for easy use.

The following figure shows the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

Figure 4-3 Printing Shortcuts tab



Printing Shortcuts is a new tab that appears on the HP PCL 6 Print Driver beginning with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP. In previous drivers, the Print Task Quick Sets appeared in most of the driver tabs and was used to capture commonly used driver settings. Like Quick Sets, the **Printing Shortcuts** tab saves commonly used driver settings under a shortcut name.


- [Use defined printing shortcuts](#)
- [Create a custom printing shortcut](#)

Use defined printing shortcuts

The **Printing Shortcuts** tab contains the following control sets:

- [General Everyday Printing](#)

- [Factory Defaults](#)

 **NOTE:** Selections (for example, paper types) that are found under the **Printing Shortcuts** tab may include all items found in other driver tabs. The selection list may be shortened under a shortcut for simplification.

General Everyday Printing

When **General Everyday Printing** is selected, the following controls are available:

- **Paper type:**
- **Paper sizes:**
- **Paper source:**
- **Orientation:**
- **Print on both sides:**
- **Pages per sheet:**

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click **Save as...** to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to change customized settings back to the default settings.

Paper type

The following options are available:

- **Unspecified** (default)
- **Plain**
- **Light 60 - 74g**
- **Intermediate 85 - 95g**
- **Bond**
- **Recycled**
- **Mid-weight 96 - 110g**
- **Heavy 111 - 130g**
- **Heavy Glossy 111 - 130g**
- **Extra Heavy 131 - 175g**
- **Extra Heavy Glossy 131 - 175g**
- **Cardstock 176 - 220g**
- **Card Glossy 176 - 220g**
- **Color Laser Transparency**
- **Labels**

- **Letterhead**
- **Envelope**
- **Preprinted**
- **Prepunched**
- **Colored**
- **Rough**
- **HP Tough Paper**

Paper sizes

The following options are available:

- **Letter** (default)
- **Legal**
- **Executive**
- **Statement**
- **8.5 x 13**
- **4 x 6**
- **5 x 8**
- **A4**
- **A5**
- **A6**
- **B5 (JIS)**
- **B6 (JIS)**
- **8K 270 x 390mm**
- **16K 195 x 270mm**
- **Double Japan Postcard Rotated**

Paper source

The following options are available:

- **Automatically Select** (default)
- **Printer auto select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1**

- **Tray 2**
- **Tray 3** (if installed)

Orientation

The following options are available:

- **Portrait** (default)
- **Landscape**

Print on both sides

The following options are available:

- **No** (default)
- **Yes, Flip Over**
- **Yes, Flip Up**

Pages per sheet

The following options are available:

- **1 page per sheet** (default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

Factory Defaults

When **Factory Defaults** is selected, the customizable options are unavailable, and the default options are locked in.

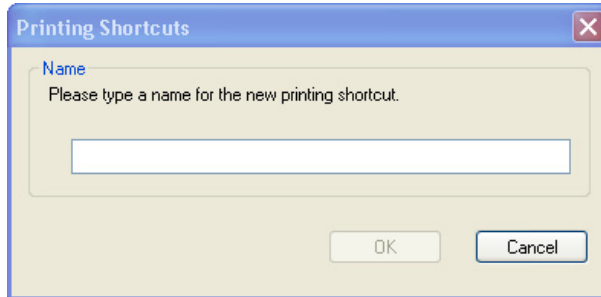
The **Factory Defaults** are as follows:

- **Paper source: Automatically select**
- **Paper sizes: Letter/A4** (This setting changes according to country/region.)
- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Orientation: Portrait**
- **Print on both sides: No**

Create a custom printing shortcut

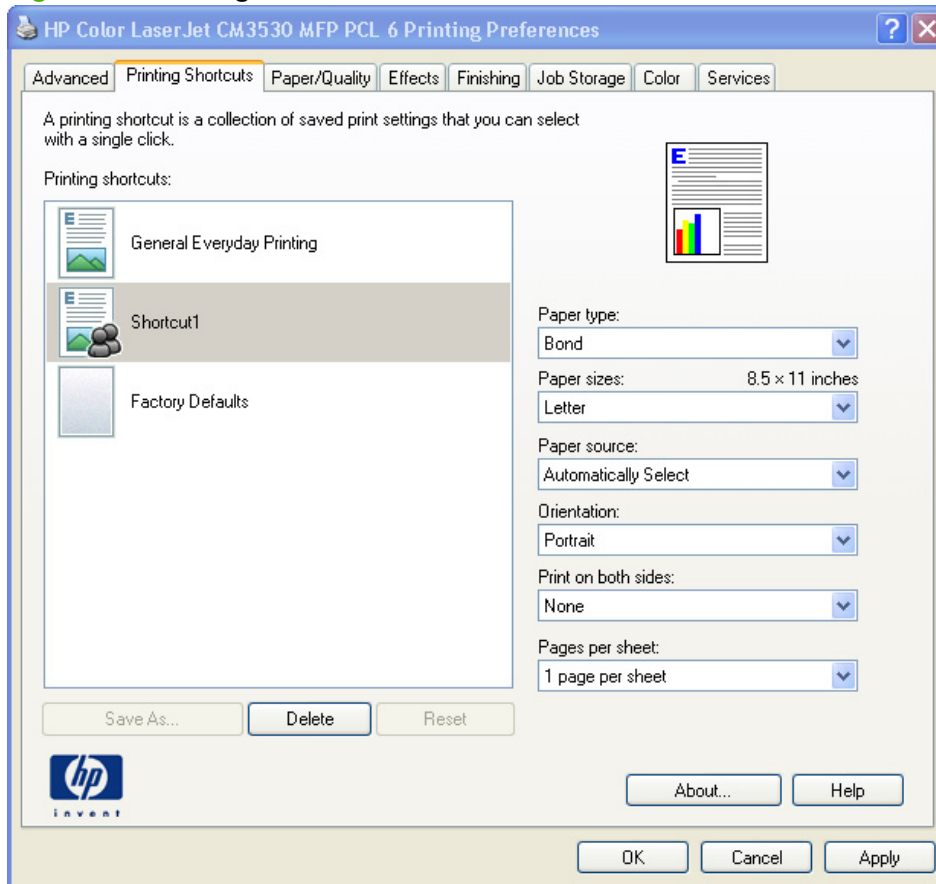
1. Select **General Everyday Printing** as a base.
2. Select the appropriate print settings on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab or use the settings on any of the **Printing Preferences** tabs.
3. On the **Printing Shortcuts** tab, click **Save As...**. The **Printing Shortcuts** dialog box appears.

Figure 4-4 Printing Shortcuts dialog box



4. Type a name for the custom printing shortcut, and then click **OK**. The custom printing shortcut appears in the **Printing Shortcuts** list.

Figure 4-5 Printing Shortcuts tab—Custom shortcut



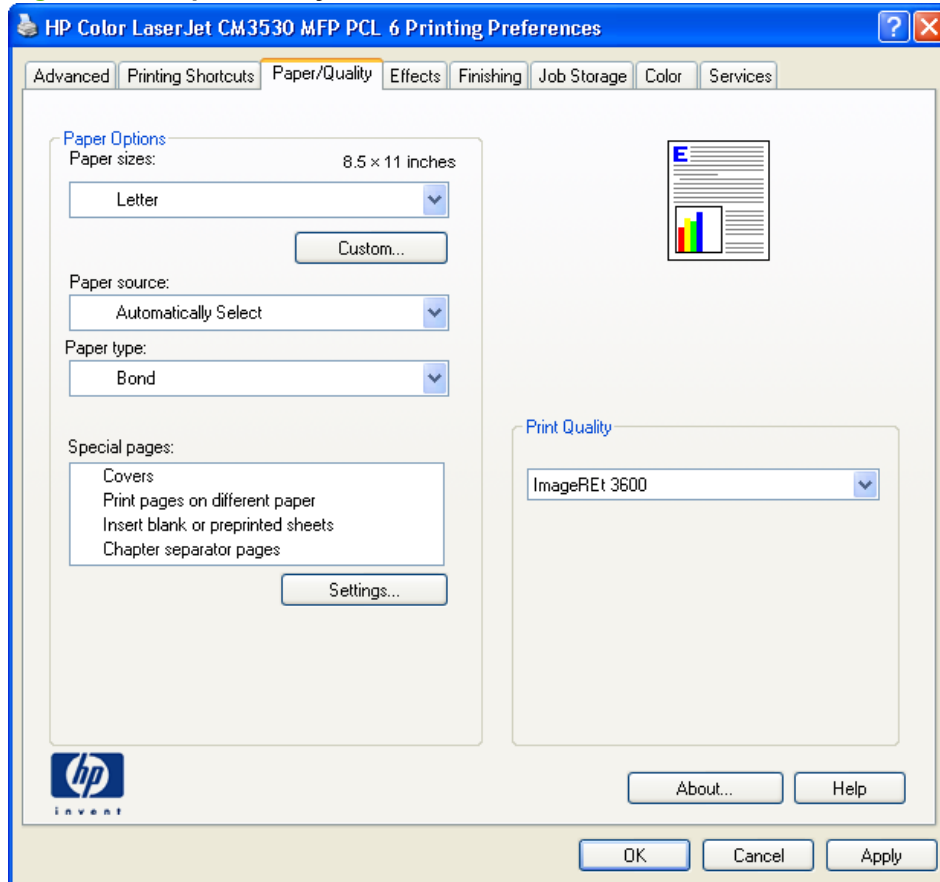
5. To delete a custom printing shortcut, click the custom shortcut, then click **Delete**.

Paper/Quality tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Paper/Quality** tab is in the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to gain access to these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 131](#).

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify paper size, type, and source. You can also use this tab to specify different paper selections for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Figure 4-6 Paper/Quality tab



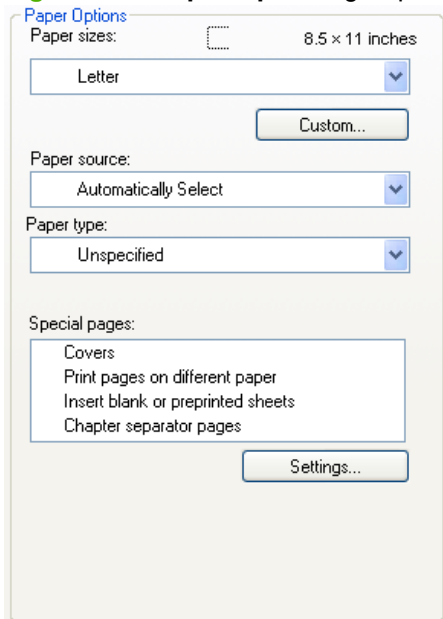
The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following control sets:

- [Paper Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Print Quality](#)

Paper Options

The settings in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections that are available by default.

Figure 4-7 Paper Options group box



The settings in the **Paper Options** group box are described in the following order:


- [Paper sizes](#)
- [Custom Paper Size](#)
- [Paper source](#)
- [Paper type](#)
- [Special pages](#)

Paper sizes

The **Paper sizes:** drop-down menu lists all of the supported paper sizes.


When you move the mouse over the dimensions label, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, it is generally best to use the driver to set the paper size only when you are printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different paper sizes.

 **NOTE:** Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different paper sizes within a single document.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper size that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper size or select another tray.

For information about paper sizes, see [Engineering details on page 233](#).

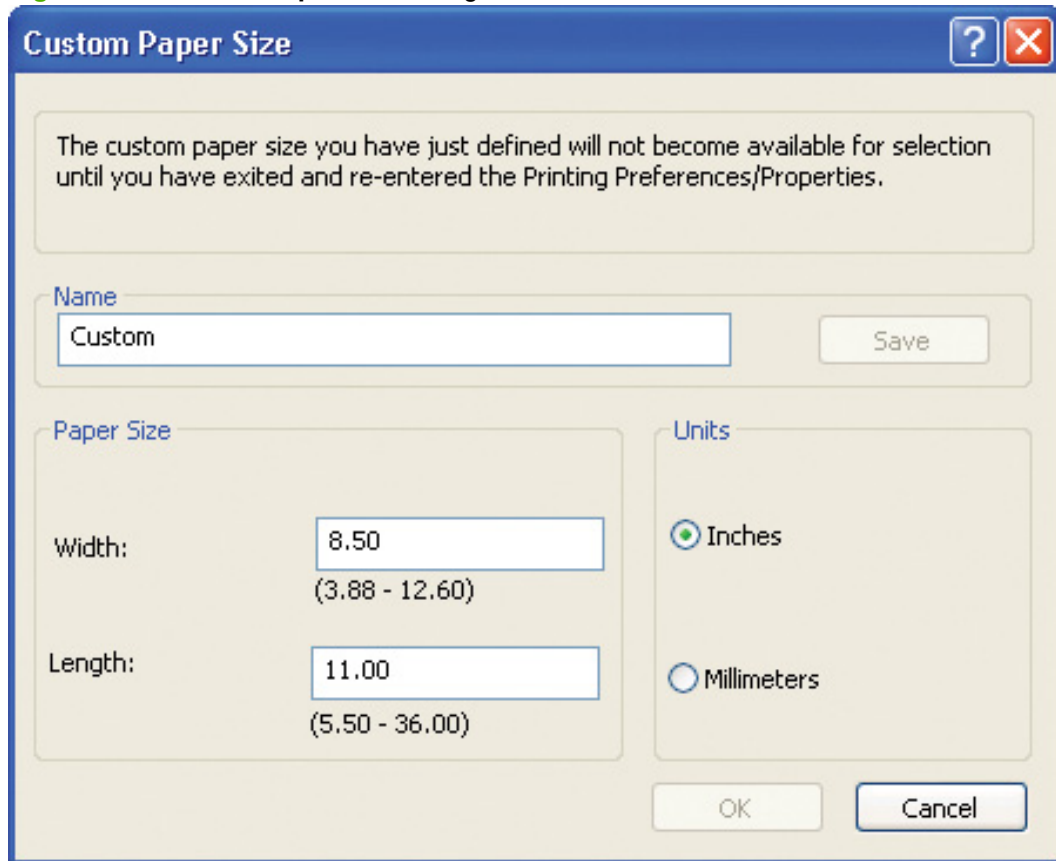
 **NOTE:** Several **Paper Sizes** are listed in the paper size drop-down menus that are physically too large for the printer, such as 11x17, A3, B4, 8k. These sizes are included for scaling purposes— the printer scales down the printed output from a larger original size used by a software program.

When the settings under the **Special pages:** section have been changed, the **Paper sizes:**, **Paper source:**, and **Paper type:** menus change also, offering a variety of options. For more information, see [Special pages on page 148](#).

Custom Paper Size

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears when you click **Custom...** on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The following figure shows the initial appearance of the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box.

Figure 4-8 Custom Paper Size dialog box



Name

Use the **Name** text box to type a name for a new custom paper size or to rename an existing paper size.

The text that appears in the **Name** text box is one of the following::

- The name of the any custom paper size that is selected on the **Paper/Quality** tab.
- "Custom" if a standard paper size has been selected on the **Paper/Quality** tab.
- Any text that has been typed into the **Name** text box. This text remains in the text box until the new size is saved or the dialog box is closed.

If you type a new name into the **Name** text box but then do not click **Save**, you can change the **Width:** and **Length:** values without losing the name. However, if you close the dialog box without clicking **Save**, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning.

Paper Size

The **Width:** and **Length:** values can be changed by typing numeric strings into the edit boxes.

Any entry that is too large is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is too small is rounded up to the minimum valid entry.

If units are in millimeters, the custom paper-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom paper-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the last valid entry. Width and length entries are validated when the focus changes.

The resolution of each control is 1/100 of a millimeter or 1/100 of an inch, depending on the current measurement units.

Units

To change measurement units, click one of the options in the **Units** group box (either **Inches** or **Millimeters**).

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum paper size for this product is 98.4 x 148.0 mm (3.87 x 5.83 in) and the maximum is 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14.0 inches). The following table summarizes paper size limits for each paper-handling device.

Table 4-1 PCL 6 custom paper sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose)	Width	98.4 mm (3.87 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)
Tray 2 (250-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.27 inches)	297.0 mm (11.69 inches)
Tray 3 (500-sheet), if installed	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	152.4 mm (6.00 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)

Paper source

The **Paper source:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories that are installed. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Paper source:** drop-down menu can contain the following options, depending on what has been installed on the product:

- **Automatically Select**
- **Printer Auto Select**

- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1** (100-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 2** (250-sheet tray)
- **Tray 3** (500-sheet tray), if installed

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the product uses the source tray that supports the paper size that you have selected. If you select a setting other than **Automatically Select**, make sure that the correct paper size is loaded in the source tray. For information about paper sources, see [Engineering details on page 233](#).

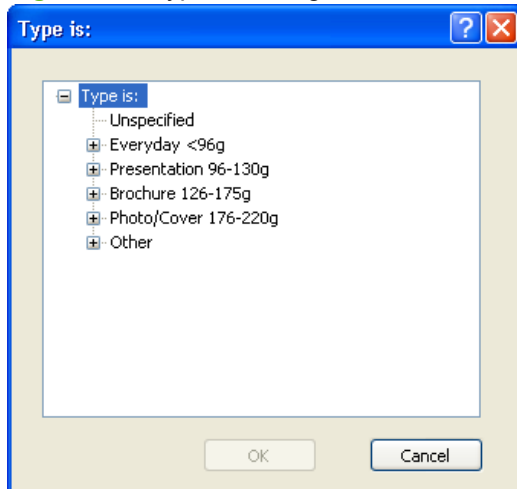
Paper type

The **Paper type**: drop-down menu contains two selections: **Unspecified** and **More**.

The default setting, **Unspecified**, uses the default paper type, which is usually **Plain**.

Selecting **More** opens the **Type is:** dialog box.

Figure 4-9 Type is: dialog box



The **Type is:** dialog box contains the following paper types:

- **Unspecified**
- **Everyday <96g**
 - **Plain**
 - **Light 60–74g**
 - **Intermediate 85–95g**
 - **Bond**
 - **Recycled**

- **Presentation 96–130g**
 - **Mid-Weight 96–110g**
 - **Heavy 111–130g**
 - **Heavy Glossy 111–130g**
- **Brochure 126–175g**
 - **Extra Heavy 131–175g**
 - **Extra Heavy Glossy 131–175g**
- **Photo/Cover 176–220g**
 - **Cardstock 176–220g**
 - **Cardstock Glossy 176–220g**
- **Other**
 - **Color Laser Transparency**
 - **Labels**
 - **Letterhead**
 - **Envelope**
 - **Preprinted**
 - **Prepunched**
 - **Colored**
 - **Rough**
 - **HP Tough Paper**

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom paper types through the driver. Custom types can be added only through the bidirectional communication mechanism, so they must already exist in the product when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, then the information on an updated list of paper types is returned. If bidirectional communication is not enabled, then the driver looks for custom paper types that have been saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom paper types are available through the driver.

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the paper type. If you select a different setting, make sure that the correct paper type is loaded in the tray that you selected in the **Paper source:** setting. For more information about paper types, see [Engineering details on page 233](#).

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper type that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper type or select another tray.

Special pages

To specify special pages to be used, click the **Settings...** button under **Special pages:**.


Covers

To specify cover settings, click **Covers** on the **Special pages:** window, then click **Settings...**

Use the **Covers** options to include a blank or preprinted cover on a document or to include a front/back cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the document.

The following are the **Covers** options:

- **Add a blank or preprinted cover:** Select which cover is customized: **Front**, **Back**, or **Both**.
- **Paper source:** This setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a front and/or back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** This setting specifies the paper size to use for front and/or back covers. Changes made to the **Paper type:** setting here override any previous **Paper type:** settings that use the same paper source.

 **NOTE:** The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet layout:** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. The **Back Cover** setting is unavailable, because this page would be printed in the middle of a booklet.

NOTE: The same size of paper will be used for the entire print job.

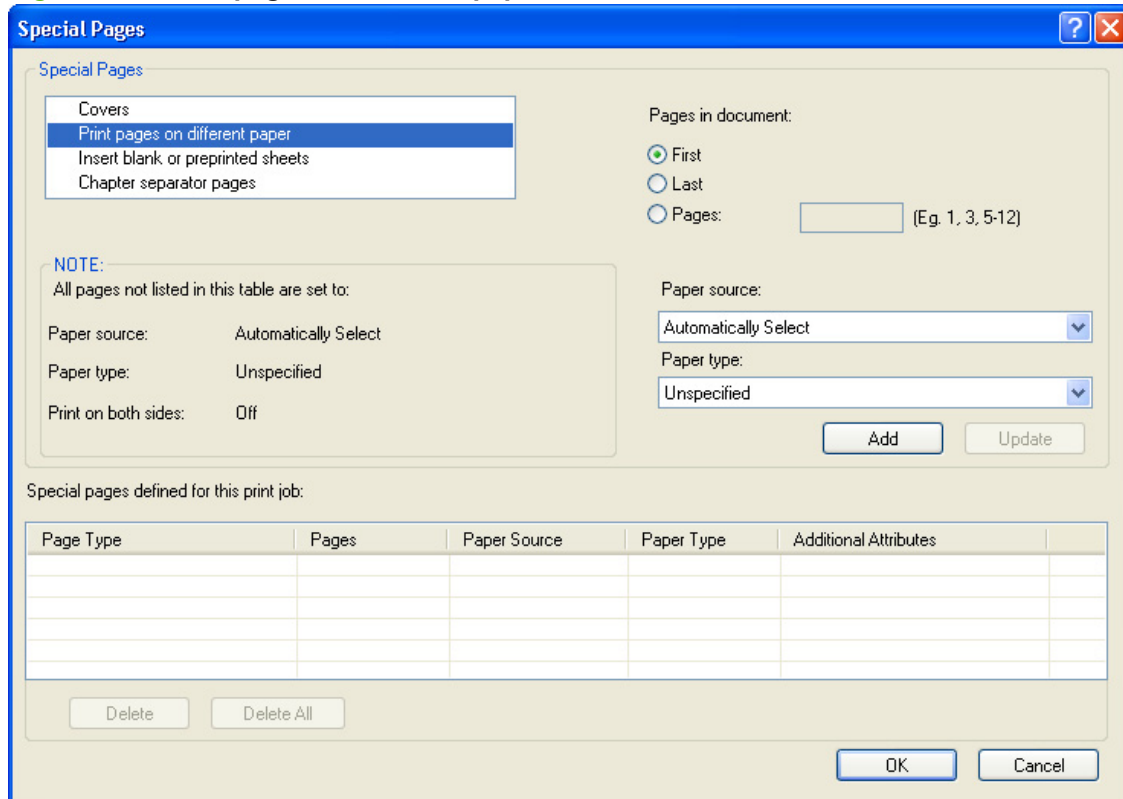
When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you quit the software program.

Print pages on different paper

Use the **Print pages on different paper** options to select an alternative paper type or source for the first or last page of a document.

The following figure shows the **Print pages on different paper** settings and options.

Figure 4-10 Print pages on different paper—First or Last



The following are the **Print pages on different paper** options:

- **Pages in document:** Select which pages are customized: the **First** page, the **Last** page, or **Pages:** to select a range of pages or non-sequential, individual pages.
- **Paper source:** This setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** This drop-down menu shows all of the paper types that the product supports.

 **NOTE:** The same type of paper is used for the entire print job.

When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Insert blank or preprinted sheets

Use the **Insert blank or preprinted sheets** option to specify the page numbers where blank or preprinted sheets are to be inserted. **Paper Source:** and **Type:** can also be selected.

Chapter separator pages

Use the **Chapter separator pages** option to insert separator pages between chapters. **Paper Source:** and **Type:** can also be selected.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Print Quality

The **Print Quality** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print Quality drop-down menu](#)

Print Quality drop-down menu

Use this control to select a print quality. Numeric values are in dots per inch (dpi). ImageREt settings precisely control colors by combining up to 4 colors within a single dot and varying the amount of toner in a given area to create millions of smooth colors, sharp images, and crisp text.

The **Print Quality** drop-down menu contains the following resolution options.

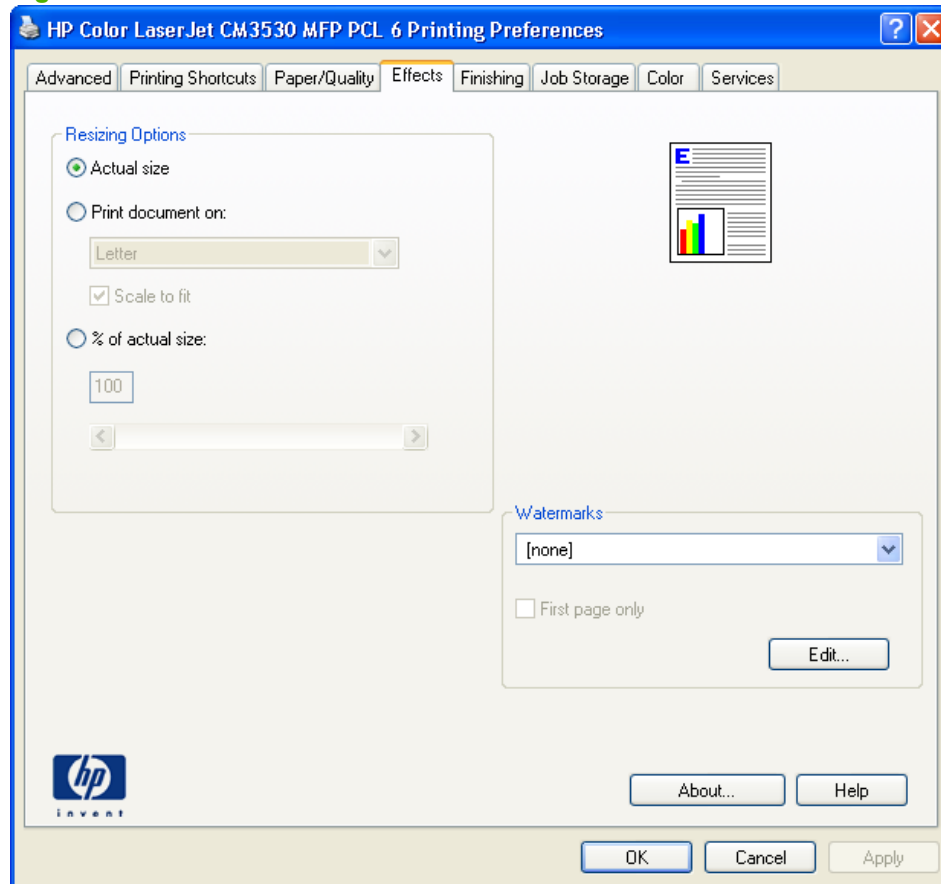
- **ImageREt 3600.** HP ImageREt 3600 is an HP proprietary printing solution that uses multiple technologies (laser imaging, printing mechanism, color control, media sensing, etc.) together to produce a high-quality image. With HP ImageREt 3600, the printer is designed and configured to automatically produce the best possible output for all your printed documents. The dpi specification describes only a small part of the printing system. Dpi, by itself, does not accurately represent the quality of the final image when ImageREt is used.
- **1200 x 600.** This setting is the best option for printing line images and fine text. It provides laser-class print quality but is slower than ImageREt 3600.

Effects tab features

NOTE: The **Effects** tab is in the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to gain access to these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 131](#).

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks. The following figure shows the **Effects** tab.

Figure 4-11 Effects tab



The **Effects** tab contains the following controls:

- [Resizing Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Watermarks](#)

Resizing Options

The **Resizing Options** group box consists of the following controls:

- **Actual size** (default)
- **Print document on:**
- **Scale to fit**
- **% of actual size:**

Actual size

Actual size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print document on

Click the **Print document on:** option to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

Print document on: control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

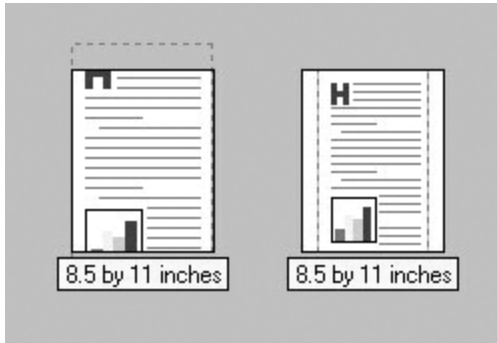
- The **% of actual size:** value is selected.
- The **Pages per sheet:** value (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print document on:** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the paper sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard paper sizes that the selected paper source supports and any custom sizes that you have created. When **Print document on:** is selected, **Scale to fit** is automatically selected. Clear this check box if you do not want your document reduced or enlarged to fit on the selected paper.

Scale to fit

The **Scale to fit** option box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to fit** is selected when **Print document on:** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following figure shows the effect that **Scale to fit** has on a document formatted for Legal-size paper but printed on Letter.

Figure 4-12 Preview images – Legal on Letter; **Scale to Fit** off (left) and on (right)



When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target paper size.

% of actual size

The **% of actual size:** option provides a slider bar for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting is 100%. Actual size is defined as the paper size that is selected within the driver or the size that the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the product.

The limits of the range are from 25% to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the Tab key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the slider bar is dragged, and the document preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

To achieve an exact scaling value, either use the slider bar to approximate the value that you want and then use the arrows to refine the value, or type the value into the edit box.

The following settings disable **% of actual size**:

- **Print document on:** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected
- **Pages per sheet:** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Watermarks

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create a new watermark (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(none)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

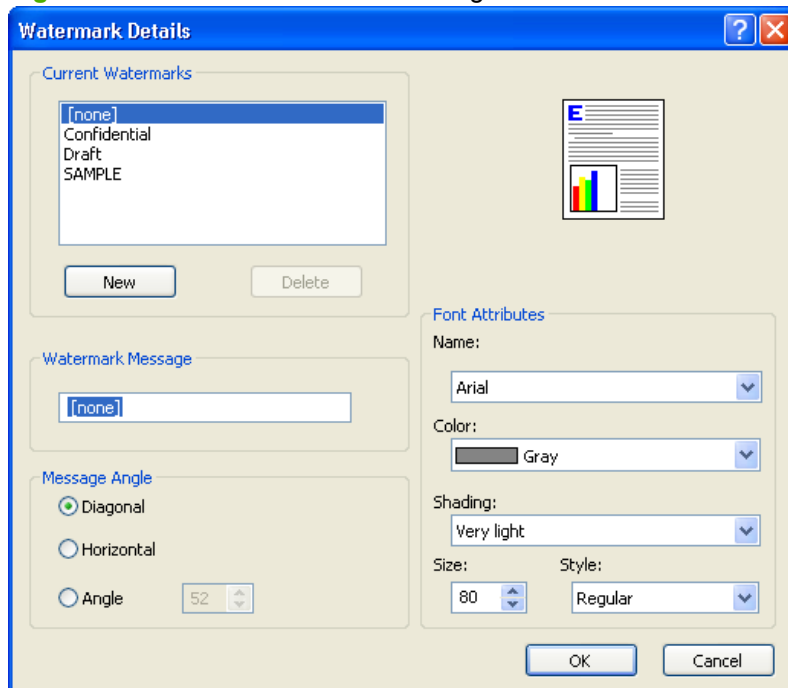
The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus **(none)** which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark that is selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First page only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First page only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is **(none)**.

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per sheet:** is set to **4** and **First page only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears.

Figure 4-13 Watermark Details dialog box



The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.


Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Current Watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that you have created.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as "**Untitled**" until you type a new name in the **Watermark Message** edit box. The new name then appears in the **Current Watermarks** group box, in the **Watermark Details** dialog box, and in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab.

To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**. At the warning that appears, click **Cancel** to keep the watermark, or click **OK** to delete it.

 **NOTE:** When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time, the **New** button is disabled.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you can have several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number 2 is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations on the page. All settings center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. The following settings are available:

- **Diagonal.** This is the default setting. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.
- **Horizontal.** Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page.
- **Angle.** Select this setting to place the text at the specified angle across the page. Use the numeric spin box to select the angle.

Font Attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls:

- **Name**

The **Name:** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language dependent.

- **Color**

The **Color:** drop-down menu contains the following selections:

- **Gray**
- **Red**
- **Yellow**
- **Green**
- **Cyan**
- **Blue**
- **Magenta**
- **Shading**

The default **Shading**: setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu:

- **Lightest**
- **Very light** (default)
- **Light**
- **Medium light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. **Light** produces a lightly saturated gray watermark, **Lightest** produces the lightest shade of watermark, and **Darkest** produces a black watermark.

- **Size**

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language dependent.

- **Style**

The following settings are available:

- **Regular**
- **Bold**
- **Italic**
- **Bold Italic**

- The default **Style**: setting for new and preset watermarks is **Regular**.

Default watermark settings

The following table shows **Font Attribute** settings for new and preset watermarks.

Table 4-2 Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks

Setting	New watermark	Preset watermark
Name	Arial	Varies by language
Color	Gray	Gray
Shading	Very light	Very light
Size	80	Varies by language
Style	Regular	Regular

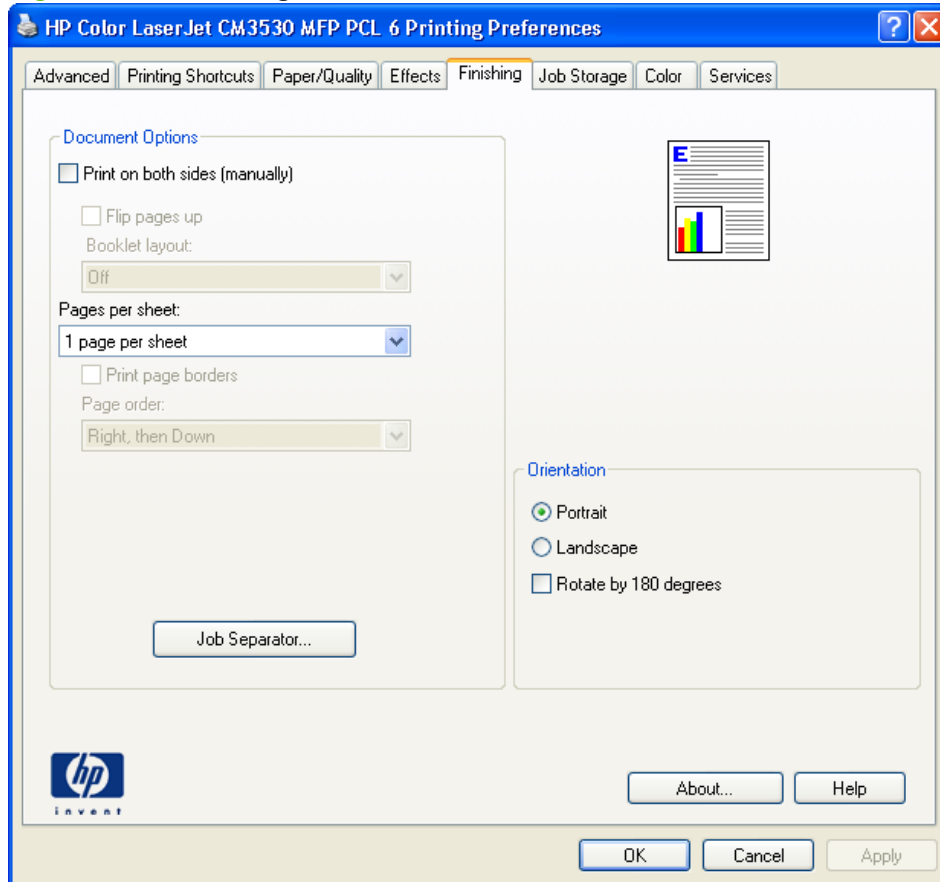
Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that have been made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. Clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Finishing tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Finishing** tab is on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to gain access to these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 131](#).

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the paper output. The following figure shows the **Finishing** tab.

Figure 4-14 Finishing tab



The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls:

- [Document Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Job Separator](#)
- [Orientation](#)

Document Options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print on both sides](#)
- [Flip pages up](#)
- [Booklet layout](#)

- [Pages per sheet](#)
- [Print page borders](#)
- [Page order](#)

Print on both sides

The default setting for **Print on both sides** is off (not selected). **Print on both sides** is available when the following conditions exist:

- **Paper type:** on the **Paper/Quality** tab is set to any paper type *except for* the following types:
 - **Labels**
 - **Color Laser Transparency**
 - **Envelope**
 - **Cardstock 176–220g**
- **Paper sizes:** is set to any paper size *except for* the following sizes:
 - **Envelope #10**
 - **Double Postcard (JIS)**
 - **Envelope #9**
 - **Envelope Monarch**
 - **Envelope B5**
 - **Envelope C5**
 - **Envelope C6**
 - **Envelope DL**
 - **Statement**
 - **4x6**
 - **5x8**
 - **A6**
 - **B6**



NOTE: The check box for **Print on both sides (manually)** is not disabled if paper types or sizes that are not allowed for duplexing are selected. However, on the **Paper/Quality** tab next to the paper type or size setting, a caution symbol shows if a selection is not supported by the printer.

Print on both sides (automatically)

The smart duplexing feature increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit even when the duplexing feature has been selected in the driver.

All paper types support the smart duplexing feature, except for paper types that cannot be printed on both sides (such as labels, transparencies, and envelopes) and the following paper types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Cardstock

When the paper type is set to **Unspecified**, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the product needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a paper type, you are, in effect, instructing the product to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the paper with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. For the best print quality, a different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.


Print on both sides (manually)

- **Manually Print on 2nd Side** is *not* selected by default.

Select the **Print on both sides (manually)** check box to print on the second side of the paper when the paper type and/or paper size is not supported by the duplexing unit. The CM3530 MFP always comes with a duplexing unit installed, so manual duplexing is only needed for the following paper sizes and types:

Sizes: Statement
4x6
5x8
A6
B6
Double Postcard (JIS)

Types: Cardstock 176–220g

 **NOTE:** **Print on both sides (manually)** is only available for the sizes and types shown above because they are not supported by the duplexing unit. To manually print on both sides for any sizes and types (except transparencies, envelopes, and labels), the duplex unit (for 2-sided printing) must be set to **Not Installed** (under **Device Settings**) to disable automatic duplexing. Otherwise, only the sizes and types shown above will display the **Print on both sides (manually)** check box in the driver.

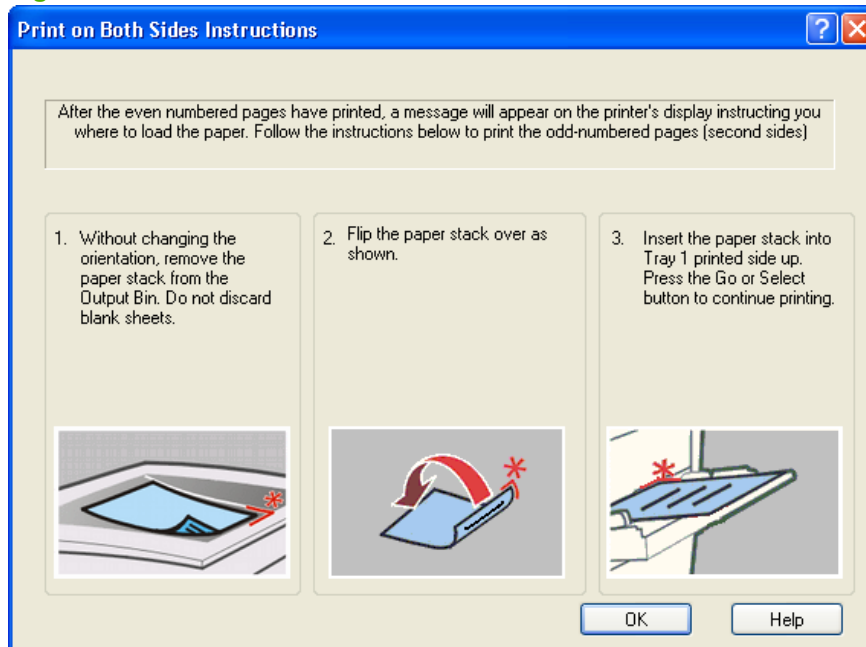
Cardstock paper can be manually printed on the second side, but no change occurs to the print mode. Transparencies and labels should *never* be manually printed on the second side.

To print a multiple-page document, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Print on both sides (Manually)** check box.
2. Click **OK**. The even-numbered pages of the document print.

- The printer driver displays the following message on the Windows PC that initiates the print job. When the device control panel shows the **Manually feed output stack** message, insert the stack of paper (on which even-numbered pages have been printed) as indicated in the following figure. The stack in Tray 1 should be face up with the top of the page feeding first.

Figure 4-15 Print on Both Sides Instructions



Flip pages up

Use the **Flip pages up** check box to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip pages up** check box is not available. It is available only when **Print on both sides** is selected. The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this check box, depending on the paper orientation selected on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 4-3 Page orientation

Orientation (Finishing tab)	Flip pages up selected	Flip pages up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on both sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-edge binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-edge binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet layout

The **Booklet layout:** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on both sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet layout:** drop-down menu

is **Off**. The other settings have the following format, where **[paper size]** depends on the paper size that is set on the **Paper/Quality** tab:

- **Left Edge Binding**
- **Right Edge Binding**

When you select **Left Edge Binding** or **Right Edge Binding**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per sheet:** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. If you manually change the **Pages per Sheet** setting to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the **Booklet layout:** is disabled. See [Pages per sheet on page 163](#) for more information.

Book and booklet printing

The product supports book and booklet printing.


A book is a print job consisting of at least two pages. You can use the **Covers** and **Print pages on different paper** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab to select different paper for the front cover, first page, other pages, and back cover. For more information, see [Paper/Quality tab features on page 143](#).

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can then be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the paper. Use the **Booklet layout:** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Pages per sheet

Use the **Pages per sheet:** option to select the number of pages that you want to print on a single sheet of paper. If you choose to print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per sheet:** drop-down menu provides the following settings:

- **1 page per sheet** (default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

 **NOTE:** When you select an option other than **2 pages per sheet**, booklet printing is unavailable.

Print page borders

Related controls indented beneath **Pages per sheet:** are **Print page borders** and **Page order:**, which become active when **Pages per sheet:** is greater than 1.

Print page borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

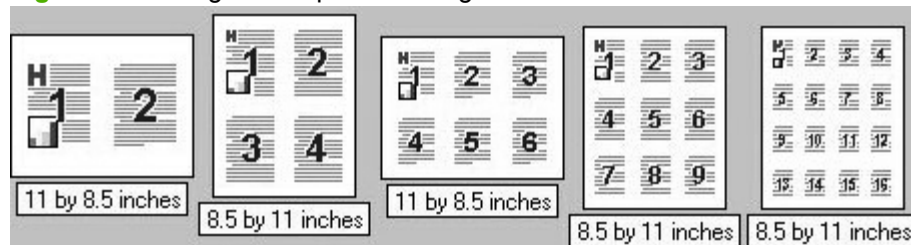
Page order

The **Page order**: drop-down menu contains the following options:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image reflects changes in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following figure.

Figure 4-16 Page-order preview images



- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right side up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

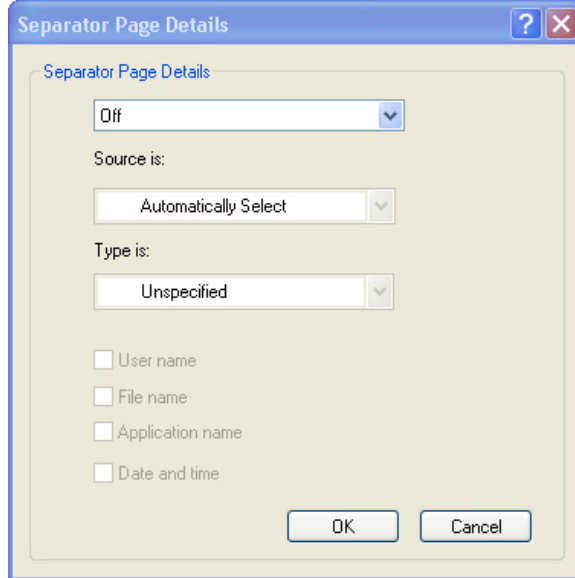
- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Job Separator

Click the **Job Separator...** button to insert a separator page between print jobs. The **Separator Page Details** dialog box allows you to enable job separation, select the paper source and paper type for the separator page, and specify information to include on the page.

Figure 4-17 Separator Page Details dialog box



Select **Separator page** from the first drop-down menu. The default setting is **Off**.


Select a paper source for the separator page from the **Source is:** drop-down menu.

Select a paper type from the **Type is:** drop-down menu.

Select any information to be printed on the separator page. The available options are **User name**, **File name**, **Application name**, and **Date and time**.

Orientation

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page and does not affect the way that paper feeds into the product. The orientations that you can specify are portrait, landscape, and rotated. The default orientation is **Portrait**.

 **NOTE:** Because nearly all software programs establish orientation the page orientation in the driver is useful only for the few software programs that do not set it.

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- **Portrait.** The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper.
- **Landscape.** The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.
- **Rotate by 180 degrees.** This creates a landscape or portrait orientation in which the image is rotated 180°. This setting is useful for printing prepunched paper.

You can toggle orientation between portrait and landscape by clicking the document preview image. If you select the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box, no change occurs in the document preview image.

Job Storage tab features

NOTE: The **Job Storage** tab is in the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to gain access to these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 131](#).

Use the job-storage feature to store print jobs in the product memory or hard disk for printing at a later time.

The **Job Storage** tab appears among the driver tabs only if the job-storage feature is enabled on the **Device Settings** tab.

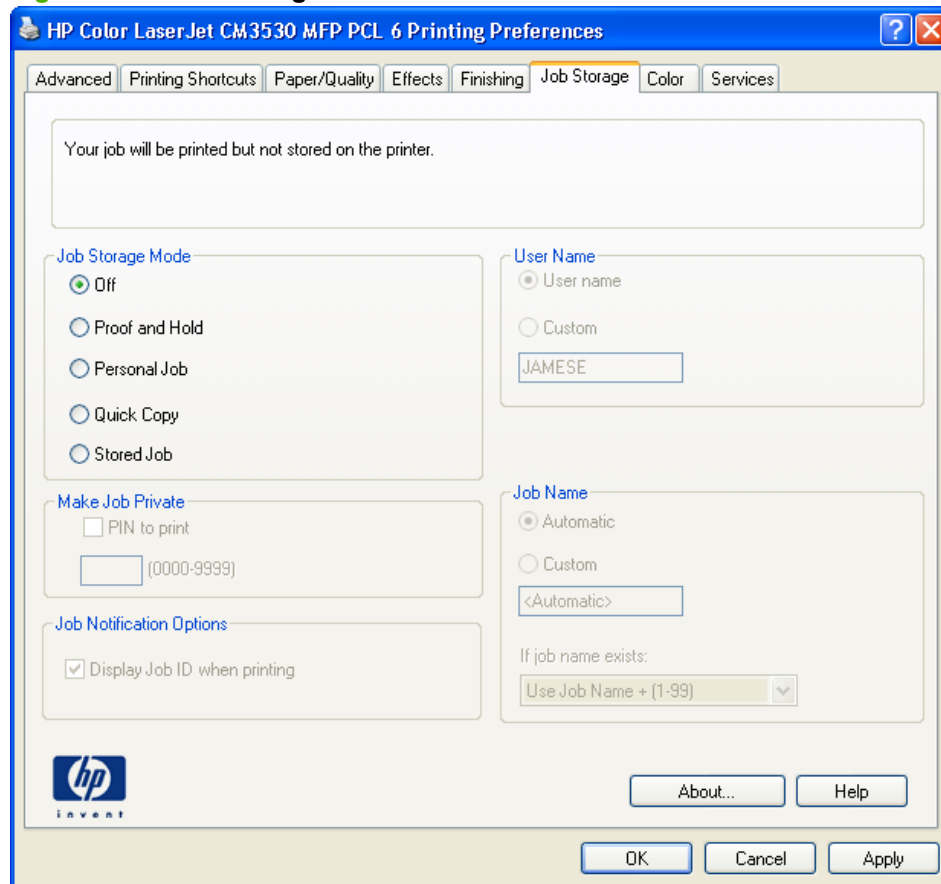
NOTE: Every model of the product comes with a hard disk installed.

The following **Job Storage Mode** settings are available:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

The following figure shows the **Job Storage** tab.

Figure 4-18 Job Storage tab



The **Job Storage** tab contains the following controls:



NOTE: Information about using the job-storage feature when printing is also provided here.

- [Status group box](#)
- [Job Storage Mode](#)
- [Make Job Private](#)
- [Job Notification Options](#)
- [User Name](#)
- [Job Name](#)
- [Use job-storage features when printing](#)

Status group box

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections that are made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the product to store documents at the product and then control their printing at the product control panel.

The product offers the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

These options and the settings that control them are described below.

Off

When selected, this option disables the job-storage feature which means that the print job will not be stored in the product.


Proof and Hold

To use **Proof and Hold**, you must enable the job-storage feature.

When selected, this option stores the print job in memory and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, you can print the remaining copies at the control panel. You can set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the product at the control panel.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is immediately deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second proof-and-hold job to the product with the same user name and job name as an existing proof-and-hold job (and

you have not released the original job for printing), the second job overwrites the existing job. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, a new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk will overwrite the existing document.

Personal Job

To use **Personal Job**, you must enable the job-storage feature.

When you select **Personal Job**, the print job is sent to the product but is not printed until you request the job at the product control panel. Selecting **Personal Job** activates the **Make Job Private** group box. If **PIN to print** is selected, the print job can be printed only after you type the correct PIN at the control panel. After the job is printed, the job is immediately deleted from the product. This feature is useful when you are printing sensitive or confidential documents that you do not want to leave in storage.


The Personal Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0 through 9). Any non-numeric characters or characters past the fourth one that you type are removed. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, zeroes pad the left end until the PIN contains exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Personal Job**.

After it is released for printing, the private job is immediately deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second private job that has the same user name and job name as an existing private job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the second job overwrites the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Quick Copy

To use **Quick Copy**, you must enable the job-storage feature.

When you select **Quick Copy**, the entire print job prints and a copy of the print job is stored on the product, after which you can print additional copies of the print job at the product control panel. The number of quick-copy print jobs that can be stored in the product is set through the product control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, a new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk overwrites the existing document. **Quick Copy** jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Stored Job

To use **Stored Job**, you must enable the job-storage feature.

Use **Stored Job** for forms and other common or shared documents. The print job is stored on the printer hard disk and you can print the job at the product control panel.


The job remains stored in the product until it is deleted or overwritten by a document that has the same user name and job name. Stored jobs remain on the printer hard disk when the product is turned off.

A stored job can be managed in one of two ways: as either a private or a public job.

Select the **PIN to Print** check box to set the private mode. Use a private stored job to send a print job directly to the product, which can then be printed only after you type a PIN up to 4 digits long at the product control panel. (You can set the PIN in the **PIN** group box.)

After the job is printed, the job remains in the product and can be printed again at the product control panel.


The box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. The **PIN to Print** option becomes available when you select **Stored Job**. If you select the **PIN to Print** box, you must type a PIN to make the stored job private.

 **NOTE:** A *private* stored job is not the same as a *personal* job. *Personal* jobs are deleted from the product after they are printed. *Private stored* jobs are retained in the product after printing but require that a PIN be typed each time they are printed. A printer hard disk is required for *Private stored* jobs.

Make Job Private

PIN to print is available when **Stored Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to print** checkbox, then type a 4-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the product, where you must enter the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

The **PIN to print** box is also available when **Personal Job** is selected. Follow the same procedure as for a Stored Job to set up the PIN and print the job.

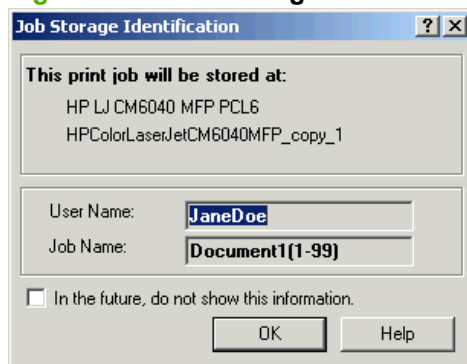
 **NOTE:** A *private* stored job is not the same as a *personal* job. *Personal* jobs are deleted from the product after they are printed. *Private stored* jobs are retained in the product after printing but require that a PIN be typed each time they are printed. A printer hard disk is required for *Private stored* jobs.

Job Notification Options

Clicking a **Job Storage Mode** option causes the **User Name** and **Job Name** options to become available. The **Display Job ID when printing** check box is selected by default and causes a pop-up dialog box to appear when the stored print job is printed. The dialog box shows the user name and job name that are associated with the stored print job, as well as the printer name, port, and location.

The following figure shows the **Job Storage Identification** dialog box.

Figure 4-19 Job Storage Identification dialog box



User Name

Use the following **User Name** settings to help identify the job at the product control panel:

- **User name.** This option associates your Windows user name with the stored print job. The Windows user name automatically appears in the text field below the **User name** options.
- **Custom.** Use this option to type a custom name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. The **User name** field can contain no more than 16 characters and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the product control–panel display. If you type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the field, along with all of the characters that follow it. Any character that you type beyond 16 is truncated.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** options to specify a name to identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **Job Name** settings:

- **<Automatic>** This default option automatically generates the job name that is associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name.
- **Custom.** Use this to type a custom job name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. In those languages for which **<Automatic>** cannot be translated without the use of invalid characters, the driver uses a string of three dashes. The acceptable characters for the job name and the user name vary for each operating system.

The **Job Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters and is limited to A through Z (uppercase or lowercase) and 0 through 9 so that the name can appear on the product control–panel display. If you type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the field, along with all of the characters that follow it. Any character that you type beyond 16 is truncated.

When the dialog box is closed, or as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the Tab key is pressed or another control is selected), an empty string is replaced with **<Automatic>**. The acceptable characters for the job name and the user name vary for each operating system.

If job name exists: When you store a print job, you can create a print job name or the product software can assign one automatically. If a print job with the same name already exists, the new print job overwrites the existing print job. To eliminate this risk of an overwrite, select **Use Job Name + (1-99)**. The product software assigns a number between 1 and 999 to the end of the created or automatically generated print job name to make the name unique. Select **Replace Existing File** if you always want the product software to overwrite an existing print job with the same print job name.

Use job-storage features when printing

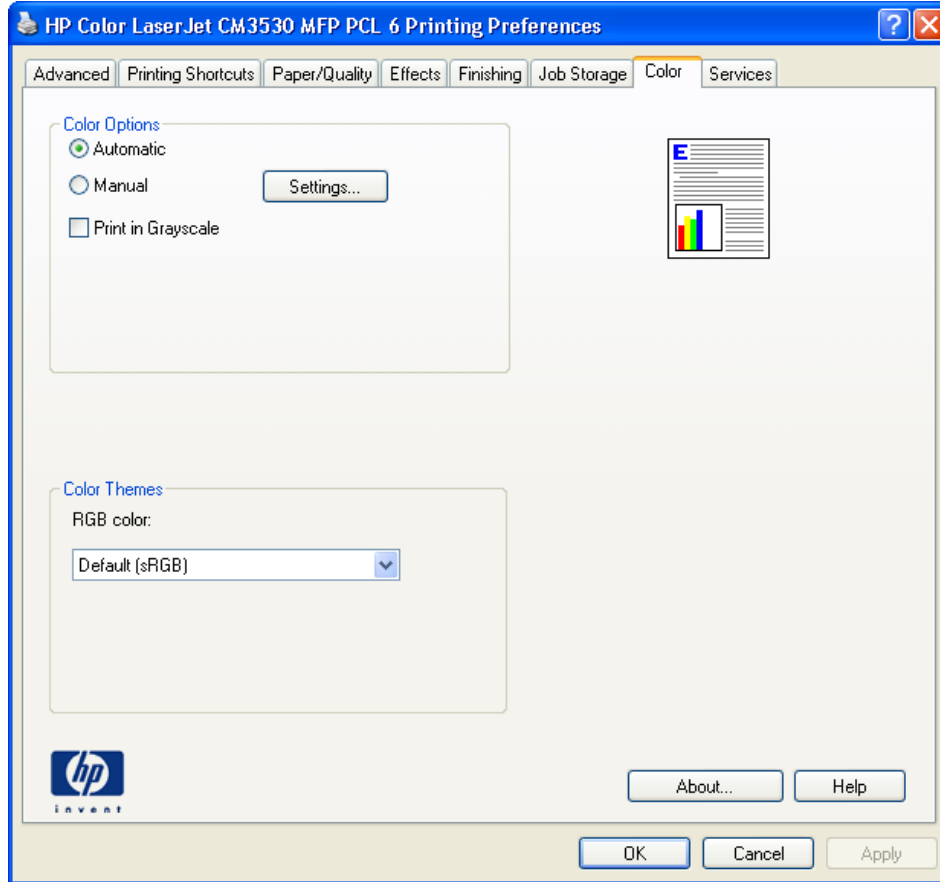
Refer to the product user guide for information on using job-storage features when printing.

Color tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Color** tab is in the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to gain access to these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 131](#),

Use the **Color** tab to specify predefined color-option settings or to fine tune the color treatments and halftoning. Color output can also be converted to grayscale. The **Color** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-20 Color tab



The **Color** tab contains the following sets of controls:

- [Color Options](#)
- [Color Themes](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

Color Options

Use the **Color Options** group box to adjust the independent color controls. The settings affect the print job color rendering and print quality. The **Color Options** group box contains the following controls:

- **Automatic** (default)
- **Manual**

- **Settings...** button (Click this button to open the **Color Settings** dialog box.)
- **Print in Grayscale** check box

Automatic

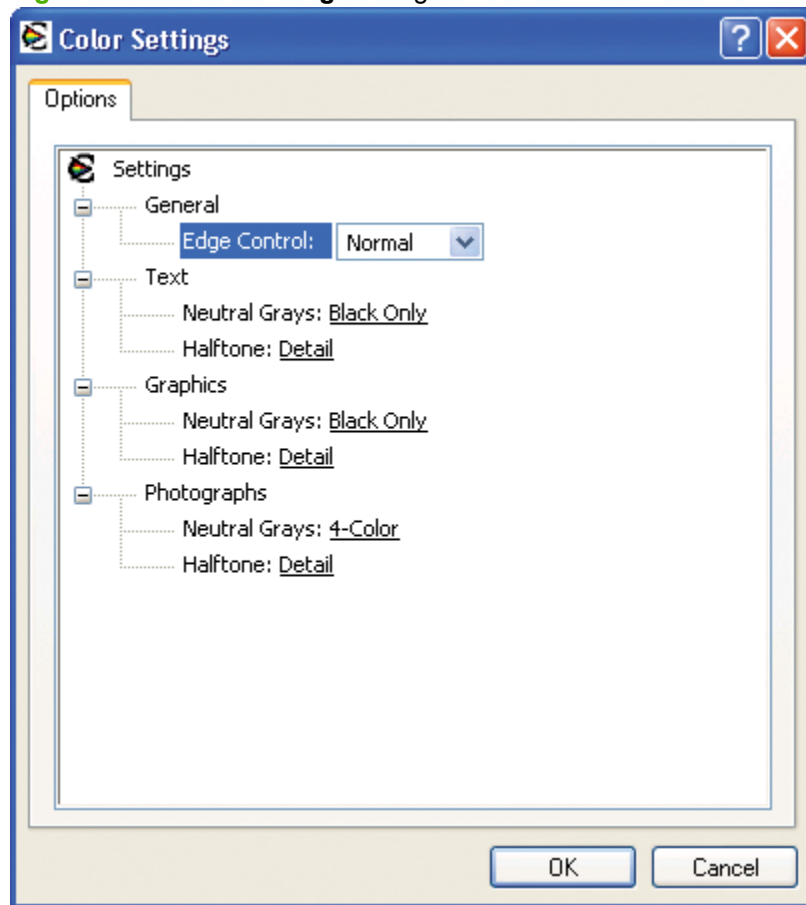
Use the **Automatic** option for color settings that automatically fine tune the printed output. The **Automatic** color settings provide high quality output while maintaining product performance for most color printing needs.

Manual

To change the color settings, select **Manual**, and then click **Settings....** The **Color Settings** dialog box appears.

To change the settings, make your selections by using the drop-down menus in the **Color Settings** dialog box, and then click **OK**. The following figure shows the **Color Settings** dialog box with custom settings.

Figure 4-21 Color Settings dialog box



The **Color Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **General**
 - **Edge Control:**
- **Text**
 - **Neutral Grays:**
 - **Halftone:**
- **Graphics**
 - **Neutral Grays:**
 - **Halftone:**
- **Photographs**
 - **Neutral Grays:**
 - **Halftone:**

General

Use the **General** setting to control the **Edge Control** settings for all color printing.

Edge Control determines how edges are rendered and consists of the following components:

- Adaptive Halftoning, which increases edge sharpness.
- Trapping, which reduces the effect of color plane misregistration by slightly overlapping the edges of adjacent objects.
- Color Resolution Enhancement Technology (C-REt), which increases the apparent resolution by placing each dot for the smoothest edges.

Edge Control offers the following settings:

- **Off.** The **Off** setting turns Trapping, Adaptive Halftoning, and C-REt to **Off**.
- **Light.** The **Light** setting provides minimal Trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On** and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Normal.** The **Normal** setting provides the default Trapping settings. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Maximum.** The **Maximum** setting provides the most Trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.

The following settings apply to text, graphics, and photographs for color settings.

Neutral Grays

The **Neutral Grays**: drop-down menu controls the selection of a device-dependent color table that is embedded in the product firmware. You can adjust the **Neutral Grays** setting independently for text, graphics, or photographs. The following options are available:

- **Black Only**. This option generates neutral colors (grays and black) by using only black toner. This option guarantees that neutral colors do not have a color cast. **Black Only** is the default setting for the **Text** and **Graphics** components.
- **4-Color**. This option generates neutral colors by combining all four colors of toner, which produces smoother gradients and transitions to non-neutral colors. It also produces the darkest possible black. **4-Color** is the default setting for **Photographs**.

Halftone

The **Halftone** setting controls the selection of a product-dependent halftone algorithm that is embedded in the product firmware. Halftoning is a method by which the product mixes the four primary colors (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) in varying proportions to create millions of colors. The **Halftone** options affect the resolution and clarity of the color on the printed page. You can select **Halftone** settings for text, graphics, and photographs independently.

The following **Halftone** options are available:

- **Detail**. This is the default option; it is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors or for images that contain a pattern or a high level of detail. Select this option for sharp edges and detail.
- **Smooth**. This option provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas. It also enhances photographs by smoothing out fine color gradations. Select this option for uniform and smooth area fills.

Color Themes

The Color Themes group box contains the following **RGB color**: options, which determines how colors are rendered:

- [Default \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(Adobe RGB 1998\)](#)
- [Vivid \(sRGB\)](#)
- [None](#)
- [Custom Profile](#)

Default (sRGB)

Select **Default (sRGB)** for most printing needs. This setting instructs the product to interpret RGB color as sRGB, which is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). Colors are matched to optimize the RGB colors on the screen and to provide vivid images and graphics.

Photo (sRGB)

Select **Photo (sRGB)** to enhance documents in which the content is mainly bitmap images, such as .GIF or .EPS files. This setting instructs the product to use the best color matching for rendering sRGB bitmap images. This setting affects only raster data; it has no effect on text or vector-based graphics. Using glossy paper in combination with this setting provides the maximum enhancement.

Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)

Select **Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)** for documents that use the Adobe RGB color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in Adobe RGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe Photoshop® use the Adobe RGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses Adobe RGB, turn off the color management in the software program and allow the product software to manage the color space.

Vivid (sRGB)

Vivid (sRGB) is sRGB-based, but with an intensity that boosts the saturation or vividness of colors. Vivid colors provide more visual "punch" at the expense of color accuracy. Pie charts and bar charts are typical examples of graphical objects that benefit from vivid renderings.

None

This option allows the printer to accept RGB data directly from the application.

Custom Profile

Select **Custom Profile** to duplicate the printed output from other products or for using special effects. This setting instructs the product to use a custom profile to emulate color output from another product by modifying how color is rendered.

The default custom profile is an emulation of the color table used on the HP Color LaserJet 9500 product. The product holds only one custom profile at a time, so when you download and install another color table, it erases the default color table and installs the new one.

You can download custom profiles from the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/go/cljcm3530mfp_firmware

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

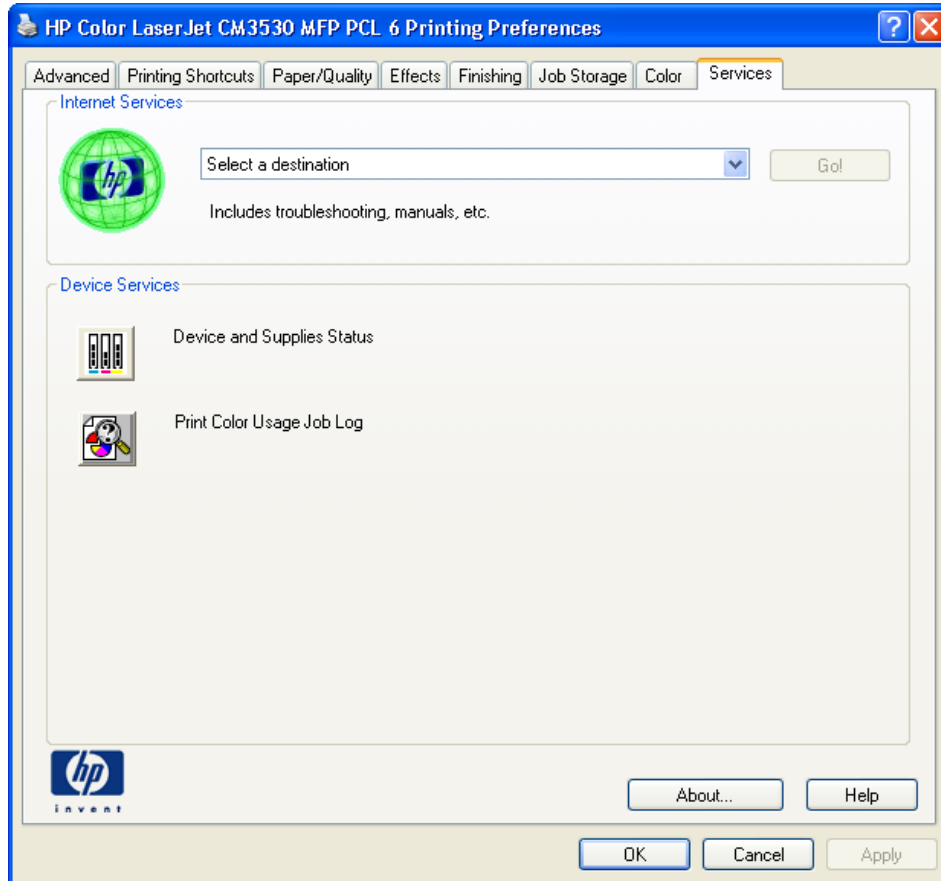
Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Services tab features

NOTE: The **Services** tab is on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to gain access to these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 131](#).

The **Services** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-22 Services tab



The **Services** tab contains the following group boxes:

- [Internet Services](#)
- [Device Services](#)

Internet Services

The **Internet Services** group box contains the **Select a destination** drop-down menu with the following options:

- **Online diagnostic tools.** This is the HP Instant Support Web site, where you can find interactive tools and contacts for troubleshooting.
- **Support and troubleshooting.** This is the main Web site for product support.

- **Product manuals.** View or download product manuals.
- **Check for driver updates.** Automatically check to see whether the correct and most up-to-date print drivers are installed.
- **Color printing access/usage.** Find information about enabling and disabling color printing and tracking color print-job usage.
- **Shop for supplies.** Shop online for product supplies.

If you have Internet access, select any of these items and then click **Go!** to open the corresponding HP Web page.

Device Services

Click the **Device and Supplies Status** icon to open the **Device Status** screen of the HP EWS, which shows supply levels and the control-panel status.

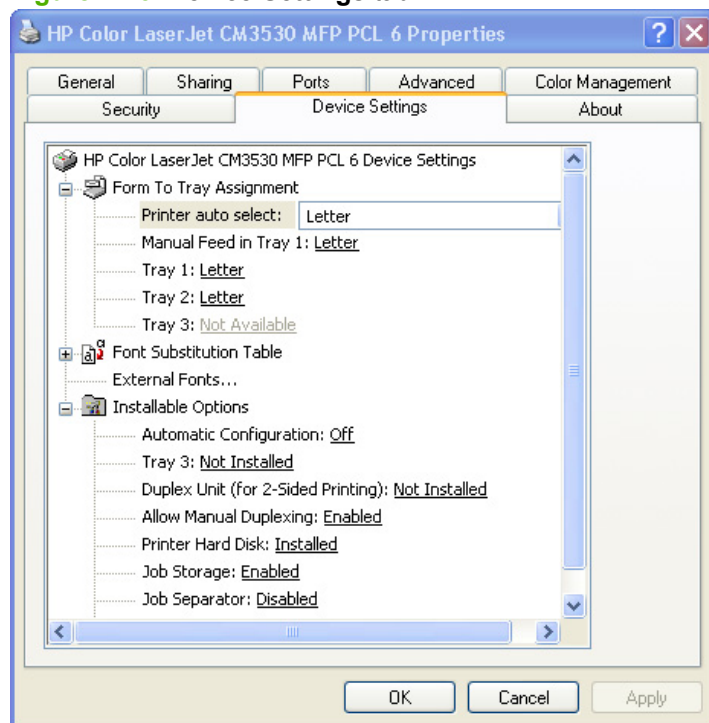
Click the **Print Color Usage Job Log** icon to print a page that shows information about users, print jobs, and applications that have printed to the product.

Device Settings tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Device Settings** tab is in the **Properties** tab set. For information about how to gain access to these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 132](#).

Available options depend on the feature. The following figure shows the **Device Settings** tab.

Figure 4-23 Device Settings tab



The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for paper-handling devices and controls for managing the product.

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- [Form to Tray Assignment](#)
- [Font Substitution Table](#)
- [Installable Options](#)

Form to Tray Assignment

A network administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the paper size in each input tray.

The product supports more than one source of paper. You can assign a form (which defines the paper size and margins) to each paper source. When a form is matched to a source, you can select the form when you print. The product prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the paper size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the **Paper-Size** list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. This constraint reduces the likelihood of tying up the product with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in **Form to Tray Assignment** include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as paper sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Configuring the trays

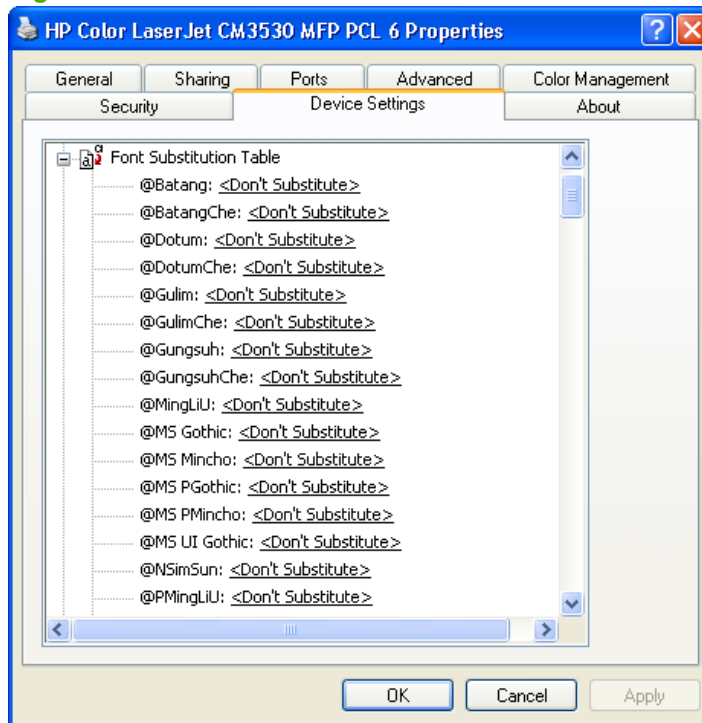
1. Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the paper size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
4. Click **OK** to enable your settings, or, if necessary, click **Cancel** to reconfigure all the trays and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Use **Font Substitution Table** to change the TrueType-to-product font mapping and to install and remove external fonts for the product through the **External Fonts** option. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click **Font Substitution Table** to open a list of fonts, as shown in the following figure. Use the settings to change the TrueType-to-product font mappings.

Figure 4-24 Font Substitution Table

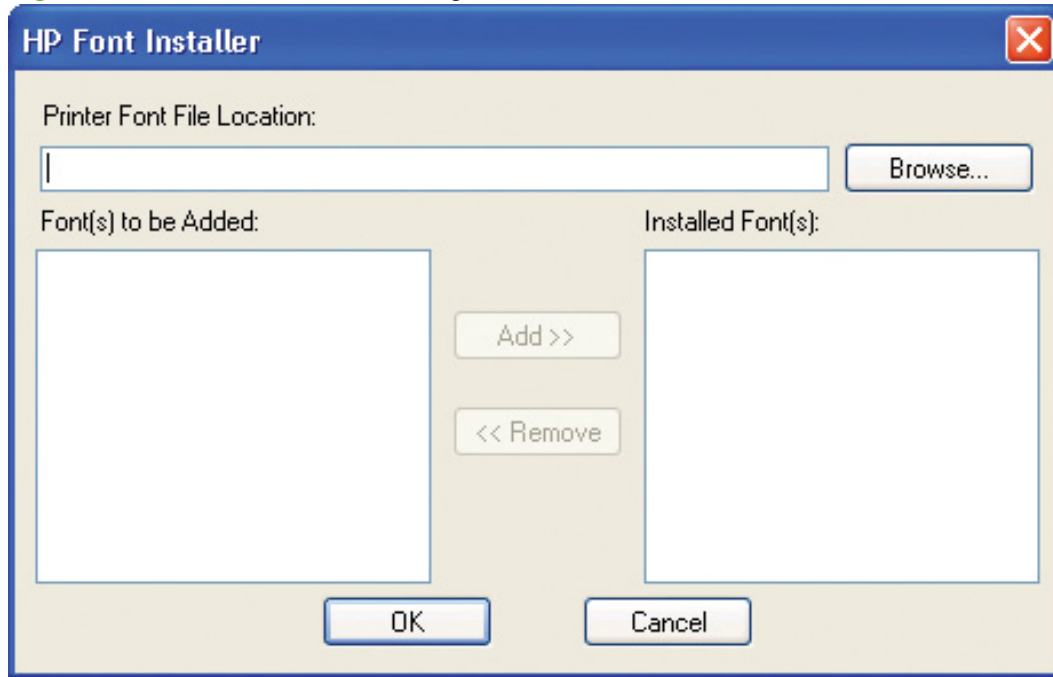


External Fonts

Use **External Fonts** to install and remove external fonts for the product. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click **External Fonts** to make the **Properties** button available. Click **Properties** to open the **HP Font Installer** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-25 HP Font Installer dialog box



Installing external fonts

Follow these steps to install external fonts.

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.
In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.
In **Windows Server 2008**, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then open the **Printers** folder.
In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the name of the product.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
6. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears.
7. Type the name and path of the font metric file in the **Printer Font File Location:** text box, or click **Browse...** to locate the file on the computer. The font file names appear in the **Font(s) to be Added:** window.
8. Select the fonts that you want to add, and then click **Add**. The fonts are installed and the file names appear in the **Installed Font(s):** window.
9. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Remove external fonts

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In **Windows Server 2008**, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then open the **Printers** folder.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the name of the product.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
6. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears. The external fonts that are installed appear in the **Installed Font(s)** window.
7. Select the fonts that you want to remove, and then click **Remove**. The fonts are removed.
8. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Installable Options

Items under **Installable Options** are automatically populated and their defaults set when the driver is installed.

The product has printing options that you can install and configure in this section. The following controls are available:

- [Automatic Configuration](#)
- [Tray 3](#)
- [Duplex Unit \(for 2-Sided Printing\)](#)
- [Allow Manual Duplexing](#)
- [Printer Hard Disk](#)
- [Job Storage](#)
- [Job Separator](#)
- [Mopier Mode](#)

Automatic Configuration

Use the **Device Settings** tab to tell the driver about the hardware configuration of the product. If bidirectional communication is enabled in a supported environment, update this tab by selecting the **Update Now** setting in the **Automatic Configuration:** setting. The default setting is **Off**. After an automatic configuration, the setting returns to **Off** after the changes are made.

If your environment does not support bidirectional communication, the **Update Now** setting is unavailable, so you must manually configure the options on this tab.


If you have more than one driver installed for the product (for example, the default HP PCL 6 Print Driver and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver), the Update Now feature works only on the driver on which it is activated. The other driver will not be updated and might show the default setting for the specific product model.

Tray 3

This control specifies whether you have tray 3, an additional 500-sheet tray, installed on the product.

Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)


All of the product models come with a duplex unit installed.

 **NOTE:** The product supports smart duplexing. The product uses the smart duplexing feature to ensure that only pages with printable information on both sides are run through the duplexing unit.

Allow Manual Duplexing

Enable **Allow Manual Duplexing**: to print on both sides of sizes and types that are not supported by the duplexing unit (except transparencies, envelopes, and labels) see [Print on both sides \(manually\) on page 161](#). To use this feature, you must reinsert the paper stack into the input tray to print the second side. The product pauses while you make this adjustment.

This setting is enabled by default.

 **NOTE:** To manually print on both sides for any sizes and types (except transparencies, envelopes, and labels), the duplex unit (for 2-sided printing) must also be set to **Not Installed** (under **Device Settings**). Otherwise, only the sizes and types shown in [Print on both sides \(manually\) on page 161](#) will show the **Print on both sides (manually)** check box in the driver.

Printer Hard Disk

When this option is enabled, **Job Storage** and **Mopier Mode**: are enabled in the print driver. Use the **Job Storage** option to store print jobs and then print them later from the control panel. The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job.

 **NOTE:** This option is always installed.

Job Storage

When **Job Storage**: is enabled, the product can store print jobs so that you can gain access to those print jobs later at the control panel.

Job Separator

Use this control to specify whether a print job identifier page should be printed between print jobs.

For more information, see [Job Separator on page 165](#).

Mopier Mode

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the product once and then storing it in memory or on the hard disk. The remainder of the copies are printed at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in

mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The product supports the transmit-once mopying feature when the **Mopier Mode:** setting on the **Device Settings** tab is **Enabled**.

When you use the HP PCL 6 Print Driver, mopying is performed in one of two ways: either through the software or through the product hardware. When **Mopier Mode:** is enabled, mopying takes place through the product hardware. One copy of a multiple-page print job is transmitted once through the network to the product, together with a printer job language (PJL) command directing the product to make the specified number of copies.

When you disable mopying, you are not necessarily disabling multiple collated copies, which the driver can still perform through the software rather than the product hardware (the mopying path that is disabled when you change the **Mopier Mode:** setting to **Disabled**). However, a multiple-copy print job that is sent when the mopier is disabled loses the advantage of transmitting the print job once, because the job is sent through the network for each collated copy.

Mopier mode and collation

Mopying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. Mopying, the ability to send original print jobs to the product, is performed by the print driver. Collating can be controlled by either the print driver or the document software program. The mopying mode is selected by default in the driver and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode:** setting on the **Device Settings** tab to **Disabled**.

Control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Collated** check box on the **Advanced** tab. Click **Copy Count** under the **Paper Output** setting. You can clear the check box, which is available only when the **Copy Count** option is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software program to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the **Collated** check box *and* make sure that the software program collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between **Mopier Mode:** settings and collation settings in the software program and the driver. The first three columns show the settings; the last column, **Expected result**, shows how a three-page print job would appear.

Table 4-4 Driver Mopier Mode: and collation settings

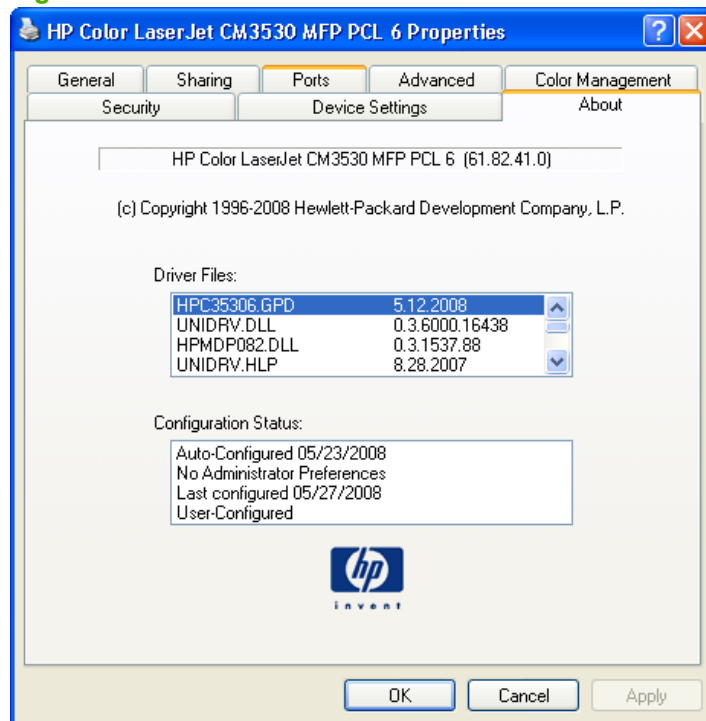
Mopier Mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Disabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Disabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated

About tab features

NOTE: The **About** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set. For information about how to gain access to these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 132](#).

The **About** tab provides detailed information about driver component versions. It contains an overall build version number (in parentheses after the model name) together with specific information about each of the components. The information varies according to the product model number, driver, date, and versions. The **About** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-26 About tab



The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is auto-configured or user-configured.

The **About** button is also available on most driver screens. The **About** button provides a driver version number and creation date.

5 Macintosh software and utilities

- [Supported operating systems for Macintosh](#)
- [Macintosh system requirements](#)
- [Macintosh printing-system software](#)
- [Macintosh install and uninstall instructions](#)
- [Macintosh HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Use features in the Macintosh printer driver](#)

Supported operating systems for Macintosh

The product supports the following Macintosh operating systems:

- Mac OS X V10.3.9, V10.4, V10.5 and later

 **NOTE:** For Mac OS X V10.4 and later, PPC and Intel Core Processor Macs are supported.

Macintosh system requirements

- PowerPC G3, G4, G5, or Intel Core processor
- 256 MB RAM
- 32 MB of available hard-disk space
- CD-ROM drive or Internet connection

Macintosh printing-system software

The printing-system software for Macintosh is composed of an HP-created postscript (PS) printer definition file (PPD) and a Printer Dialog Extension (PDE) file that work together with the Macintosh OS printing system. These files are used by the Macintosh OS printing system to determine default printer-driver settings and to allow the user to select between the various print options and settings. An HP-supplied Macintosh printer configuration utility is provided, which allows the user to access the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) for additional configuration and product status monitoring. The following are provided on the Admin CD:

- The HP LaserJet Installer for Macintosh
- Install notes (Readme file)

The following components are installed by the HP LaserJet Installer for Macintosh:

- HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PPD
- HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PDE
- HP USB EWS Gateway
- HP Printer Utility
- [HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PPD](#)
- [HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PDE](#)
- [HP USB EWS Gateway](#)
- [HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Supported printer drivers for Macintosh](#)
- [Priority for print settings for Macintosh](#)
- [Change printer-driver settings for Macintosh](#)
- [Software for Macintosh computers](#)

- [Availability](#)

HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PPD

A postscript printer description (PPD) file is a text file that contains keywords and other information to specify printer features, options, and settings. PPD files are created by printer vendors for a specific postscript printer or printer family. PPD files are created by printer vendors to describe the set of printer features available for their postscript printers. On the Macintosh, PPD files provide all the information necessary to describe a postscript printer's features, including options and default settings. They also contain the postscript code used to invoke those features.

HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series PDE

A Print Dialog extension file can specify one or more PDEs to load in the Print dialog box to provide HP printer specific features. A printing dialog extension (PDE) is a way to extend the Print dialog box in Mac OS X with custom printer features.

A PPD file and printing dialog extension (PDE) for a printer are bound to a printer queue when the queue is created.

HP USB EWS Gateway

For network connected printers, the EWS can be accessed directly by typing the network IP address or DNS name of the product into the Web browser. HP USB EWS Gateway software, which is automatically installed, allows a Web browser to access the product's EWS if the product is connected using a USB cable. Click the **Utility** button when using a USB connection to access the EWS through the Web browser.

HP Printer Utility

Use the HP Printer Utility to configure, administer, and set up product features that are not available from the printer driver. You can use the HP Printer Utility with HP printers connected via USB, ethernet, and wireless networks.


Supported printer drivers for Macintosh

The HP installer provides Postscript Printer Description (PPD) files, Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs), and the HP Printer Utility for use with Macintosh computers.

The PPDs, in combination with the Apple postscript printer drivers, provide access to device features. Use the Apple postscript printer driver that comes with the computer.

Priority for print settings for Macintosh

Changes to print settings are prioritized depending on where the changes are made:

 **NOTE:** The names of commands and dialog boxes might vary depending on your software program.

- **Page Setup dialog box:** Click **Page Setup** or a similar command on the **File** menu of the program you are working in to open this dialog box. Settings changed here might override settings changed anywhere else.
- **Print dialog box:** Click **Print**, **Print Setup**, or a similar command on the **File** menu of the program you are working in to open this dialog box. Settings changed in the **Print** dialog box have a lower priority and do *not* override changes made in the **Page Setup** dialog box.

- **Default printer driver settings:** The default printer driver settings determine the settings used in all print jobs, *unless* settings are changed in the **Page Setup**, **Print**, or **Printer Properties** dialog boxes.
- **Printer control-panel settings:** Settings changed at the printer control panel have a lower priority than changes made anywhere else.

Change printer-driver settings for Macintosh

Change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	Change the default settings for all print jobs	Change the product configuration settings
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the File menu, click Print. 2. Change the settings that you want on the various menus. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the File menu, click Print. 2. Change the settings that you want on the various menus. 3. On the Presets menu, click Save as and type a name for the preset. <p>These settings are saved in the Presets menu. To use the new settings, you must select the saved preset option every time you open a program and print.</p>	<p>NOTE: Configuration settings might not be available in Classic mode.</p> <p>Mac OS X V10.3 or Mac OS X V10.4</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. From the Apple menu, click System Preferences and then Print & Fax. 2. Click Printer Setup. 3. Click the Installable Options menu. <p>Mac OS X V10.5</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. From the Apple menu, click System Preferences and then Print & Fax. 2. Click Options & Supplies. 3. Click the Driver menu. 4. Select the driver from the list, and configure the installed options.

Software for Macintosh computers

HP Printer Utility

Use the HP Printer Utility to set up product features that are not available in the printer driver.

You can use the HP Printer Utility when the product uses a universal serial bus (USB) cable or is connected to a TCP/IP-based network.

Open the HP Printer Utility

Open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X V10.3 and V10.4

1. Open the Finder, click **Applications**, click **Utilities**, and then double-click **Printer Setup Utility**.
2. Select the product that you want to configure, and then click **Utility**.

1. From the **Printer** menu, click **Printer Utility**.
- or -
2. From the **Print Queue**, click the **Utility** icon.

HP Printer Utility features

The HP Printer Utility consists of pages that you open by clicking in the **Configuration Settings** list. The following table describes the tasks that you can perform from these pages.

Table 5-1 Titles

Item	Description
Supplies Status	Information and Support setting) Shows the device supplies status and provides links for online supplies ordering.
Device Information	Information and Support setting) Displays information about the product such as version number and serial number.
HP Support	Information and Support setting) Displays buttons that link to HP Online Support, Shop for Supplies, and Online Registration.
Color Usage	Information and Support setting) Displays information about color usage by the product.
File Upload	Information and Support setting) Transfers files from the computer to the device.
Firmware Update	Information and Support setting) Transfers updated firmware files from the computer to the device.
Upload Fonts	Information and Support setting) Transfers font files from the computer to the device.
Duplex Mode	Printer setting) Turns on the automatic two-sided printing mode.
Trays Configuration	Printer setting) Changes the default tray settings.
Lock Resources	Printer setting) Locks or unlocks storage products, such as a hard disk.
Stored Jobs	Printer setting) Manages print jobs that are stored on the device hard disk.
E-mail Alerts	Printer setting) Configures the device to send e-mail notices for certain events.
Network Settings	Printer setting) Provides the ability to adjust network settings.
Supplies Management	Printer setting) Provides the ability to check product supply levels and order new supplies.
Project Direct Ports	Printer setting) Displays information about ports and port settings for the product.
Bonjour Settings	Printer setting) Provides the ability to turn on or off Bonjour support or change the device service name that is listed on a network.
Additional Settings	Printer setting) Provides access to the embedded Web server.
Restrict Color	Printer setting) Provides the ability to set the color job printing behavior.
Output Devices	Printer setting) Provides information about output devices connected to the product.

Embedded Web Server

The product is equipped with the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS), which provides access to information about device and network activities. For a complete explanation of the features and

functionality of the HP EWS, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide*, which is available on the Administrator CD.

Availability


This STR provides information about the availability of the printing-system software and related software and firmware. Printing-system software on a CD is available from HP fulfillment centers.

- [Printing-system software on the Web](#)
- [In-box printing-system software CDs](#)

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CDs is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The HP Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases. See the HP Proactive support link on the Download Drivers and Software page.

 **NOTE:** This STR describes drivers that are shipped on the Administrator printing-system software CD that comes with the product. This STR does *not* describe drivers that will become available on the Web.

The printing-system software is available for download at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp

In-box printing-system software CDs

Two CDs are included in-box with the product.

- **Administrator (Admin) CD.** Contains the printing-system installer and administrator software, administrator documentation, the Animated Getting Started Guide, the Installer Customization Wizard, and links to the HP Universal Print Drivers on the Web.
- **User CD.** Contains job aids, product demonstrations and simulations, the control-panel wall poster, fax guides, and support information.

The CDs are divided into two partitions, one for each of the following operating systems:

- Windows
- Macintosh

The files in each partition of the Admin CD include documentation files and files that are required to install and uninstall the printing-system software components. Use the Admin CD to install the printing-system software.

- [Macintosh partition](#)
- [CD versions](#)

Macintosh partition

The HP Macintosh printing-system software files reside in the Macintosh partition. The HP LaserJet Installer for Macintosh is at the root of the Macintosh CD partition. The user manuals (.PDF) are grouped by language and are in the Manuals directory on the Macintosh partition of the software CDs.

CD versions

The Admin software CD is available in a single version and contains the printing-system software in various languages:

- AR = Arabic
- CS = Czech (Cestina)
- DA = Danish (Dansk)
- DE = German (Deutsch)
- EN = English
- ES = Spanish (Español)
- EL = Greek
- FI = Finnish (Suomi)
- FR = French (Français)
- HE = Hebrew
- HU = Hungarian (Magyar)
- IT = Italian (Italiano)
- JA = Japanese
- KO = Korean
- NL = Dutch (Nederland)
- NO = Norwegian (Norsk)
- PL = Polish (Polski)
- PT = Portuguese (Português)
- RU = Russian (Russ)
- SV = Swedish (Svenska)
- TH = Thai
- TR = Turkish (Türkçe)
- ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
- ZHTW = Traditional Chinese

The Admin CD contains the following printing system documents:

- *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide*
- *HP LaserJet Analog Fax Accessory 500 Send Fax Driver Installation Notes*
- *HP Jetdirect Print Servers Administrator's Guide*

- *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide*
- *HP Scan Setup Wizard v1.1.0.30 User Guide*

The User software CD is available in a single version and contains the printing-system documentation in various languages:

- AR = Arabic
- CA = Catalan (Catala)
- CS = Czech (Cestina)
- DA = Danish (Dansk)
- DE = German (Deutsch)
- EN = English
- ES = Spanish (Espanol)
- FR = French (Francais)
- EL = Greek
- HE = Hebrew
- HR = Croatian (Hrvatski)
- ID = Indonesian (Bahasa Indonesian)
- IT = Italian (Italiano)
- JA = Japanese
- KO = Korean
- HU = Hungarian (Magyar)
- NL = Dutch (Nederlands)
- NO = Norwegian (Norsk)
- PL = Polish (Polski)
- PT = Portuguese (Portugues)
- RO = Romanian (Romana)
- RU = Russian
- ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
- SK = Slovak (Slovenscina)
- SL = Slovenian (Slovenscina)
- FI = Finnish (Suomi)
- SV = Swedish (Svenska)
- TH = Thai

- ZHTW = Traditional Chinese
- TR = Turkish (Turkce)

The User CD contains the following documents:

- *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Analog Fax Accessory 500 Fax Guide*
- *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Analog Fax Accessory 500 Send Fax Driver Guide*
- *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Control Panel Wall Poster*
- *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series Quick Reference Guide*
- *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Series User Guide*

Macintosh install and uninstall instructions

- [Install the Macintosh printing-system software](#)
- [Remove the printing-system software from Macintosh operating systems](#)

Install the Macintosh printing-system software


On a Macintosh computer, the printing-system software installation procedures are the same for a network administrator, a network client, or a single user. Install the printing-system software on any computer that has access rights to the product. The computer user must also have administrative rights on the computer to install the printing-system software.

- [General installation for Macintosh operating systems](#)
- [Detailed Mac OS X installation](#)
- [Product setup](#)


General installation for Macintosh operating systems

1. If you are connecting the product to a network, connect the network cable to the network port. If you are connecting the product to a computer by using the USB cable, install the software *before* connecting the USB cable.


2. Insert the Administrator software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

 **NOTE:** If the **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen does not open automatically when the CD is inserted into the CD-ROM drive, double-click the product CD image on the desktop to open the installer browser screen.

3. Double-click the product .MKPG icon to start the printing-system software installation.

 **NOTE:** In the HP LaserJet installer browser screen, double-click the **Manuals** icon to gain access to the Admin manuals. Select a language folder and locate the available guides which are in .PDF format. Additional guides are available on the User CD in the manuals directory. The user guide is a .PDF file that is named like: CM3530MFP_use_enww.pdf.

4. The **Introduction** dialog box appears. Click **Continue** and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the printing-system software installation.

 **NOTE:** When the printing-system software is installing, be patient. The installer must perform an initial search of the computer, which can take up to 1 minute. During this time, the installer might appear to be stalled.

5. When the printing-system software installation is complete, click **Close**.

6. Continue with the steps for setting up a product.

The software program that you use to finish setting up the product varies by operating system. The following table shows the product setup tools that are available.

Table 5-2 Adding a product in Macintosh operating systems


Operating system	Print Center	Printer Setup Utility	Print & Fax
Mac OS X V10.3		x	x

Table 5-2 Adding a product in Macintosh operating systems (continued)

Operating system	Print Center	Printer Setup Utility	Print & Fax
Mac OS X V10.4		x	x
Mac OS X V10.5 and later		x	x

Detailed Mac OS X installation

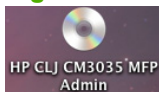
This section provides information about the Macintosh printing-system software installation dialog-box sequence for the **Easy Install** type, which is the typical type of printing-system software installation.

 **NOTE:** If you are connecting the product to a network, connect the network cable to the network port. If you are connecting the product to a computer by using the USB cable, install the software *before* connecting the USB cable.

Insert the Administrator software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

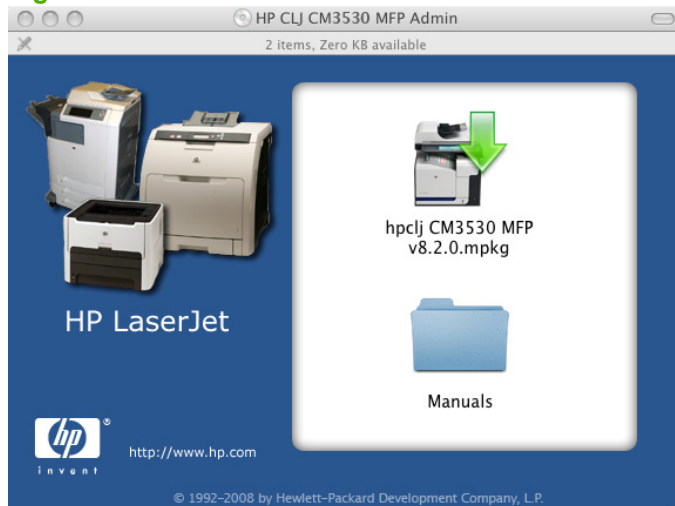
If the **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen does not open automatically when the CD is inserted into the CD-ROM drive, double-click the product CD image on the desktop to open the installer browser screen.

Figure 5-1 Product CD image




The **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen appears.

Figure 5-2 HP LaserJet installer browser screen

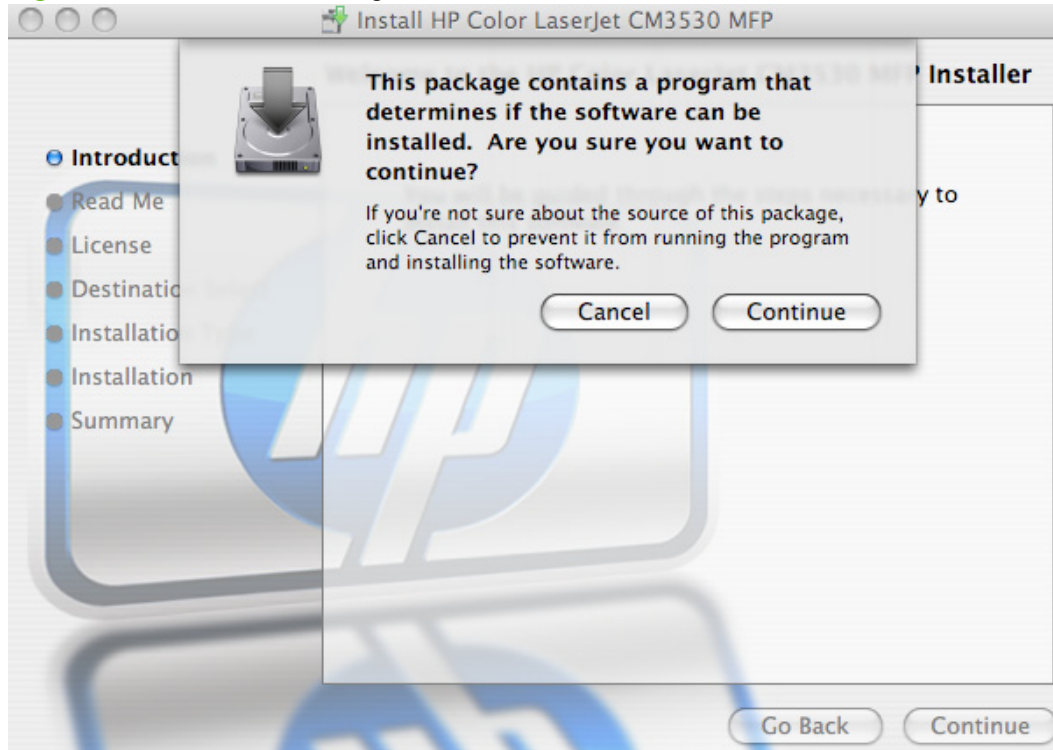


In the **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen, double-click the product .MKPG icon. This begins the printing-system installation.

 **NOTE:** The file name displayed on your **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen may be different than the file name displayed in the above figure.

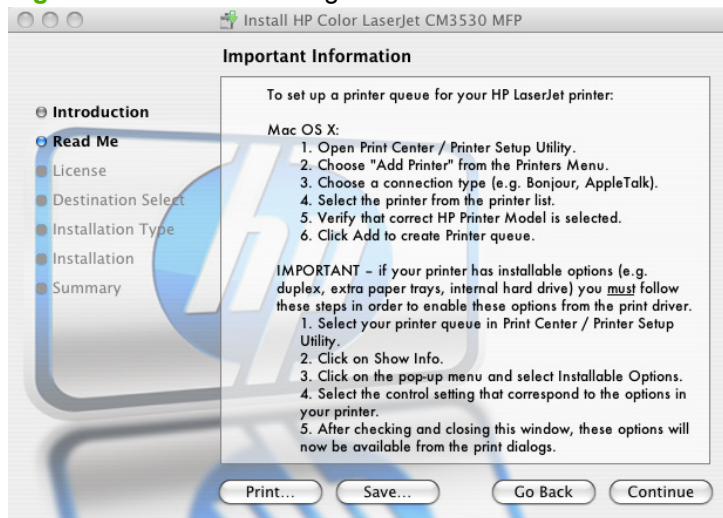
NOTE: In the HP LaserJet installer browser screen, double-click the **Manuals** icon to gain access to the Admin manuals. Select a language folder and locate the available guides which are in .PDF format. Additional guides are available on the User CD in the manuals directory. The user guide is a .PDF file that is named like: CM3530MFP_use_enww.pdf.

Figure 5-3 Introduction dialog box



Click **Continue**. The **ReadMe** dialog box appears.

Figure 5-4 Read Me dialog box



NOTE: After installing the printing-system software, the product must be set up. This Read Me file provides information for completing the product set up.

Save or print the Read Me file by clicking **Save** or **Print**, Read the Read Me file, and then clicking **Continue**. The **License** dialog box appears.

Figure 5-5 License dialog box



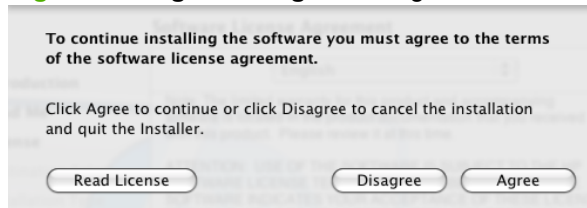
Click **Print...** to open the **Page Setup** dialog box and print a copy of the License Agreement.

Click **Save** to open the system **Save** dialog box and save the License Agreement to disk.

Click **Go Back** to return to the previous screen.

Read the Software License Agreement and then click **Continue**. The **Agree/Disagree** dialog box appears.

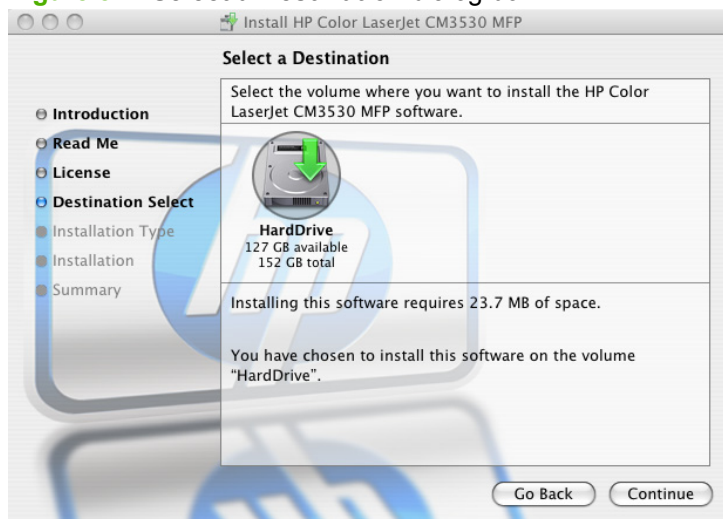
Figure 5-6 Agree/Disagree dialog box



Click **Disagree** to end the installation and close the installer.

Click **Agree** to continue the installation. The **Select a Destination** dialog box appears.

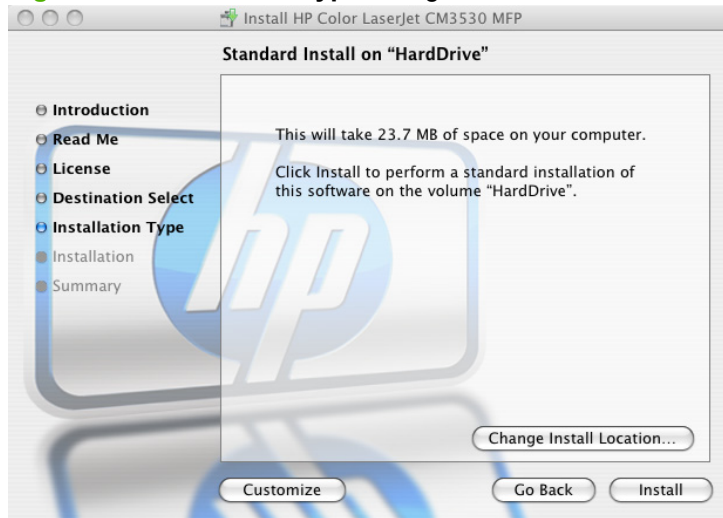
Figure 5-7 Select a Destination dialog box



Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous screen.

Click **Continue** to continue the installation. The **Installation Type** dialog box appears.

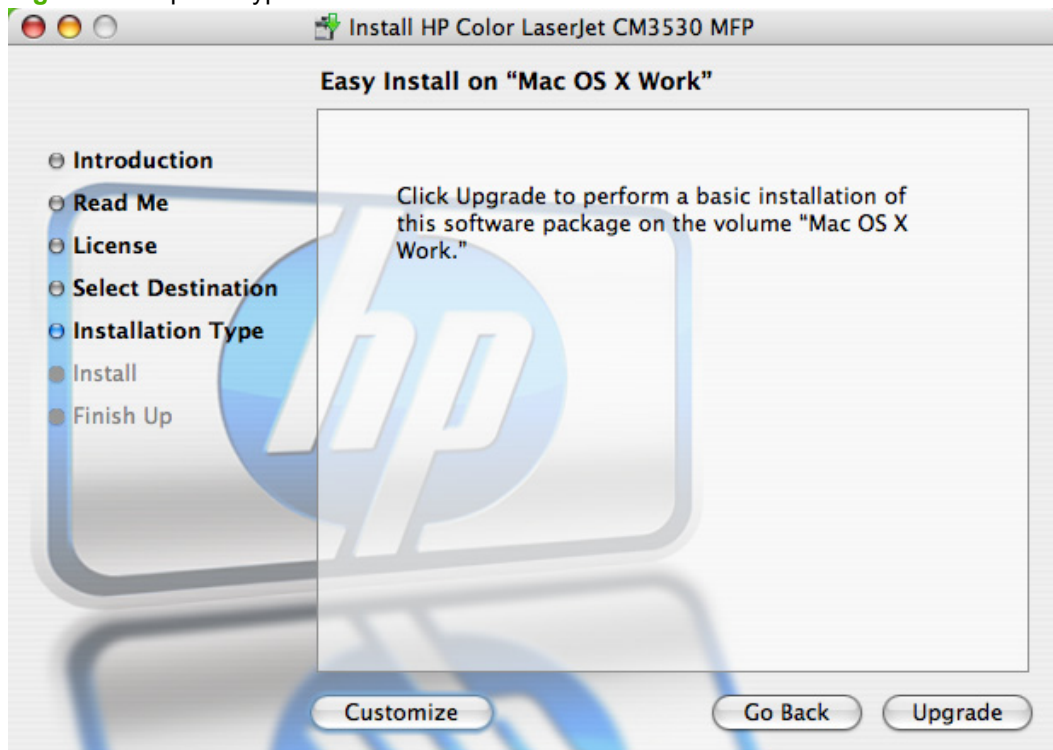
Figure 5-8 Installation Type dialog box



The default installation method when installing the software on a workstation that does not have a previous version of the software installed is **Standard Install on "HardDrive"**.

If you have a previous version of the software installed on a workstation this installation screen may indicate that update to the software is being performed, as shown in the following figure:

Figure 5-9 Update type installation

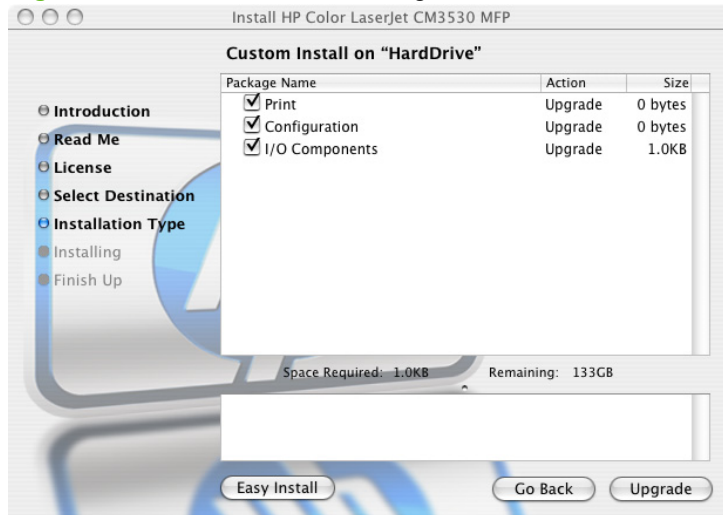


Click **Install** to start the installation on the selected disk.

You can also click **Customize** to go to the **Custom Install** dialog box.

Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous dialog box.

Figure 5-10 Custom Install dialog box



Use the check boxes in the **Package Name** list to select the printing-system components to install.

Click **Easy Install** to start the installation on the selected disk.

NOTE: If the printing-system software has been installed previously on the computer, the Action column for the component list and the button to start the installation on the selected disk changes to **Upgrade**.

Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous dialog box.

The **Authenticate** dialog box appears.

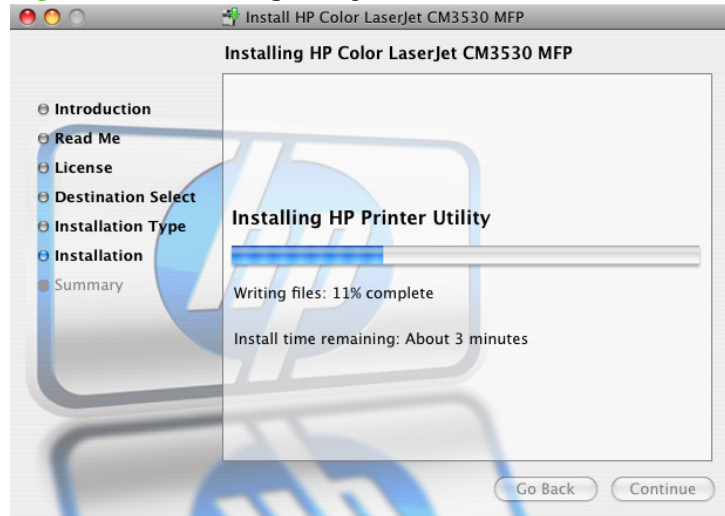
Figure 5-11 Authenticate dialog box



Type the correct administrator name and password, and then click **OK** to continue. The **Installing** dialog box appears.

Click **Cancel** to exit the installation.

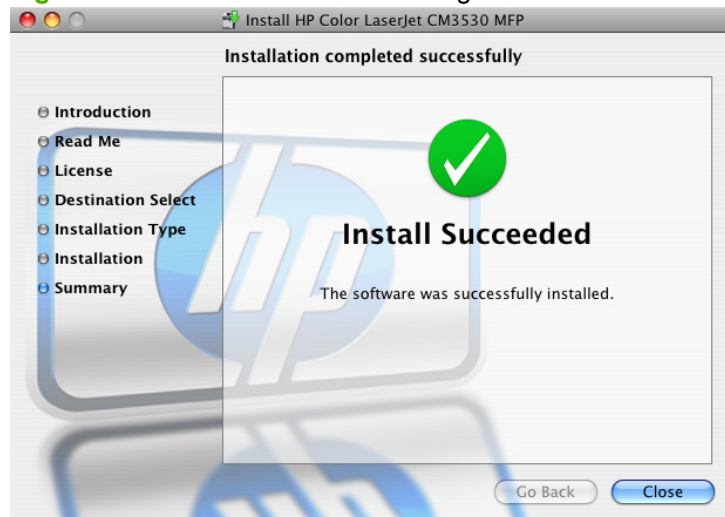
Figure 5-12 Installing dialog box



The **Installing** dialog box shows installation progress. No action is required.

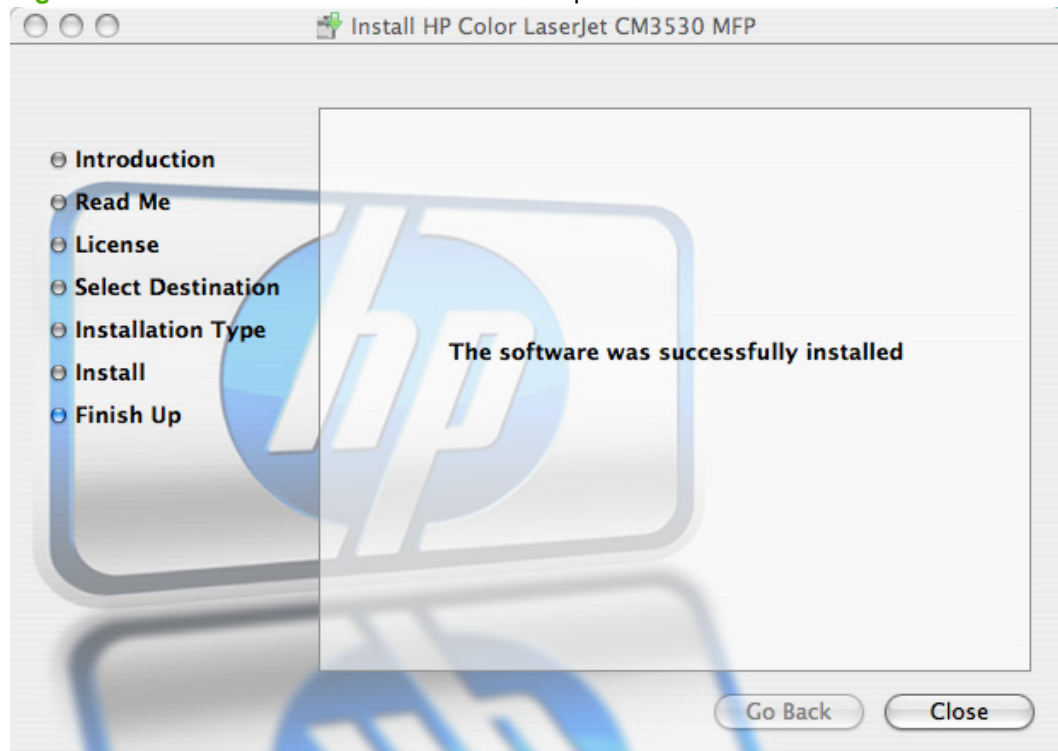
When the installation is complete, the **Install Succeeded** dialog box appears.

Figure 5-13 Install Succeeded dialog box




The screen that appears upon completion of a successful installation may also appear as shown in the following figure, depending on your Mac OS X version:

Figure 5-14 Alternate software installation completion screen



Click **Close** to exit the installer.

 **NOTE:** After installing the printing-system software, the product must be set up.

Product setup

- [Set up a product on Mac OS X V10.4](#)
- [Set up a product on Mac OS X V10.3](#)
- [Troubleshooting the product setup](#)

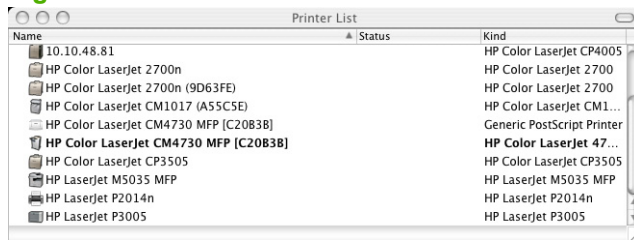
Set up a product on Mac OS X V10.4

Complete these steps *after* completing the printing-system software installation.

1. If you are using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the product and the computer. Turn on the product. If you are connecting using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the product and that the product is on.

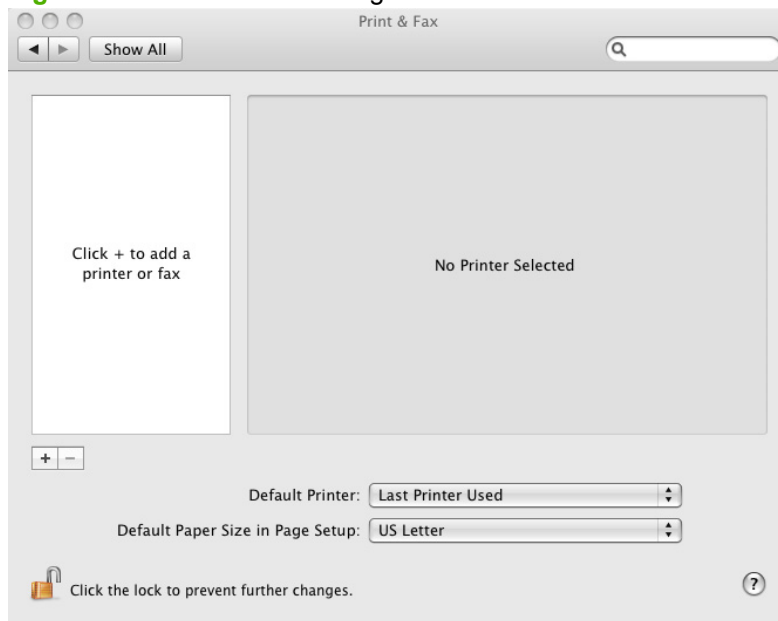
2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**. The **Printer List** screen appears. The following figure is an example of a typical **Printer List** screen on a computer that has multiple products installed.

Figure 5-15 Printer List screen



You can also configure the product by using the **Print & Fax** dialog box of **System Preferences**. From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences...**, then choose **Print & Fax**.

Figure 5-16 Print & Fax dialog box



NOTE: The following steps use the Printer Setup Utility to setup the product.

3. If you are installing the product through a USB connection, verify that the product appears in the printer list. The **Kind** column in the **Printer List**, or the **Kind** field in the **Print & Fax** dialog box, should display the product name. If this is the case, the setup is complete.

If the product does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** field, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 208](#).

If you are installing the product through a network connection, continue with the following steps.

4. Click **Add** in the **Printer List** (or the **+** button in the Print & Fax utility) to open the **Printer Browser** screen.
5. You can use either Bonjour or IP Printing for the network connection.

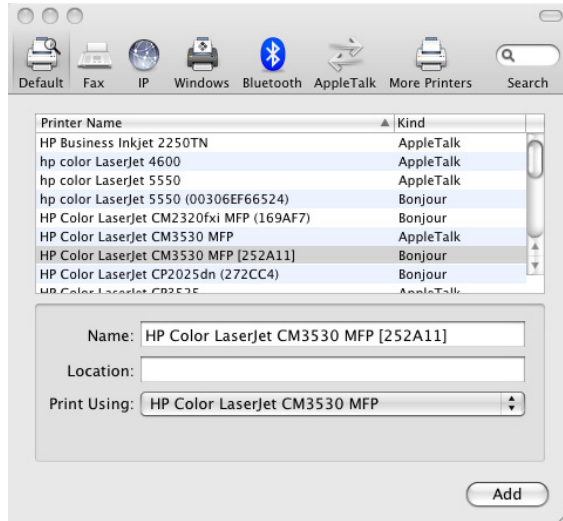
NOTE: Bonjour is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the product is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the product on a different network.


To use Bonjour, carry out the following steps:

- a. Click the **Default Browser** tab.

Figure 5-17 Printer Browser–Default Browser tab



- b. Select the product from the list. The software verifies that the product is connected to the network and the **Print Using** field is automatically populated with the correct PPD for the product.

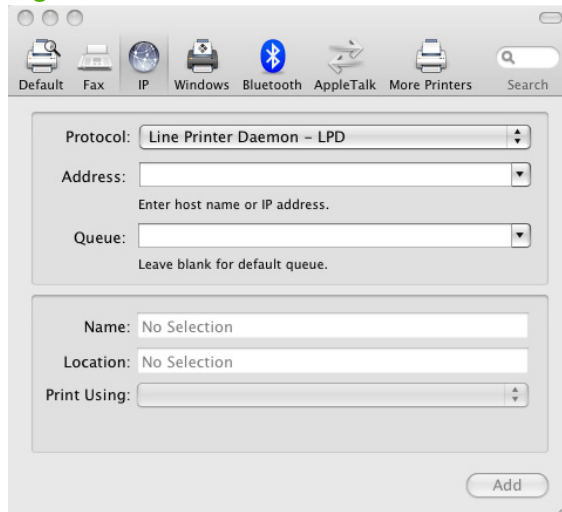
 **NOTE:** If you are on a network that has more than one product, print a configuration page and match the Bonjour Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the product that you are installing.

NOTE: If the product does not appear in the list, verify that the product is on and connected to the network, then try turning the product off and then on again. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** drop-down list, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 208](#).

To use the IP Printing method, carry out the following steps:

- a. Click the **IP Printer** tab.

Figure 5-18 Printer Browser – IP Printer tab



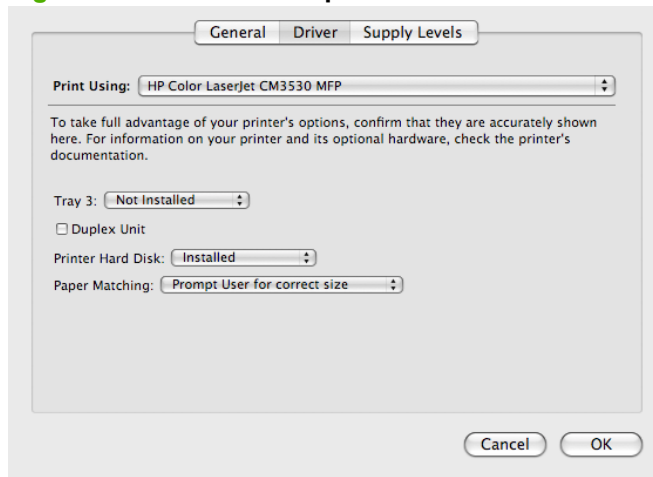
- b. Choose **HP Jet Direct – Socket** from the **Protocol** drop-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP products.
- c. Print the configuration pages.

To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

 - i. Touch **Administration**.
 - ii. Touch **Information**.
 - iii. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
 - iv. Touch **Print** to print the configuration page.
- d. On the first configuration page, under **IPv4**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Address:** field on the **IP Printer** tab.
- e. The **Name:**, **Location:**, and **Print Using:** information will automatically be filled in. The **Name:** and **Location:** values can be changed, if necessary. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Print Using:** field, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

6. Click **Add**. The **Installable Options** screen appears.

Figure 5-19 Installable Options screen

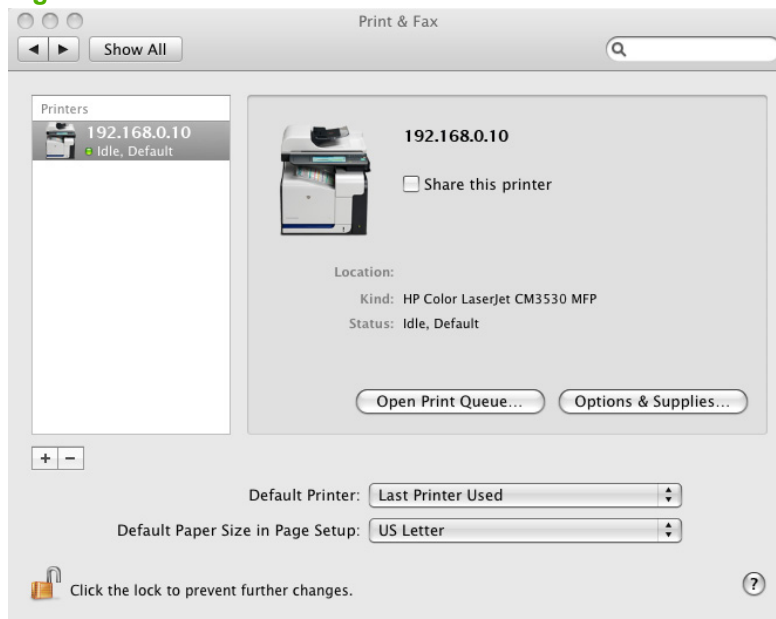


7. If the product has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
8. For the **Paper Matching:** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Prompt User for correct size**
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**

 **NOTE:** There may be additional items in the **Paper Matching:** drop-down menu that are not shown in the above figure.

9. After selecting the installable options, click **Continue**. The product name appears in the **Printer List** and the setup is complete.

Figure 5-20 Printer List screen



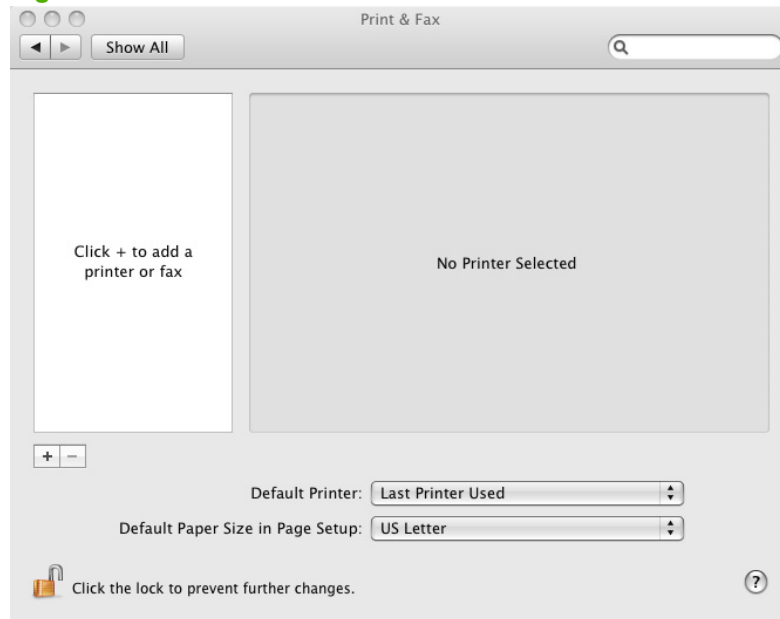
Set up a product on Mac OS X V10.3

Complete these steps *after* completing the printing-system software installation.

1. If you are using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the product and the computer. Turn on the product. If you are connecting using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the product and that the product is on.
2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**.

You can also configure the product using the **Print & Fax** pane of **System Preferences**. From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences...**, then choose **Print & Fax**. In the Print & Fax screen, click the **Printer Setup...** button to see the printer list.

Figure 5-21 Print & Fax screen



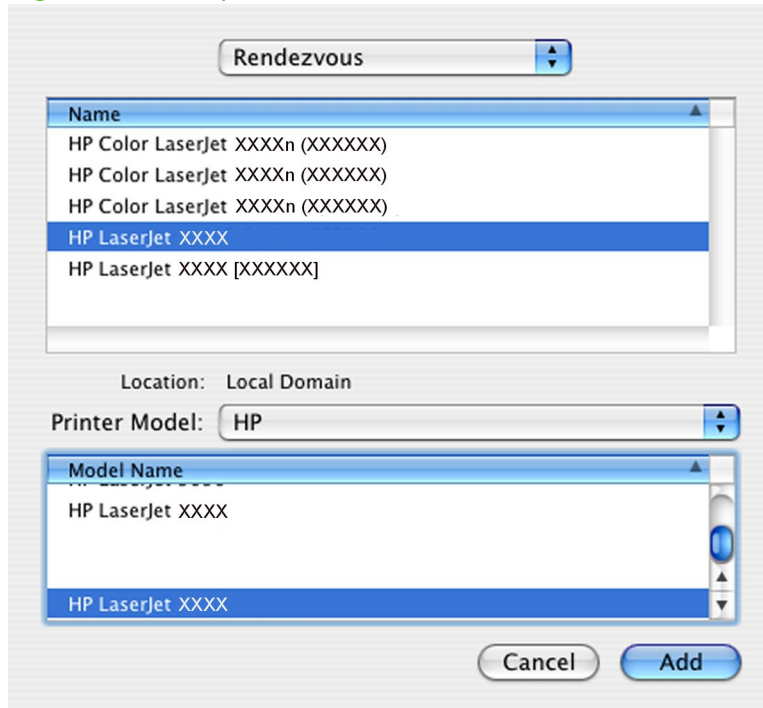
3. If you are installing the product through a USB connection, verify that the product appears in the printer list. (In the **Print & Fax** screen, click the **Setup Printers...** button to see the printer list.) The **Kind** column in the printer list should display the product name. If this is the case, the setup is complete.

If the product does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** column, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 208](#).

If you are installing the product through a network connection, continue with the following steps.

- Click **Add** (or the **Set Up Printers...** button in the **Print & Fax** screen), and then click **Add** to open the add printer screen.

Figure 5-22 Add printer screen



- Select the network connection protocol in the top drop-down menu. The two supported protocols are **Rendezvous** and **IP Printing**.

NOTE: Rendezvous is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the product is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the product on a different network.

If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

Select the product in the **Name** list. The **Printer Model** and **Model Name** are selected automatically.

NOTE: If you are on a network that has more than one product, print a configuration page and match the Rendezvous Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the product that you are installing.

NOTE: If the product does not appear in the list, verify that the product is on and connected to the network. If it still does not appear, try turning the product off and then on again. Finally, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 208](#).

NOTE: If the automatic selection fails, or if you want to manually select a .PPD file, click the **Printer Model** drop-down menu, select **HP**, and then select the .PPD file that you want to add. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

If you are using IP Printing, carry out the following steps:

- a. Choose **Socket/HP Jet Direct** from the **Printer Type** drop-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP products.
 - b. Print the product configuration pages.
To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.
 - i. Touch **Administration**.
 - ii. Touch **Information**.
 - iii. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
 - iv. Touch **Configuration Page**.
 - v. Touch **Print** to print the configuration page.
 - c. On the first configuration page, under **Product Settings**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Printer Address** field on the add printer screen.
 - d. Select the **Printer Model** and select the product in the **Model Name** list. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.
6. Click **Add**. The product appears in the **Printer List**.
 7. To configure installable options such as a duplexing unit or optional paper tray, click **Show Info?** on the printer list and choose **Installable Options** in the drop-down menu.
 8. If the product has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
 9. For the **Paper Matching:** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Prompt User for correct size**
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**
 10. Click **Apply Changes**, and then close the **Printer List** screen.

Troubleshooting the product setup

If the product does not appear in the printer list after an installation:

Complete each one of these solutions in the order given, and restart the setup process after each one to see if the issue has been resolved.


- Verify that the USB or network cable is connected between the product and the computer and that the product is powered on.
- Try disconnecting and reconnecting the cable. If the computer has more than one USB port, try a different USB port.
- Turn the product off and then back on.
- Turn the computer off and then back on.
- If you are using a USB hub on the computer, disconnect any other USB devices from the hub.

If the wrong PPD appears in the Kind column in the printer list after installation:

1. Unplug the USB cable.
2. Delete the print queue with the incorrect type (for example, Generic PostScript Printer).
3. Reinstall the printing-system software.
4. Turn the computer off and then on.
5. Reconnect the USB cable from the computer to the product.

If these steps do not resolve the problem, delete the incorrect print queue, click **Add**, choose the product from the list, and then browse manually for the product PPD. If this procedure does not resolve the problem, try the following procedure:

1. Open the finder.
2. Select **Applications**.
3. Select **Utilities**.
4. Open the **Printer Setup** utility.
5. Select **Printer to remove**.
6. Select **Printer**.

 **NOTE:** This process removes the printer object from the printer list but does not remove the files from the system. It is recommended that you keep the file in the operating system for later use. If you must remove the files, see [Remove the printing-system software from Macintosh operating systems on page 209](#).

Remove the printing-system software from Macintosh operating systems

1. Browse to the folder containing the PPDs. In Mac OS X V10.2.8 or later, the PPDs are installed in **Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources:<lang>.lproj**, where **<lang>** is the appropriate language.
2. Choose the product .GZ file and drag it to **Trash**.
3. Empty the **Trash**.

Macintosh HP Printer Utility

The HP Printer Utility is a software program that gives you access to the product in Mac OS X.

The HP Printer Utility is available only in Mac OS X V10.2.8 and later. The HP Printer Utility does not work when it is installed by through the AppleTalk protocol. Use IP, Bonjour, Rendezvous, or a USB connection to enable the HP Printer Utility.

- [Access to the HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Supplies Status](#)
- [Device Information](#)
- [HP Support](#)
- [Color Usage](#)
- [File Upload](#)
- [Upload Fonts](#)
- [Trays Configuration](#)
- [Stored Jobs](#)
- [E-mail Alerts](#)
- [Network Settings](#)
- [Supplies Management](#)
- [Protect Direct Ports](#)
- [Additional Settings](#)

Access to the HP Printer Utility

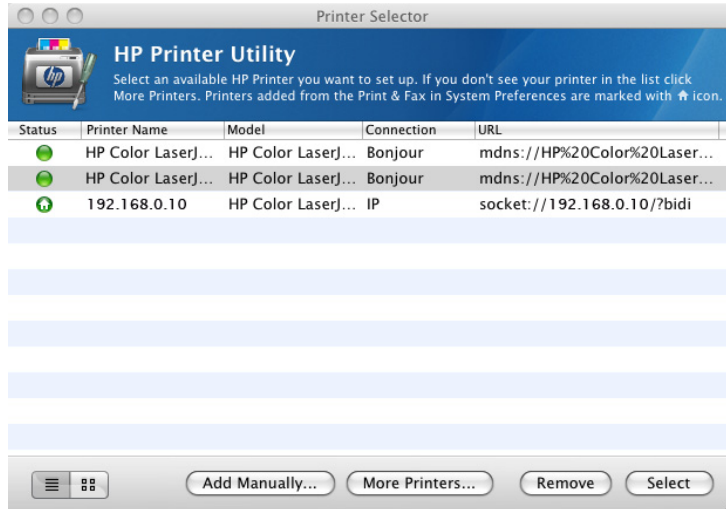
In Mac OS X V10.4 and Mac OS X V10.5, follow these steps to gain access to the HP Printer Utility:

1. On the **Finder** menu, click **Go**.
2. Click **Utilities**.
3. Double-click **HP Printer Selector**. The **Select Printer** screen appears.

In Mac OS X V10.3, follow these steps to gain access to the HP Printer Utility:

1. Switch to Finder.
2. Find and double-click **Printers**. The **Printer Selector** screen appears.

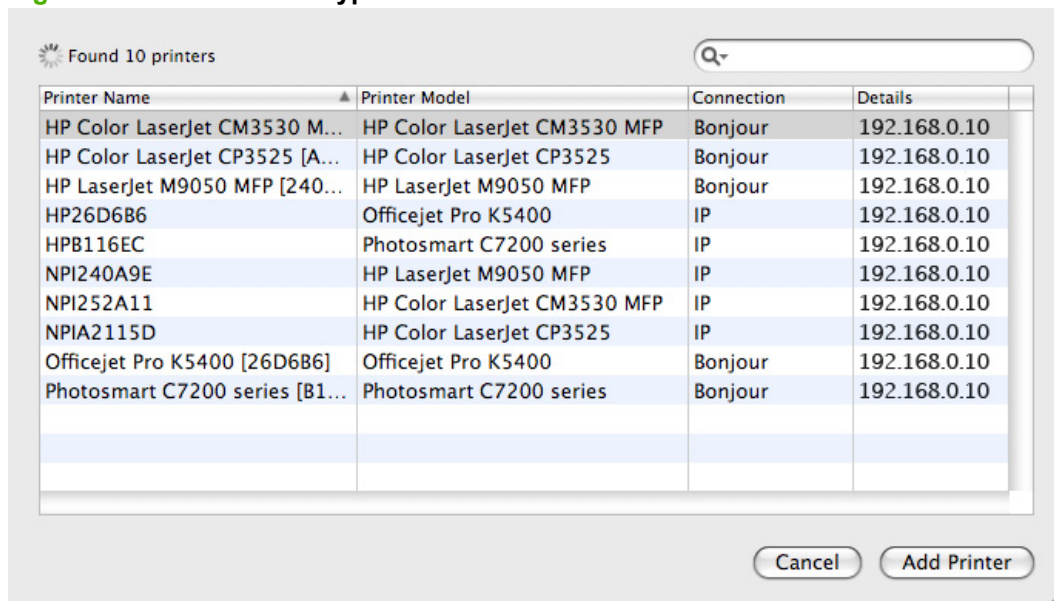
Figure 5-23 Printer Selector screen



To open the HP Printer Utility directly, select the product and click **Launch Utility**.

If the product does not appear, click **More Printers....** The **Connection Type** screen appears.

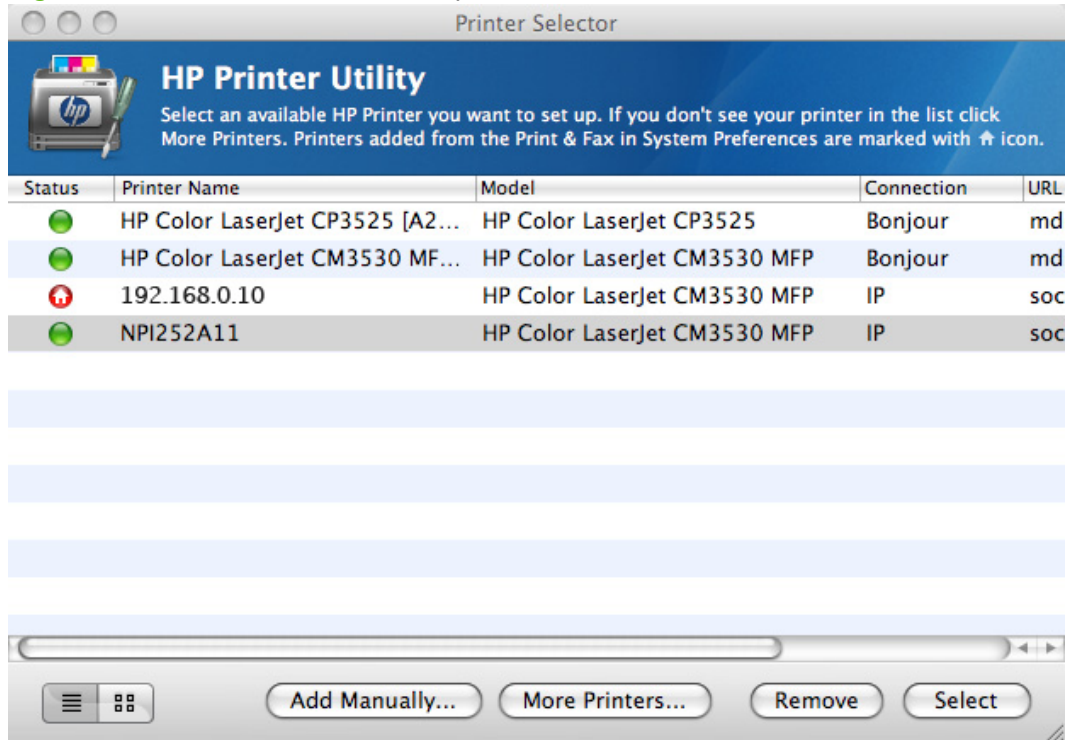
Figure 5-24 Connection Type screen



Choose the connection type (**USB** or **TCP/IP**). The product name appears under **Model Name**.

On the **Connection Type** screen, click **Add**. The **Select Printer** screen appears, showing product information.

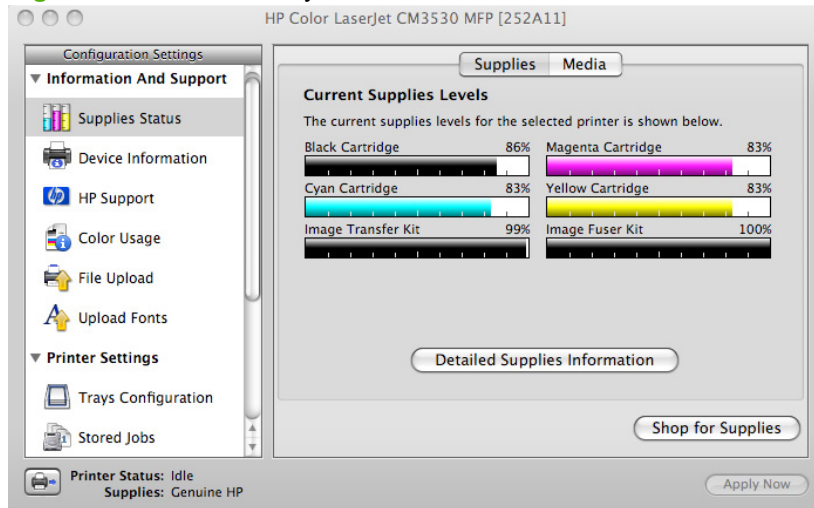
Figure 5-25 Select Printer screen – printer selected



On the **Select Printer** screen, click **Settings...** to open the **Device Status** screen in the HP EWS.

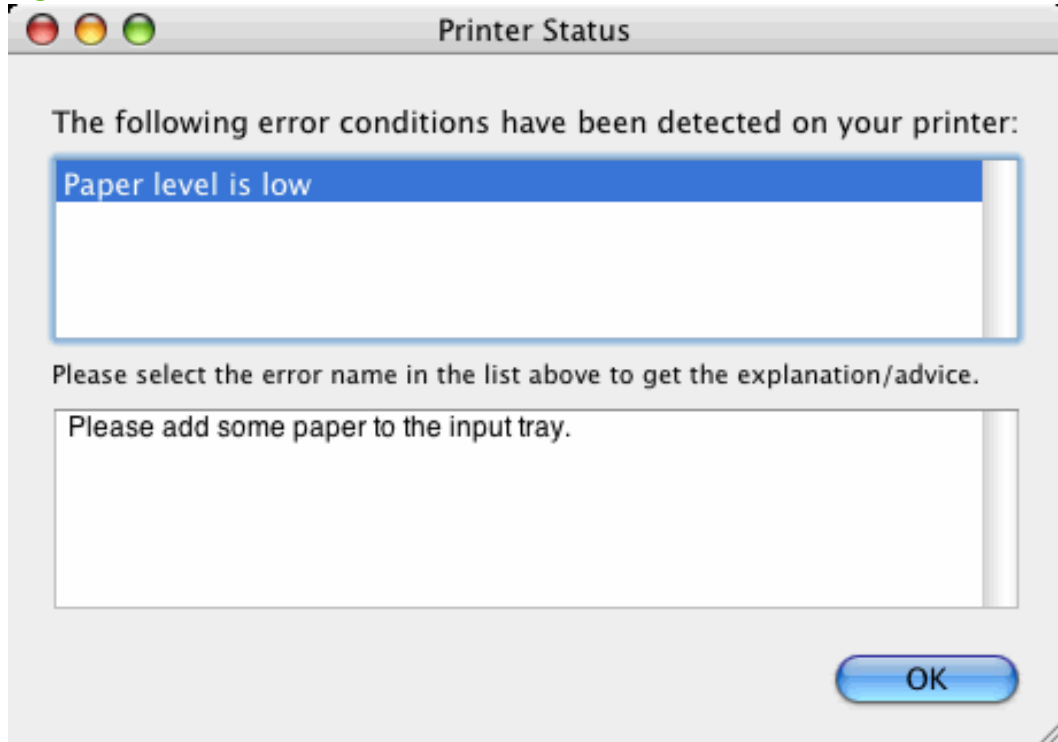
To open the HP Printer Utility, select the product and click **Launch Utility**.

Figure 5-26 Printer Utility screen



If the HP Printer Utility software detects a condition that might need attention, the **Printer Status** screen appears.

Figure 5-27 Printer Status screen



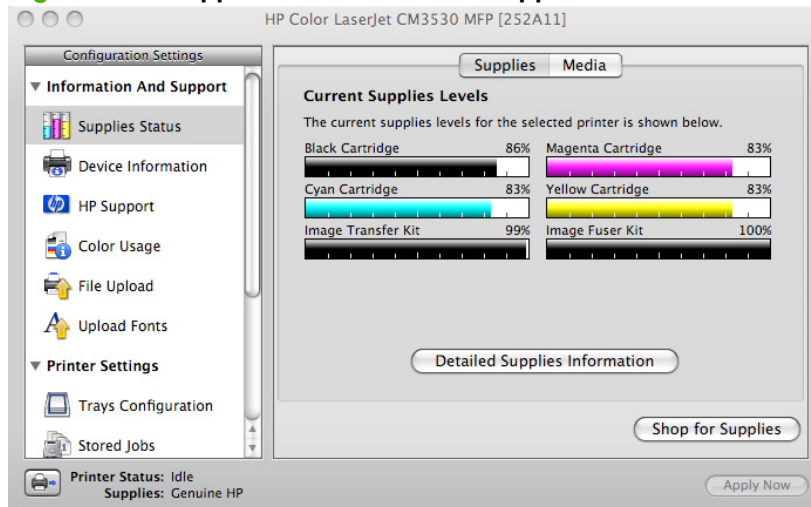
Address the condition and click **OK** to close the screen. The HP Printer Utility opens.

The following sections describe the screens and features that are available in the HP Printer Utility.

Supplies Status

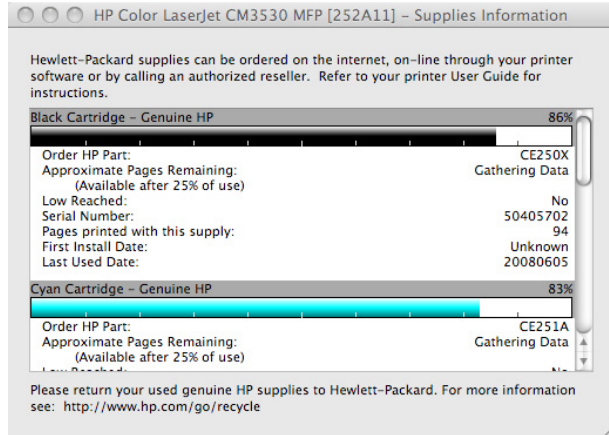
The HP Printer Utility opens to the **Supplies Status** screen and shows the **Current Supplies Levels** screen.

Figure 5-28 Supplies Status—Current Supplies Levels screen



Click **Detailed Supplies Information** to open the **Supplies Information** screen.

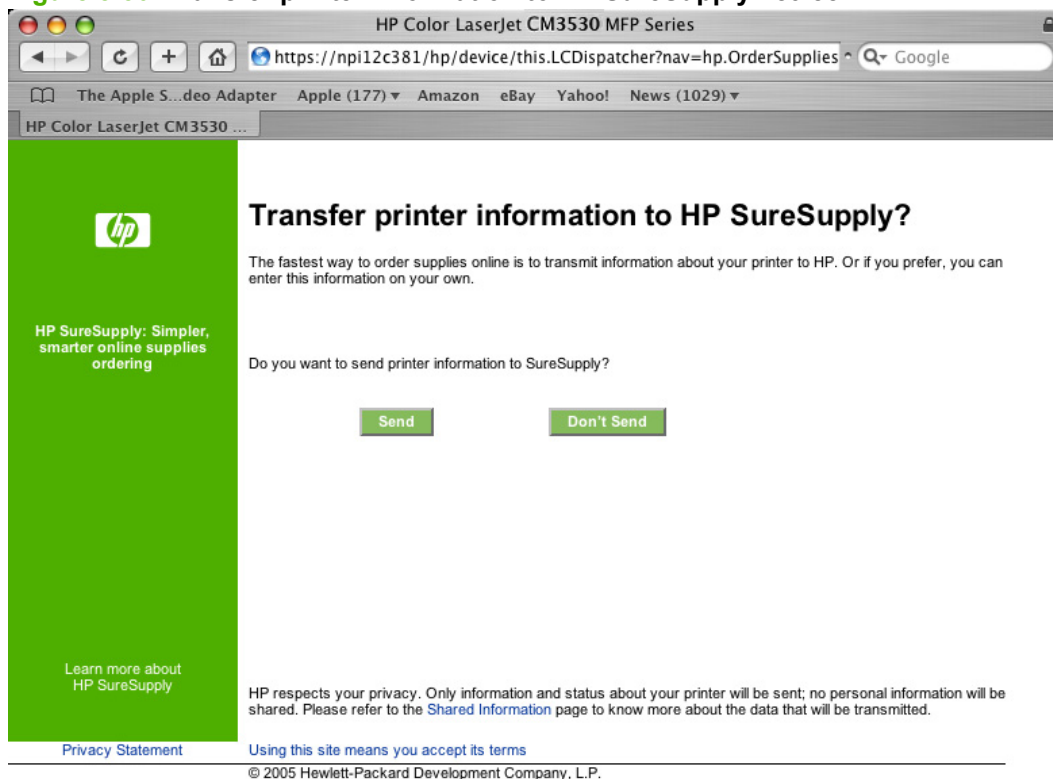
Figure 5-29 Supplies Status—Supplies Information screen



Use the scroll button to see information about the print cartridges.

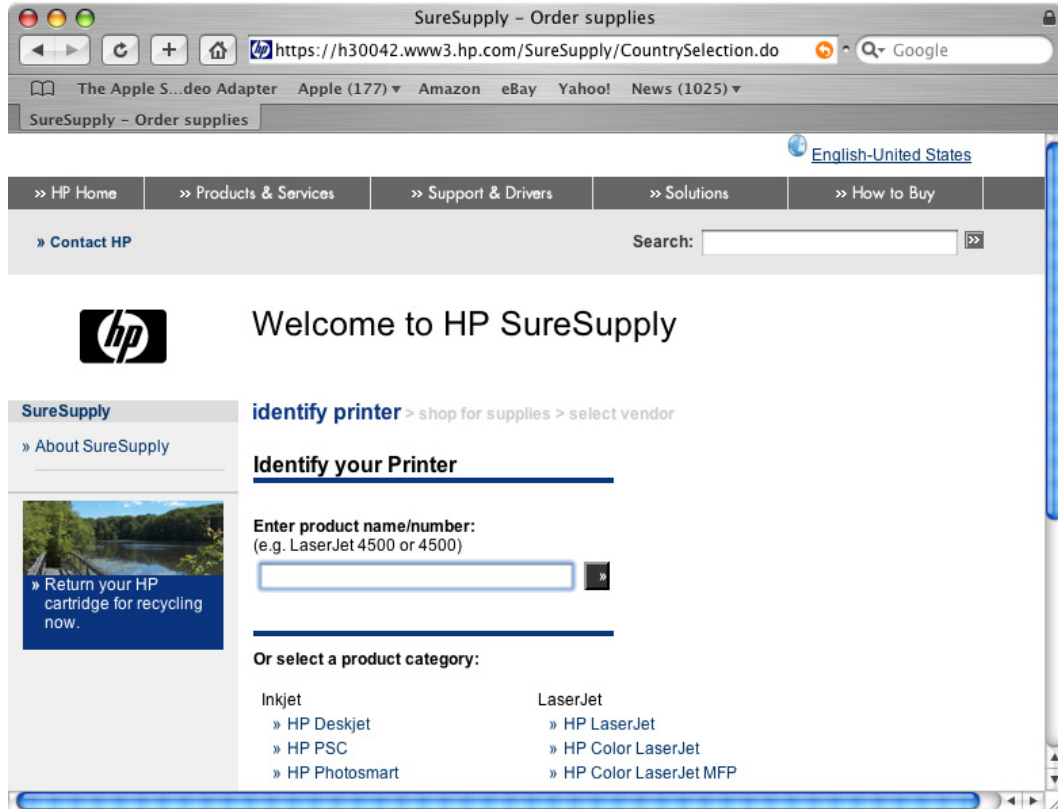
If you have Internet access and click **Shop for Supplies** (see [Figure 5-28 Supplies Status—Current Supplies Levels screen on page 213](#)), a screen appears that explains the ordering process and describes the kind of information that can be sent about the product to facilitate the ordering of supplies.

Figure 5-30 Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen



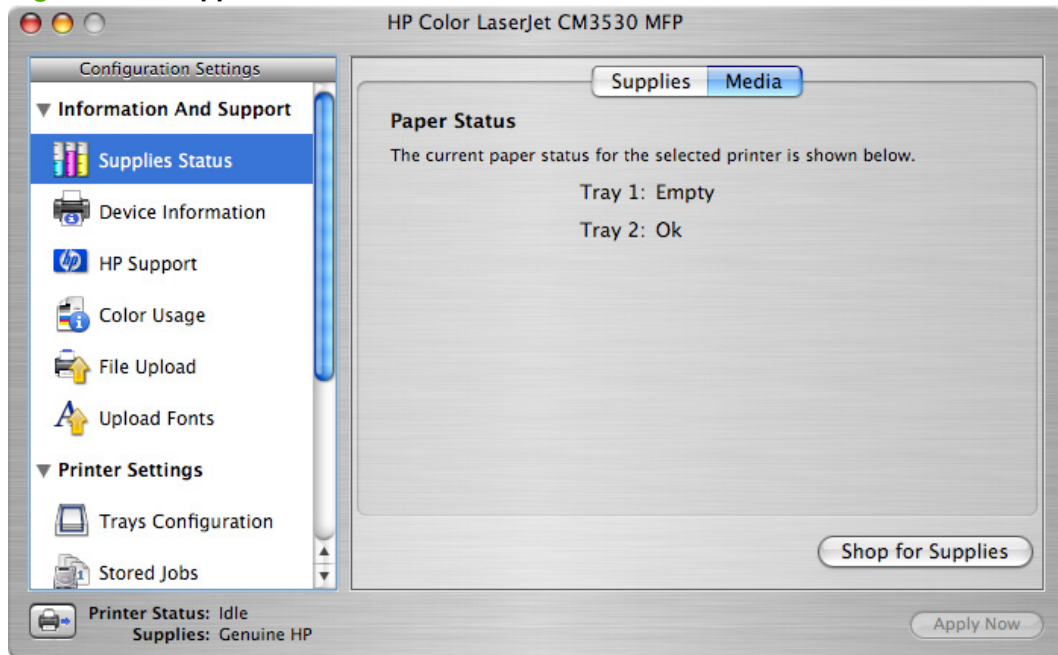
You can continue ordering supplies without sending product information by clicking the Don't Send link. After either option is selected (**Send** or **Don't Send**), the **Welcome to HP SureSupply** Web page opens.

Figure 5-31 Welcome to HP SureSupply screen



On the **Supplies Status** screen, click **Media** to see the status of the trays.

Figure 5-32 Supplies Status–Media screen

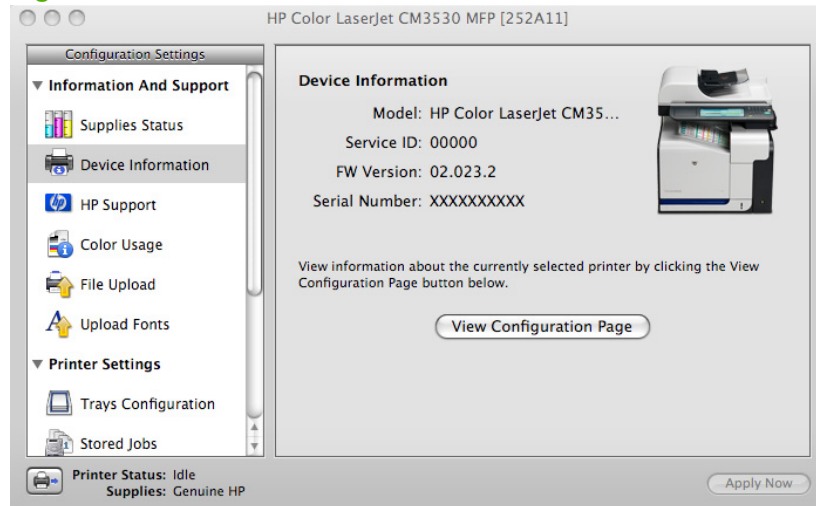


You can also order supplies from this screen by clicking **Shop for Supplies**.

Device Information

Click **Device Information** in the **Configuration Settings** menu to find the product service ID (if assigned), the firmware version, and the serial number.

Figure 5-33 Device Information screen



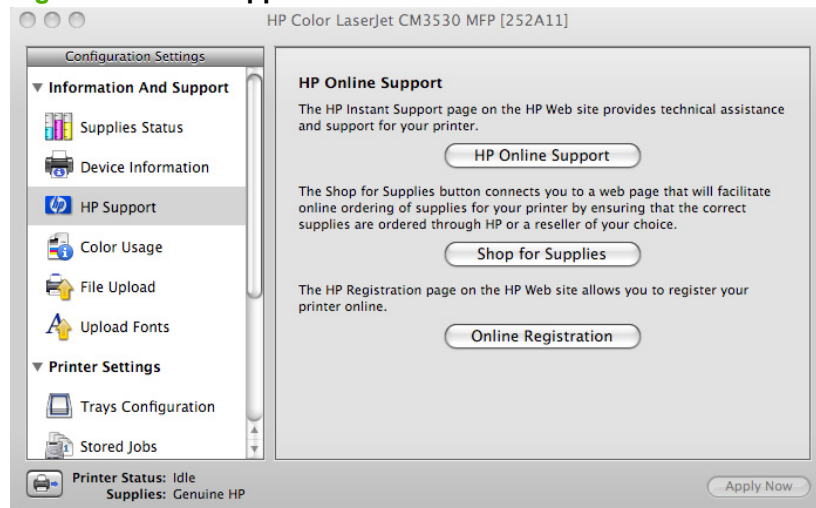
The configuration page shows other settings; click **View Configuration Page** to see it.

Click the product icon in the lower-left corner to see information about other installed products. This action relaunches the HP Printer Utility so that you can select another product.

HP Support

Click **HP Support** in the **Configuration Settings** menu to obtain links to HP support.

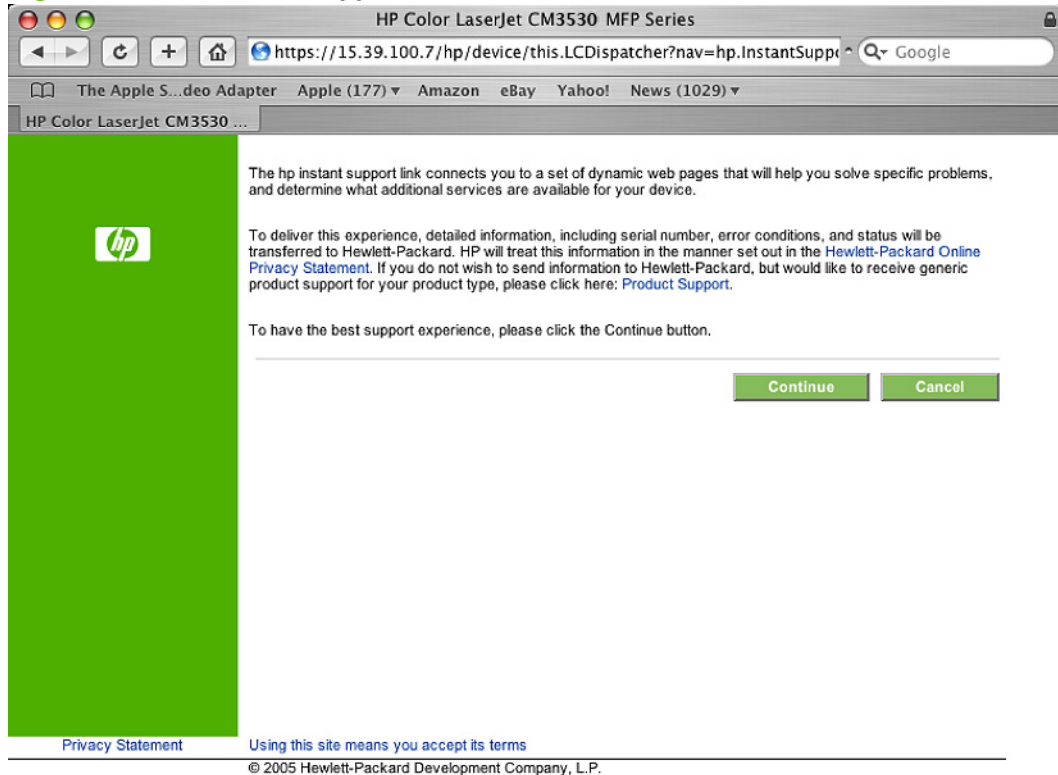
Figure 5-34 HP Support screen



If you have Internet access, you can connect to HP support Web pages from this screen.

Click the **HP Online Support** link to open the HP Instant Support Web page.

Figure 5-35 HP Instant Support link



Click the **Hewlett-Packard Online Privacy Statement** link to open a screen that shows the HP privacy statement.

Click the **Product Support** link if you do not want to send information to HP but would like to receive generic product support.

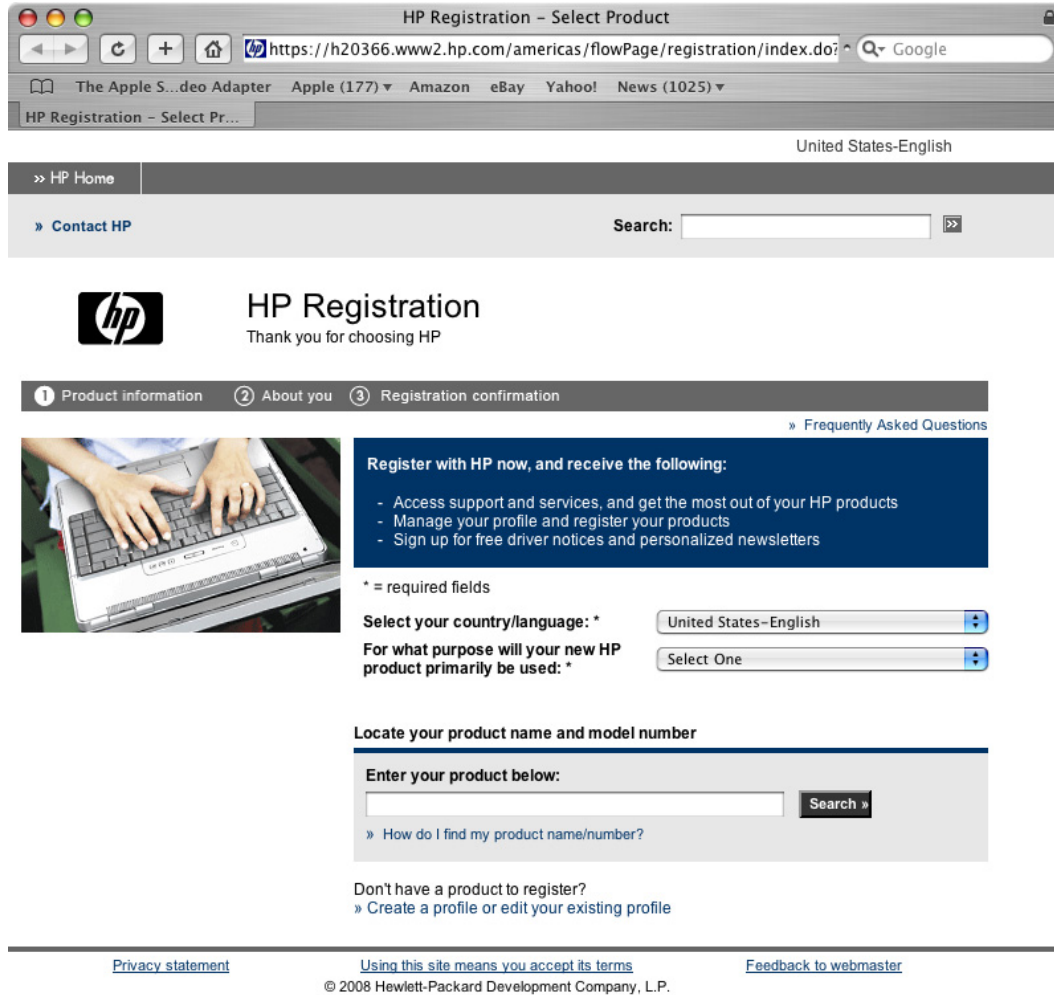
Click **Continue** to open a page where you can select the product and find further information about product support.

Click **Cancel** to return to the **HP Support** screen in the HP Printer Utility.

On the **HP Online Support** screen, click **Shop for Supplies** to open the Order Supplies Web page (see [Figure 5-30 Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen on page 214](#)).

Click **Online Registration** to open the HP Registration Web page and register the product.

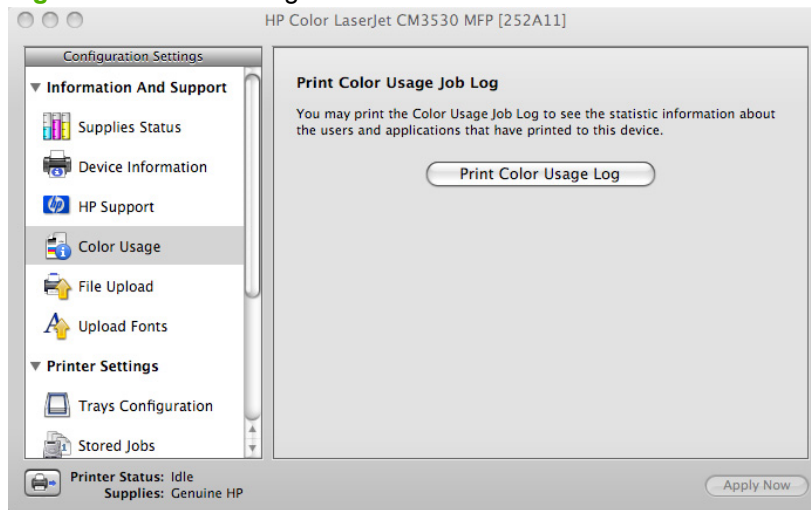
Figure 5-36 HP Registration Web page



Color Usage

On the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **Color Usage** to open that screen.

Figure 5-37 Color Usage screen



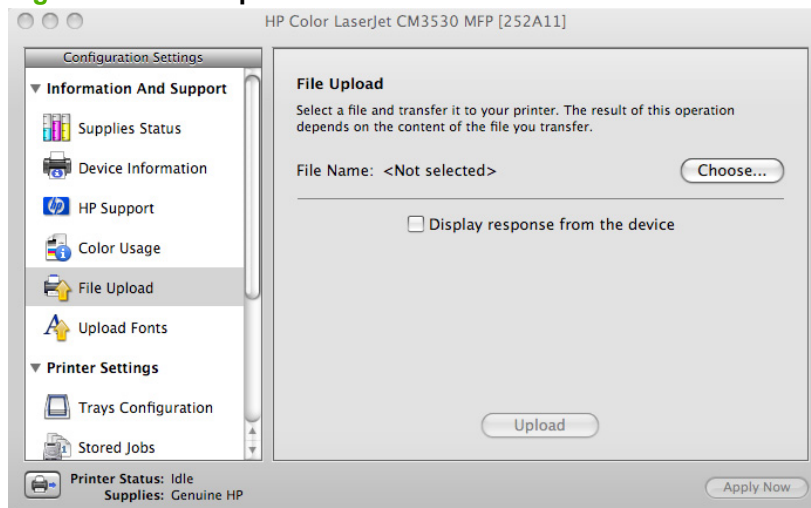
Click the **Print Color Usage Log** button to view or print the log.

File Upload

On the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **File Upload** to open that screen.

On the navigation screen, select the file and click **Open**. The file name appears in the **File Upload** screen of the HP Printer Utility. Click **Upload**.

Figure 5-38 File Upload screen



File Upload is supported for file types that can be sent directly to the product without first being opened through a software program. Some files can be uploaded to the product, but some cannot.

Documents in the following file formats can be printed by using a command line. That is, they do not need to be opened in a software program that supports the file format (such as the Adobe Acrobat or Acrobat Reader programs for .PDF files), but can be sent directly to the product by using **File Upload**.

- HP LaserJet printer command language (PCL)
- Portable document format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)

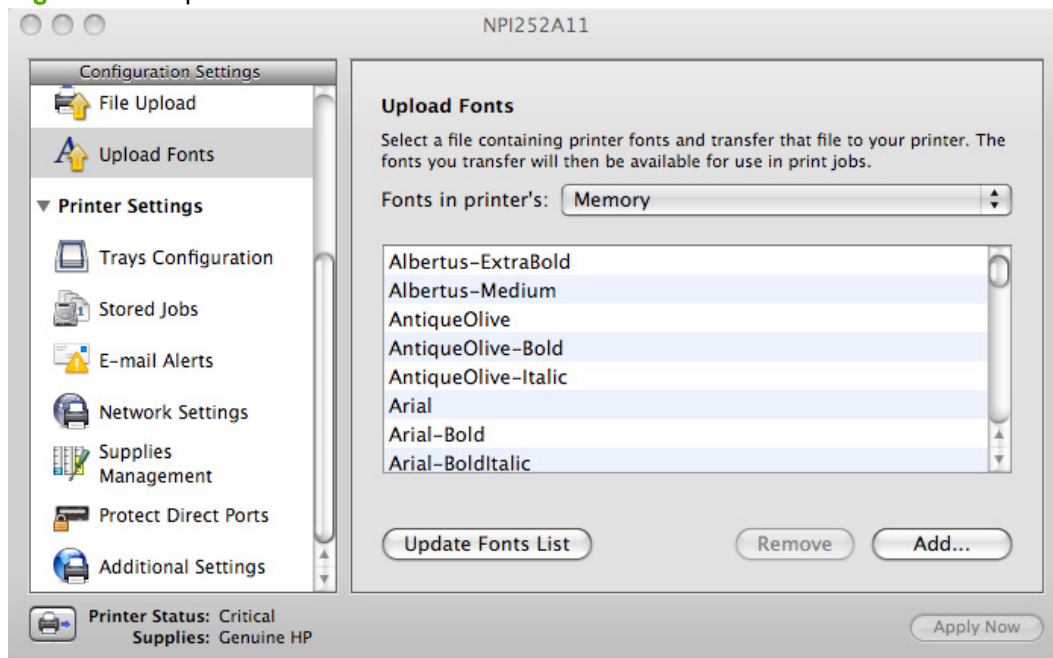
On the **File Upload** screen, click **Choose...** to open a navigation screen. On the navigation screen, select the file that you want to upload and click **Open**. The file name appears in the **File Upload** screen. Click **Upload** on that screen.

On the **File Upload** screen, click **Display response from the device** to see whether the upload was successful. If the file loads successfully, no message appears.

Upload Fonts

On the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **Upload Fonts** to open that screen.

Figure 5-39 Upload Fonts screen

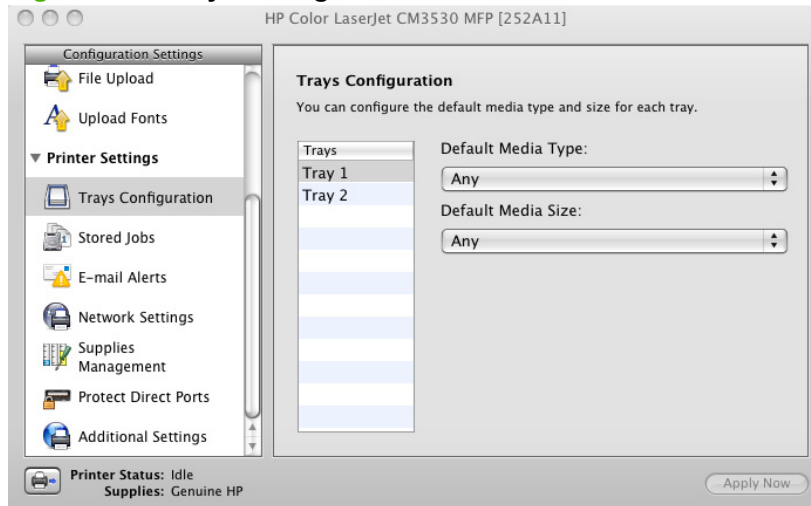


Use the **Fonts in printer's:** drop down list to select either **Memory** or on **Disk** as a location to gather the available fonts files. Select a fonts file and click **Add...** to make the fonts file available for your use.

Trays Configuration

Under **Printer Settings**, in the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **Trays Configuration** to open the that screen.

Figure 5-40 Trays Configuration screen

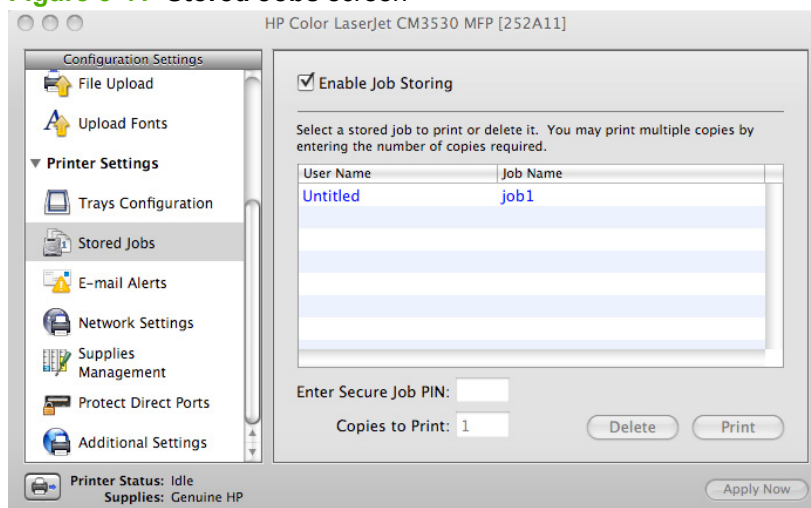


1. Choose **Trays Configuration** to change media size and type for each of the trays installed on the product.
2. To change the media size, select a tray and then choose a different media size in the **Default Media Size:** drop-down menu.
3. To change the media type, select a tray and then choose a different media type in the **Default Media Type:** drop-down menu.
4. Click **Apply Now** to save the settings.

Stored Jobs

In the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **Stored Jobs** to change the **Enable Job Storing** setting. This setting is selected by default. Click to clear the check box to disable the job-storing feature.

Figure 5-41 Stored Jobs screen



You can type a PIN for your job in the **Enter Secure Job PIN:** field.

Select the number of copies in the **Copies to Print:** field.

Select a stored job and click **Print** to print the job.

Select a stored job and click **Delete** to delete the job.

Job-storage print jobs can also be released or deleted at the product control panel.

- [Release a job-storage print job from the control-panel](#)
- [Delete a job-storage print job from the control-panel](#)

Release a job-storage print job from the control-panel

After you send a print job that uses the job-storage feature, you can release the job to print from the product control panel.

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. In the **Retrieve** tab, touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen. The folder that contains the stored jobs opens.
3. Touch the appropriate job.
If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. After the PIN is confirmed, the job is unlocked.
4. To print job, touch **Print List**.

Delete a job-storage print job from the control-panel


Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the product memory. Do this from the product control panel.

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. Touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen.
3. Touch the appropriate document.
If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. Once the PIN is confirmed, the job is unlocked.
4. Touch **Delete**.
5. A message appears: **Do you want to delete this stored job?**
Touch **Yes**. The document is deleted.

Or, do the following:

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. Touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen.
3. Touch appropriate document.
4. Touch **Delete**.
If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. Once the PIN is confirmed, the job is deleted.

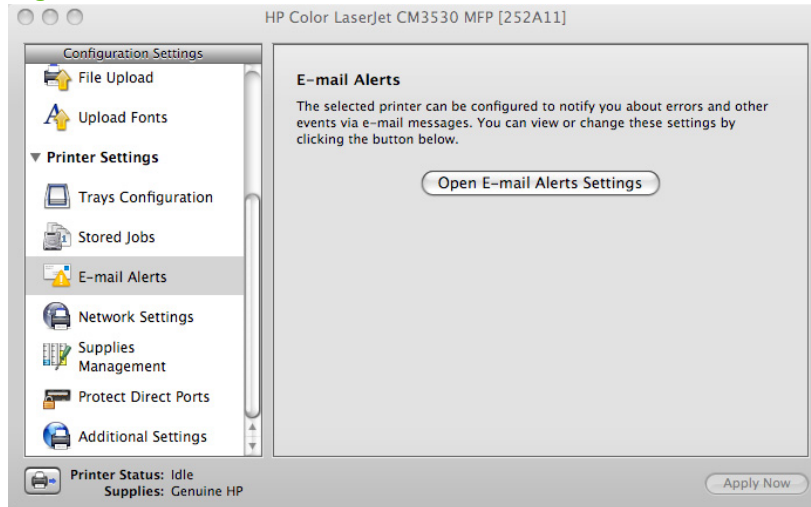
E-mail Alerts

 **NOTE:** The **E-mail Alerts** screen is available if the product is installed over a network connection. It is not available when the product is installed over a USB connection.

Under **Printer Settings** on the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **E-mail Alerts** to configure the product to send e-mail notifications to users.

If a user name and password have been set, you might need to obtain them from the IT administrator. For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the HP EWS, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guides*, which is available on the Admin CD.


Figure 5-42 E-mail Alerts screen



Click **Open E-mail Alerts Settings** to open the HP EWS. The HP EWS opens to the **Alerts** screen on the **Settings** tab, where you can set notifications to manage the product.

Network Settings

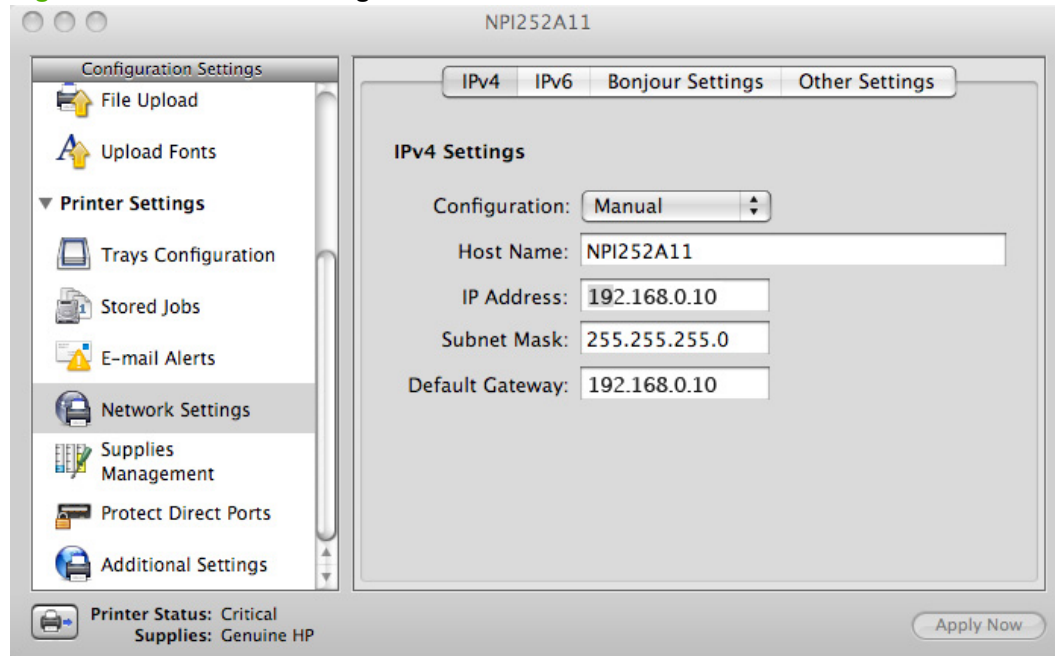
Under **Printer Settings** on the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **Network Settings** to open that screen.

 **NOTE:** **Network Settings** is available if the product is installed over a network connection. It is not available when the product is installed over a USB connection.

IPv4

Click the **IPv4** tab to configure IPv4 network settings.

Figure 5-43 Network Settings–IPv4 screen



Choose one of the following options in the **Configuration** drop-down menu:

- **DHCP**
- **BootP**
- **Manual**

You can also use this screen to modify the following settings:

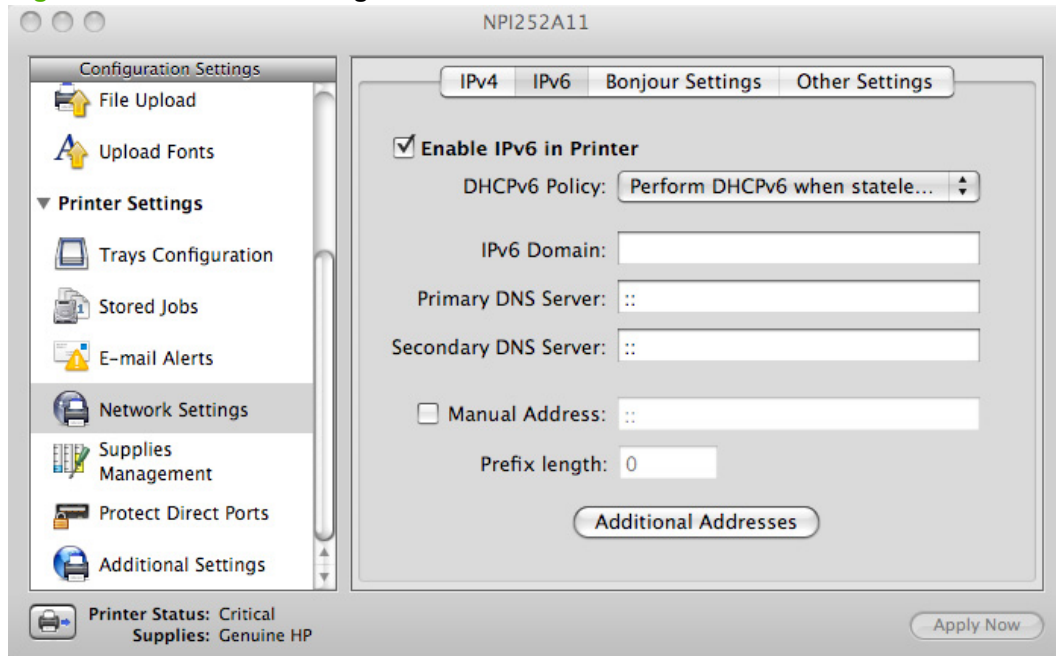
- **Host Name**
- **IP Address**
- **Subnet Mask**
- **Default Gateway**

To save new settings, click **Apply Now**.

IPv6

Click the **IPv6** tab to configure IPv6 network settings.

Figure 5-44 Network Settings–IPv6 screen




Select one of the following **DHCPv6 Policy**: settings from the drop-down menu:

- **Always perform DHCPv6 on the startup**
- **Perform DHCPv6 when stateless configuration is unsuccessful** (default setting)
- **Perform DHCPv6 only when requested by the router**

Type the values for **IPv6 Domain**:, **Primary DNS Server**:, and **Secondary DNS Server**..

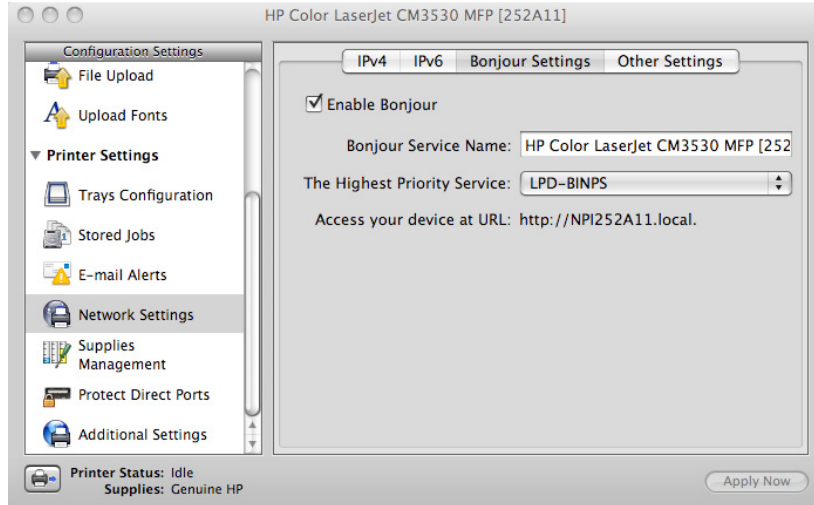
To configure a manual IPv6 address, click the check box next to **Manual Address**: and enter values for **Manual Address**: and **Prefix length**..

Bonjour Settings

 **NOTE:** The **Bonjour Settings** screen is available if the product is installed over a network connection. It is not available when the product is installed over a USB connection.

Choose **Bonjour Settings** to open the **Bonjour Settings** screen. Bonjour is enabled by default.

Figure 5-45 Network Settings–Bonjour Settings screen



To disable Bonjour, click to clear the **Enable Bonjour** check box and then click **Apply Now**.

The following options are available in the **The Highest Priority Service** drop-down menu:

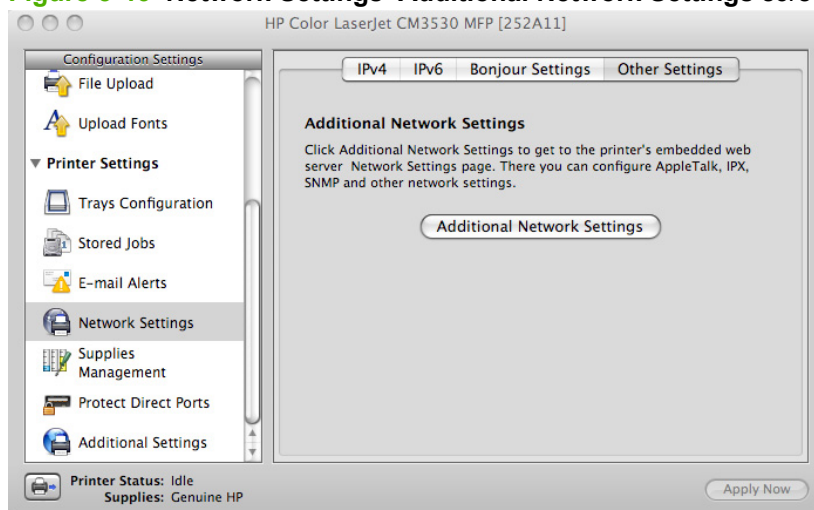
- **Port 9100**
- **IPP**
- **LPD-RAW**
- **LPD-TEXT**
- **LPD-AUTO**
- **LPD-BINPS (default)**

After you select a new setting, click **Apply Now** to save settings.

Other Settings

Choose **Additional Network Settings** to gain access to the HP EWS.

Figure 5-46 Network Settings–Additional Network Settings screen



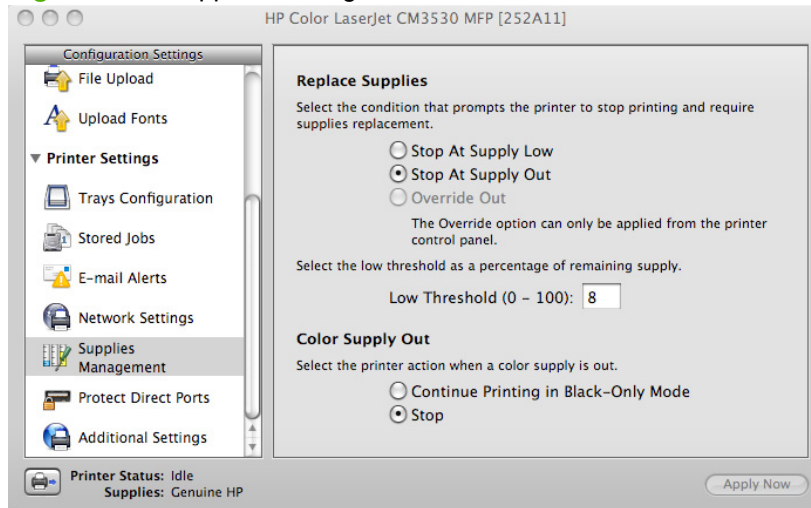
To open the HP EWS, click the **Additional Network Settings** button.

For information about HP EWS settings, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM3530 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide*, which is available on the Admin CD.

Supplies Management

Under **Printer Settings** on the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **Supplies Management** to open that screen. This screen provides solutions for conditions that prompt the printer to stop printing.

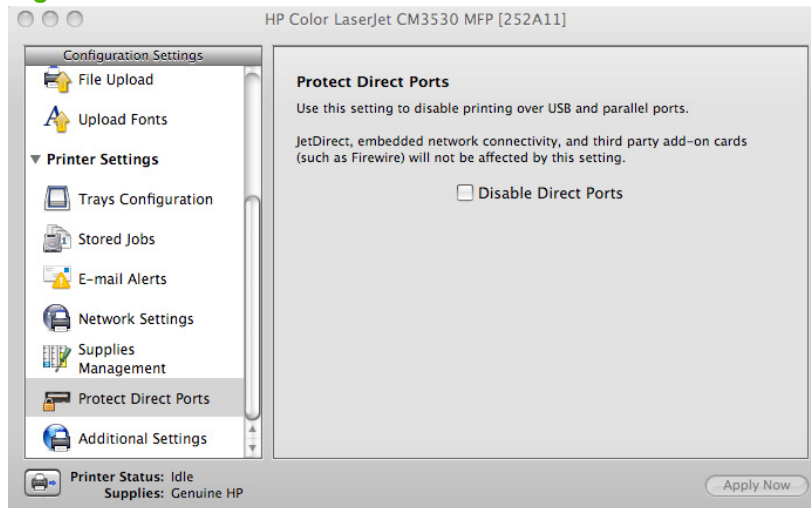
Figure 5-47 Supplies Management screen



Protect Direct Ports

Under **Printer Settings** on the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **Protect Direct Ports** to open that screen, which provides the option to disable printing over USB and parallel ports.

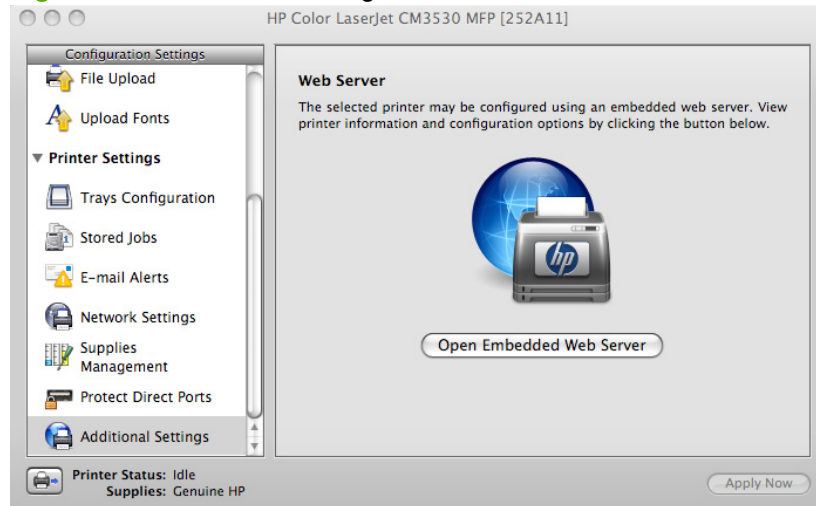
Figure 5-48 Protect Direct Ports screen



Additional Settings

Under **Printer Settings** on the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **Additional Settings** to open that screen.

Figure 5-49 Additional Settings screen



Click **Open Embedded Web Server** to view printer information and modify configuration settings for the selected printer.

Use features in the Macintosh printer driver

Create and use printing presets in Macintosh


Use printing presets to save the current printer driver settings for reuse.

Create a printing preset

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Select the driver.
3. Select the print settings.
4. In the **Presets** box, click **Save As...**, and type a name for the preset.
5. Click **OK**.

Use printing presets

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Select the driver.
3. In the **Presets** box, select the printing preset that you want to use.

 **NOTE:** To use printer-driver default settings, select **Standard**.

Resize documents or print on a custom paper size


You can scale a document to fit on a different size of paper.

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Open the **Paper Handling** menu.
3. In the area for **Destination Paper Size**, select **Scale to fit paper size**, and then select the size from the drop-down list.
4. If you want to use only paper that is smaller than the document, select **Scale down only**.

Print a cover page

You can print a separate cover page for your document that includes a message (such as “Confidential”).

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Select the driver.
3. Open the **Cover Page** menu, and then select whether to print the cover page **Before Document** or **After Document**.
4. In the **Cover Page Type** menu, select the message that you want to print on the cover page.

 **NOTE:** To print a blank cover page, select **Standard** as the **Cover Page Type**.

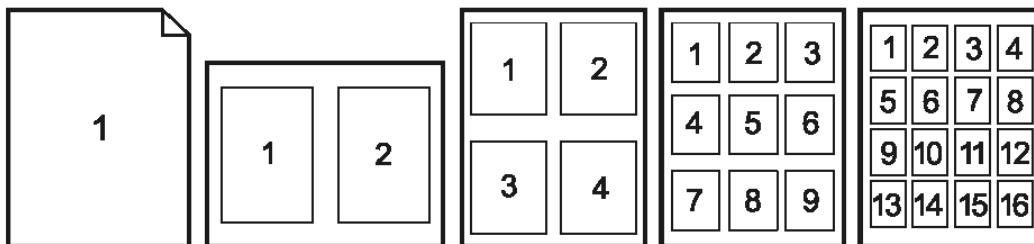
Use watermarks

A watermark is a notice, such as “Confidential,” that is printed in the background of each page of a document.

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Open the **Watermarks** menu.
3. Next to **Mode**, select the type of watermark to use. Select **Watermark** to print a semi-transparent message. Select **Overlay** to print a message that is not transparent.
4. Next to **Pages**, select whether to print the watermark on all pages or on the first page only.
5. Next to **Text**, select one of the standard messages, or select **Custom** and type a new message in the box.
6. Select options for the remaining settings.

Print multiple pages on one sheet of paper in Macintosh

You can print more than one page on a single sheet of paper. This feature provides a cost-effective way to print draft pages.



1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Select the driver.
3. Open the **Layout** menu.
4. Next to **Pages per Sheet**, select the number of pages that you want to print on each sheet (1, 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16).
5. Next to **Layout Direction**, select the order and placement of the pages on the sheet.
6. Next to **Borders**, select the type of border to print around each page on the sheet.

Print on both sides of the page (duplex printing)

Use automatic duplex printing


1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
 - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper face-up with the bottom edge feeding into the printer first.
 - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper face-down with the top edge at the back of the tray.
2. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
3. Open the **Layout** menu.
4. Next to **Two-Sided**, select either **Long-Edge Binding** or **Short-Edge Binding**.
5. Click **Print**.

Print on both sides manually

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
 - For Tray 1, load the letterhead paper face-up with the top edge feeding into the printer first.
 - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper face-down with the top edge at the right of the tray.

△ **CAUTION:** To avoid jams, do not load paper that is heavier than 105 g/m² (28-lb bond).

2. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
3. On the **Finishing** menu, Click the **Manual Duplex** tab.
4. Click the check box next to **Manual Duplex**.
5. Click **Print**. Follow the instructions in the pop-up window that appears on the computer screen before replacing the output stack in Tray 1 for printing the second half. Even pages are printed first.

 **NOTE:** You can optionally print a guide with a print job that shows the correct way to insert the stack into Tray 1.

6. Go to the printer, and remove any blank paper that is in Tray 1.
7. Insert the printed stack face-up with the top edge feeding into the printer first in Tray 1. You *must* print the second side from Tray 1.
8. If prompted, press the appropriate control-panel button to continue.

Store jobs

You can store jobs on the product so you can print them at any time. You can share stored jobs with other users, or you can make them private.

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Open the **Job Storage** menu.

3. In the **Job Storage Mode**: drop-down list, select the type of stored job.
4. For the **Stored Job**, **Private Job**, and **Private Stored Job** types of stored jobs, enter a name for the stored job in the box next to **Job Name**:

Select which option to use if another stored job already has that name.

- **Use Job Name + (1 - 99)** appends a unique number to the end of the job name.
 - **Replace Existing File** overwrites the existing stored job with the new one.
5. If you selected **Stored Job** or **Private Job** in step 3, type a 4-digit number in the box next to **PIN To Print (0000 - 9999)**. If other people attempt to print this job, the product prompts them to enter this PIN number.

Set the color options

Use the **Color Options** pop-up menu to control how colors are interpreted and printed from software programs.

1. On the **File** menu in the software program, click **Print**.
2. Select the driver.
3. Open the **Color Options** pop-up menu.
4. Click **Show Advanced Options**.
5. Adjust the individual settings for text, graphics, and photographs.

Use the Services menu

If the product is connected to a network, use the **Services** menu to obtain product and supply-status information.

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Open the **Services** menu.
3. To open the HP EWS and perform a maintenance task, do the following:
 - a. Select **Device Maintenance**.
 - b. Select a task from the drop-down list.
 - c. Click **Launch**.
4. To go to various support Web sites for this device, do the following:
 - a. Select **Services on the Web**.
 - b. Select **Internet Services**, and select an option from the drop-down list.
 - c. Click **Go!**.

6 Engineering details

- [Remote firmware updates](#)
- [Print print-ready documents](#)
- [Media attributes](#)
- [HP Device Manager for Linux](#)

Remote firmware updates

The configuration page lists the firmware version of the product. On flash-based products, you can update the firmware code by downloading the latest RFU file for the product and running the program according to the Readme instructions that come with it. If the firmware becomes corrupted or fails, usually because of an interruption when attempting to update the firmware, the product may no longer function. If updated firmware becomes available, you can download the RFU file for the product from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcm3530mfp_firmware

The product features remote firmware update (.RFU) capability. The method for downloading remote firmware updates from the Web site is similar to that used to download the latest printing-system software and printer drivers.

To remotely update firmware use the following steps:

1. Print a configuration page to see the version of firmware that is currently installed on the product. Also, print a menu map to have a record of the user settings that have been configured.
2. Go to the HP Web site and download the latest firmware to the computer.

To find the most recent firmware update for the product, go to the following URL:

www.hp.com/go/cljcm3530mfp_firmware

There are separate downloads for Windows, Mac, and UNIX operating systems. Be sure to read the "Readme" file included with the download.

3. Download the new firmware to the product.
4. Print a new menu map to compare user settings between the previous firmware and the updated firmware.

Primary/Location	Version Checking
Jetdirect inside (JDI)	Does version checking. Updates if the firmware version is newer; this means it will not rewrite or update if the firmware is the same or older.
Fax Modem	Does version checking. The firmware updates if the .RFU is different from what is currently on the component. The firmware can be updated if the .RFU is older or newer than the current firmware version. Will not update if firmware version is the same. The same version does not rewrite to decrease RFU time.
Formatter	No version checking. The formatter firmware updates if there is a formatter bundle on the .RFU and is not dependant on what version of firmware the formatter is currently using.
Copy control board (CPB)	No version checking.
Scan control board (SCB)	Does version checking. Upgrades if the firmware version is newer; this means it will not rewrite or update if the firmware is the same or older.

Jetlink protocol (interface used to hook up output products; external to product)	No version checking.
DC controller (internal to product) <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Duplexer	Does version checking. The firmware updates if the .RFU is different from what is currently on the component. The firmware can be updated if the .RFU is older or newer than the current firmware version.


- [Print the configuration page](#)
- [HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility](#)
- [Other remote firmware update methods](#)

Print the configuration page

To determine the current level of firmware, view the configuration page.

To print the configuration page from the product control-panel, do the following:

1. From the **Home** screen, touch **Administration**.
2. Touch **Information**.
3. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
4. Touch **Configuration Page**.
5. Touch **Print**.

 **NOTE:** If the product contains an HP Jetdirect print server or an optional hard disk drive, additional configuration pages print that provide information about those options.

The firmware datecode is listed on the configuration page in the section titled **Device Information**. The firmware datecode has this format: YYYYMMDD XX.XXX.X. The first string of numbers is the date, where YYYY represents the year, MM represents the month, and DD represents the day. For example, a firmware datecode that begins with 20061125 represents November 25, 2006. The second string of numbers represents the firmware version.

Print the menu map

Print the menu map before updating the firmware to see what user settings have been configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with the menu map printed after the firmware update to determine the user settings that have been added or changed in the new firmware.

To print the menu map from the product control-panel, do the following:

1. From the **Home** screen, touch **Administration**.
2. Touch **Information**.
3. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
4. Touch **Administration Menu Map**.
5. Touch **Print**.


HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility

Use the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility to download a new firmware file to the product.

When this type of firmware update is downloaded from the HP Web site, the file contains the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility executable (which contains the firmware update integrated into the utility) and the Readme file that is applicable for the product and firmware revision that you are downloading.

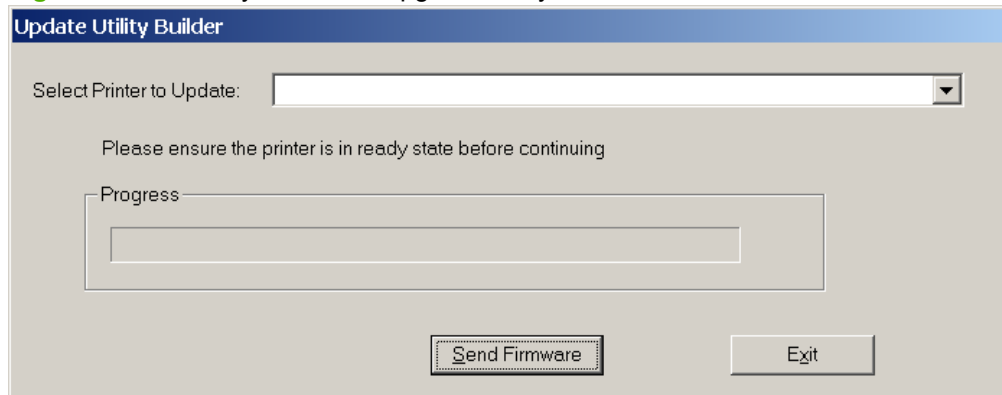
The HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility uses the current print queue to communicate with the product and does not require the Windows spooler. This utility is only available for Windows operating systems.

Follow these instructions to complete the firmware update:

 **NOTE:** In some circumstances, the firmware update might require ten minutes or more to complete. Do not power cycle the product or the computer during the update process or the product may become unusable.

1. Download the printer firmware from the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/cljcm3530mfp_firmware
2. Double-click and extract the downloaded file to the desktop.
3. Print a configuration page from the product control-panel (if you have not done so already). Under the **Device Information** heading, note the **Firmware Datecode**. This version should change after you have successfully completed the firmware update. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 236](#).
4. Verify that the product is in a **Ready** state.
5. On the computer, double-click the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility executable file.

Figure 6-1 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 1



6. Select the product that you want to update from the **Select Printer to Update:** drop-down list.


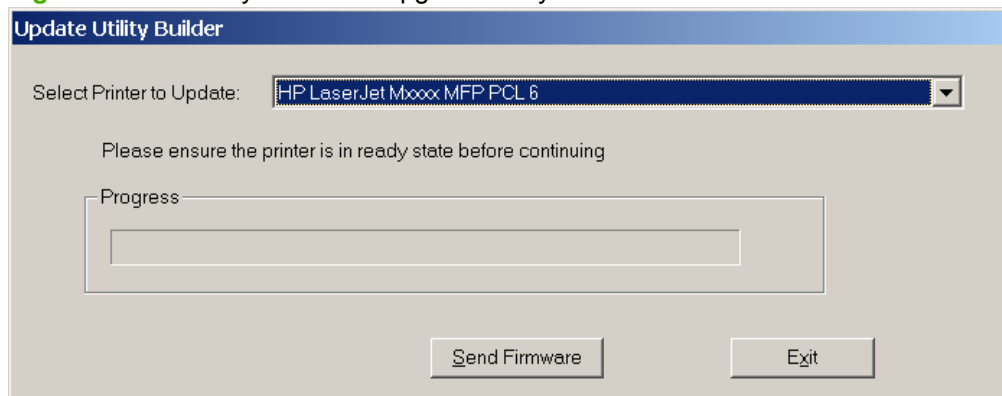
 **NOTE:** If the product that you want to update is not in the list, you must install a printer driver for the product and be able to print to the product before continuing.

Figure 6-2 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 2



7. Click **Send Firmware** to begin the firmware update process.

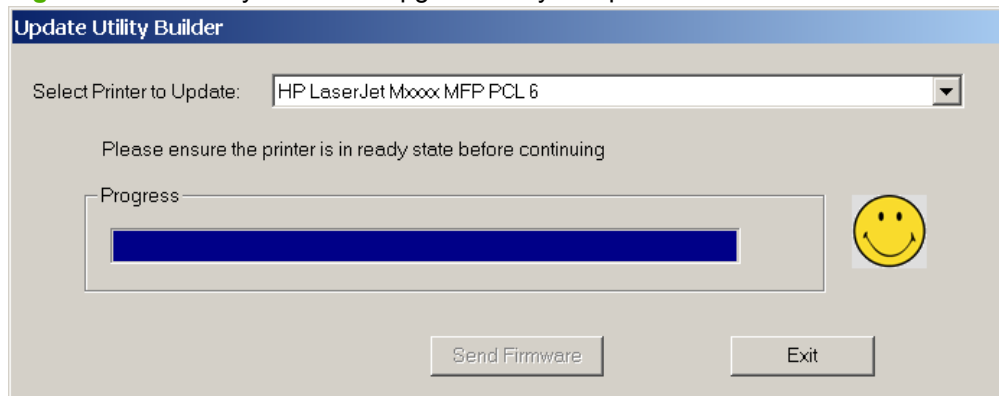
△ **CAUTION:** Interrupting the firmware update process by turning the product off and then turning it on again, or by attempting to send a print job to the product, might cause the product to go into an unrecoverable state.

📝 **NOTE:** The progress bar does not necessarily reflect the actual time needed for the firmware update to complete.

8. The update process is complete when an icon appears in the lower-right corner of the dialog box. Also, check that the product is in a ready state before continuing. A smiling icon appears when the update completes successfully; a frowning icon appears when the update does not complete successfully.

📝 **NOTE:** If the frowning icon appears, check to make sure the product is on and in a **Ready** state. Verify that you can send print jobs to the product, and then try again to perform the firmware update.

Figure 6-3 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility complete screen



9. Click **Exit** to close the dialog box.
10. Turn the product off and then turn it on again, if you are instructed to do so on the control-panel.
11. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed.


Other remote firmware update methods

- [Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using FTP on a network connection](#)
- [Remote firmware update through a Windows network](#)
- [Remote firmware update for UNIX systems](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using the LPR command](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using HP Web Jetadmin](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using the HP Embedded Web Server](#)
- [Messages during the firmware update](#)

Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser


Complete the following steps to update the product firmware by using file transfer protocol (FTP) through a browser on Windows operating systems:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO-Jetdirect page. The EIO-Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 236](#).
2. Open a browser window.
3. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`, where <IPADDRESS> is the TCP/IP address of the product. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `ftp://192.168.0.90`.
4. Press **Enter**.
5. Locate the downloaded .RFU file for the product.
6. Drag and drop the .RFU file onto the **PORT** icon or onto any open space in the browser window.

 **NOTE:** If the **PORT** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in the Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view:

- a. Select **Tools**, select **Internet Options**, and then select the **Advanced** tab.
- b. Select the **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.
- c. Click **OK** to save the setting.

The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in [Messages during the firmware update on page 243](#) appear on the control-panel.


 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control-panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

7. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update by using FTP on a network connection


Complete the following steps to update the product firmware by using file transfer protocol (FTP) through a network connection on Windows operating systems:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the HP Embedded Jetdirect page, which is on the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 236](#).

 **NOTE:** Before connecting to the product, make sure that the product is in a **Ready** state. Also make sure that any error messages are cleared from the control-panel display.

2. Open a command prompt or an MS-DOS command prompt on the computer.
3. Type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`, where <IPADDRESS> is the TCP/IP address of the product. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `ftp://192.168.0.90`.

4. Press **Enter**.
5. When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
6. When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
7. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
8. Press **Enter**. The message **200 Type set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
9. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .RFU file that was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put C:\CLJ\xxxxfw.RFU`, and then press **Enter**.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\CLJ\xxxxfw.rfu"`.

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful

150 Opening BINARY mode data connection


226 Ready

226 Processing Job

226 Transfer complete

After these messages appear, a message containing transfer-speed information appears.

The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in [Messages during the firmware update on page 243](#) appear on the control-panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control-panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

10. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed.
11. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
12. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.
13. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update through a Windows network


If the product is shared on a Windows network, update the firmware by completing these instructions:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the HP Embedded Jetdirect page, which is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 236](#).

2. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type:


`copy /b <FILENAME> \\<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file, including the path, <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the product share name. For example:

```
copy /b c:\xxxxfw.rfu \\COMPUTERNAME\SHARENAME
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\xxxxfw.rfu" \\COMPUTERNAME\SHARENAME`

3. Press **Enter**.

The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in [Messages during the firmware update on page 243](#) appear on the control-panel. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control-panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.


Remote firmware update for UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that downloads the .TAR file to the product is acceptable, including the following:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the HP Embedded Jetdirect page, which is on the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 236](#).

2. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `cp /home/yourmachine/FILENAME /dev/parallel`, where `</home/yourmachine/FILENAME>` is the location of the .TAR file.

The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in [Messages during the firmware update on page 243](#) appear on the control-panel.


 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control-panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

3. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update by using the LPR command


Complete the following steps to update the firmware by using the LPR command:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the HP Embedded Jetdirect page, which is on the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 236](#).
2. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `lpr -P <IPADDRESS> -S <IPADDRESS> -o l <FILENAME> -OR- lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbins <FILENAME>`, where <IPADDRESS> can be either the TCP/IP address or the hostname of the product, and where <FILENAME> is the filename of the .RFU file.

 **NOTE:** The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

3. Press **Enter**.

The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in [Messages during the firmware update on page 243](#) appear on the control-panel.


 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control-panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.
5. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update by using HP Web Jetadmin

This procedure requires that you install HP Web Jetadmin Version 7.0 or later on the computer.

1. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
2. Open the **Device Management** folder in the drop-down list in the **Navigation** panel. Navigate to the **Device Lists** folder.
3. Expand the **Device Lists** folder and select **All Devices**. Locate the product in the list, and then click to select it.

 **NOTE:** If you need to update the firmware for multiple products, select all of them by pressing the **Ctrl** key as you click the name of each product.

4. Locate the drop-down box for **Device Tools** in the upper-right corner of the window. Select **Update Printer Firmware** from the action list.
5. If the name of the .RFU file is not listed in the **All Available Images** box, click **Browse** in the **Upload New Firmware Image** dialog box and navigate to the .RFU file that you downloaded from the Web at the start of this procedure. If the filename is listed, select it.
6. Click **Upload** to move the .RFU file from the hard drive to the HP Web Jetadmin server. After the upload is complete, the browser window refreshes.
7. Select the .RFU file from the **Printer Firmware Update** drop-down menu.


8. Click **Update Firmware**. HP Web Jetadmin sends the selected .RFU file to the product. The control-panel shows messages that indicate the progress of the update. At the end of the update process, the control-panel shows the **Ready** message.
9. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
10. Create a product group by following these steps:
 - a. Click the **Device Management** folder, and then click the **All Devices** option.
 - b. Shift-click to select products that are to be included in the group, and then click the **OK** button.
 - c. When prompted, type a name for the new product group, and then click the **OK** button.
11. To modify several products in a group, click the group name, and then click the **Open** button.
12. The **Device Group Tools** drop-down menu appears on the right side of the window. Scroll if necessary to view it.
13. In the **Device Group Tools** drop-down menu, select an action. Type the appropriate information. Click **Return to Device Group** when finished.
14. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update by using the HP Embedded Web Server

△ **CAUTION:** Use extreme caution when using this method. Only use this method as a last resort.

CAUTION: When trying to install or update firmware, do *not* use any buttons, browse to another site, close or touch the browser page in any way until the product has reset and displays **Ready**.

1. Print a menu map from the product control-panel. To print a menu map, see [Print the configuration page on page 236](#).
2. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS).
3. On the **Information** tab, click the **Print** menu item.
4. Click **Browse** and navigate to the .RFU file.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. After the product automatically reboots, you might need to reboot manually. Turn the product off, then on.
7. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

 **NOTE:** Print a menu map to see what user settings are configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed before the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware. To print a menu map from the product control-panel, see [Print the configuration page on page 236](#).

Messages during the firmware update


The following table lists the causes and results of possible interruptions to the firmware update.

Table 6-1 Troubleshooting a firmware update

Cause	Result
The job was cancelled from the control-panel.	No update has occurred.
A break in the I/O stream occurred during send (for example, the network cable was removed).	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during the RECEIVING UPGRADE process.	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during the PERFORMING UPGRADE process.	No update has occurred. Resend the update through a USB port.
A power cycle occurred during the INITIALIZING process.	The update has been completed.

Print jobs that are sent to the product while a firmware update is in process do not interrupt the update.


All HP LaserJet products leave the factory with the most recent firmware version installed. If a remote firmware update fails for the component, the .RFU file must be resent. The only component exception is the formatter. See the following table for information regarding a formatter update error.

 **NOTE:** Because a firmware update cannot be resent over a USB connection for Mac, contact an HP Customer Care Center if a remote update fails in a Macintosh operating system.

The first three messages in the following table appear during a normal firmware update process; others appear only if the update process does not succeed.

Table 6-2 Update messages

Product message	Explanation
RECEIVING UPGRADE	This message appears from the time the product recognizes the beginning of an .RFU update until the time the product has verified the validity and integrity of the .RFU update. NOTE: If the remote firmware update process is interrupted before the firmware is downloaded (while RECEIVING UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display), the firmware file must be sent again. No message appears on the product control-panel to indicate that the firmware update was interrupted.
PERFORMING UPGRADE	This message appears while the product is reprogramming the firmware. NOTE: If power is lost during the flash DIMM update (while PERFORMING UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display), the update is interrupted and the message RESEND UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display.
INITIALIZING	This message appears from the time the product has finished reprogramming the flash until the product reinitializes.
RESEND UPGRADE	This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update fails because the .RFU process is interrupted. It can also occur if firmware for accessories (such as the duplex unit) becomes corrupted. Perform another firmware update by any means that is supported by the product, regardless of the connection (network or USB).
.RFU LOAD ERROR	This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update of the formatter fails because the print-engine firmware is corrupted.
SEND .RFU UPGRADE	
ON USB PORT	If this message appears, the update must now be sent by a computer that is attached to the USB port of the product.

 **NOTE:** To verify that the firmware update succeeded, print a new configuration page from the control-panel and verify that the firmware date code on the configuration page has changed.

The following table lists possible reasons for the failure of a remote firmware update and the corrective action required for each situation.

Table 6-3 Troubleshooting a firmware update failure


Reason for firmware update failure	Corrective action
The .RFU file is corrupted.	The product recognizes that the file is corrupted and rejects the update. Download the .RFU file again and send the new file to the product.
The wrong product firmware is contained in the .RFU file.	The product recognizes the product mismatch and rejects the update. Download the correct .RFU file and send it to the product.
The update was interrupted.	For an error message of RESEND UPGRADE , resend the update by USB or Network connection. For an error message of RFU LOAD ERROR, SEND RFU UPGRADE ON USB PORT , resend the update by a computer attached to the USB port.
A flash hardware failure occurred.	Although it is extremely unlikely, the product might have a hardware failure. Call technical support to address the problem (see the flyer that came with the product for a local telephone support list). Or go to the following URL: www.hp.com/support/cljcm3530mfp

Print print-ready documents

Several methods are available for printing documents independently of the original software program that was used to create the document. Normally, the document is printed by opening the original application and printing it to a file, or by a distribution method such as Internet downloading. The following print-ready file formats can be sent directly to the product without first opening the original software program:

- HP LaserJet Printer Control Language (.PCL)
- Portable Document Format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)
- Print file (.PRN)

Use one of the following methods to send print-ready files to the product.

 **NOTE:** The examples in this section are for printing .PDF documents. However, any print-ready file type can be printed.


Print a print-ready file by using FTP through a browser

Complete the following steps to print print-ready files directly by using FTP through a browser:


 **NOTE:** The following instructions can be used on Windows or Macintosh operating systems.

1. Open a browser window.
2. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address of the product is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
ftp:// 192.168.0.90
```

 **NOTE:** The above TCP/IP address is the TCP/IP address from the embedded Jetdirect page of the configuration page report.

3. Locate the print-ready file for the product.
4. Drag and drop the print-ready file onto the **PORT** icon in the browser window.

 **NOTE:** If the **PORT** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in your Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view.


- a. Select **Tools**, select **Internet Options**, and then select the **Advanced** tab.
- b. Select **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.
- c. Click **OK** to save the setting.

Print a print-ready file by using FTP on a network connection

Complete the following steps to print a print-ready document by using file transfer protocol (FTP) through a network connection on Windows operating systems:


1. Open a command prompt or an MS-DOS command prompt on the computer.
2. Type `ftp <TCP/IP printer ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
ftp 192.168.0.90
```

 **NOTE:** The above TCP/IP address is the TCP/IP address from the embedded Jetdirect page of the configuration page report.

3. Press **Enter**.
4. When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
5. When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
6. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
7. Press **Enter**. The message **200 Types set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
8. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the print-ready file to be printed, including the path. For example, type the following:

```
put C:\LJ\GUIDE.pdf
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\LJ\GUIDE.pdf"`

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful

150 Opening BINARY mode data connection

226 Ready

226 Processing Job

9. Press **Enter**.
10. The print-ready file prints.
11. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
12. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.


Print-ready file printing in a Windows network

If the product is shared on a Windows network, complete the following steps:

1. From a command prompt, or in an MS-DOS window, type

`copy /b <FILENAME> \\<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the print-ready file (including the path), <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the product share name. For example:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\GUIDE.pdf \\<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>
```

 **NOTE:** The above TCP/IP address is the TCP/IP address from the embedded Jetdirect page of the configuration page report.

NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\GUIDE.pdf" \\<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`


2. Press **Enter**. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control-panel, and the job prints. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.

Print a print-ready file in UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the print-ready file to the product is acceptable, including the following:

At the command prompt, type `cp </home/yourmachine/FILENAME/ dev/parallel>`, where </home/yourmachine/FILENAME> is the location of the print-ready file.

Print a print-ready file by using the LPR command

 **NOTE:** This direct printing method is for use in Windows.

Complete the following steps to print a print-ready file by using the LPR command:

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type the following:

```
lpr -P IPADDRESS -S IPADDRESS -o l FILENAME lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbins  
<FILENAME>
```

where IPADDRESS can be either the TCP/IP address or the host name of the product, and where FILENAME is the file name of the print-ready file.

 **NOTE:** The above TCP/IP address is the TCP/IP address from the embedded Jetdirect page of the configuration page report.

NOTE: The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

2. The file prints, but no messages appear in the command prompt window.
3. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

Print a print-ready file through the HP Embedded Web Server

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS).
2. On the **Information** tab, click the **Print** menu item.
3. Click **Browse** and navigate to the file that you want to print.
4. Click **Apply**.

Media attributes

- [Media sources and destinations](#)
- [Media-source commands](#)
- [Printer driver supported media sizes](#)
- [Printer driver supported media types](#)
- [Custom paper sizes](#)
- [Media-type commands](#)
- [Paper and print media](#)

Media sources and destinations

The following table indicates the standard and optional media sources and destinations for the product.

Table 6-4 Media sources and destinations

Media sources	100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1)	standard
	250-sheet tray (Tray 2)	standard
	500-sheet tray (Tray 3)	optional
Media destinations	standard output bin	standard

Media-source commands

The media-source commands can be used when you want to control the media sources (i.e., paper trays) is desired when printing to the product via an application or operating system in which the HP-supplied Windows or Mac driver is not used.

The PCL 6 attribute for paper source is `ubyte # MediaSource` or `ubyte_array "string" MediaSource`. See the following table for values of #. For example, `"ubyte 4 MediaSource"` is the command for Tray 2.

The PCL 5 escape sequence for media source is `Esc&l#H` (the "l" is a lowercase "L" rather than the numeral "1"). See the following table for values of #. For example, `Esc&l1H` is the command for Tray 2.

Table 6-5 Media-source commands

Media source	PCL 6	PCL 5	PostScript
	<code>ubyte # MediaSource</code> or <code>ubyte_array</code> <code>"string"</code> <code>MediaSource¹</code>	<code>Esc&l#H</code>	<code>/MediaPosition # /</code> <code>ManualFeed true </code> <code>false or null</code>
Manual feed in tray 1	2	2	3 true
Tray 1 (100-sheet)	3	4	3 false
Tray 2 (250-sheet)	4	1	0 false

Table 6-5 Media-source commands (continued)

Media source	PCL 6	PCL 5	PostScript
	<code>ubyte # MediaSource OR ubyte_array "string" MediaSource¹</code>	<code>Esc&L#H</code>	<code>/MediaPosition # / ManualFeed true false or null</code>
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	5	5	1 false

¹ For the string value, you must use include the quotation marks around the variable. For example, `ubyte_array "TRAY2"`
MediaSource is the PCL 6 command for Tray 2.

Printer driver supported media sizes

The following table lists the features and attributes of various media listed under the **Paper Sizes:** drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The list order can vary, depending on the product and operating system. The list contains all of the following sizes and might contain sizes from other drivers.

Table 6-6 Supported media sizes and attributes

Paper sizes ¹	Width	Height	PCL 6 ²
Letter	216 mm (8.5 inches)	279 mm (11.0 inches)	LETTER
Legal	216 mm (8.5 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)	LEGAL
Executive	184 mm (7.25 inches)	267 mm (10.5 inches)	EXEC
Statement	140 mm (5.5 inches)	216 mm (8.5 inches)	STATEMENT
8K	270 mm (10.75 inches)	390 mm (15.5 inches)	ROC8K
16K	195 mm (7.68 inches)	270 mm (10.63 inches)	ROC16K
4x6	102 mm (4.0 inches)	152 mm (6.0 inches)	4x6
5x8	127 mm (5.0 inches)	203 mm (8.0 inches)	5x8
8.5x13	216 mm (8.5 inches)	330 mm (13 inches)	8.5 x 13
11x17	279 mm (11 inches)	432 mm (17 inches)	LEDGER
A3	297 mm (11.7 inches)	420 mm (16.5 inches)	A3

Table 6-6 Supported media sizes and attributes (continued)


Paper sizes ¹	Width	Height	PCL 6 ²
A4	210 mm (8.27 inches)	297 mm (11.69 inches)	A4
A5	148 mm (5.83 inches)	210 mm (8.27 inches)	A5
A6	105 mm (4.13 inches)	148 mm (5.83 inches)	A6
B4 (JIS)	257 mm (10.12 inches)	364 mm (14.33 inches)	JIS B4
B5 (JIS)	182 mm (7.17 inches)	257 mm (10.12 inches)	JIS B5
B6 (JIS)	128 mm (5.04 inches)	182 mm (7.17 inches)	JIS B6
Double Postcard Japan	148 mm (5.83 inches)	200 mm (7.87 inches)	JPOSTD
Envelope #9	98 mm (3.88 inches)	225 mm (8.88 inches)	
Envelope #10	105 mm (4.13 inches)	241 mm (9.5 inches)	COM10
Envelope Monarch	98 mm (3.88 inches)	191 mm (7.5 inches)	MONARCH
Envelope B5	176 mm (6.93 inches)	250 mm (9.84 inches)	B5 ENV
Envelope C5	162 mm (6.38 inches)	229 mm (9.02 inches)	C5
Envelope C6	114 mm (4.49 inches)	162 mm (6.38 inches)	C6
Envelope DL	110 mm (4.33 inches)	220 mm (8.66 inches)	DL
Custom	Minimum: 98.4 mm (3.87 inches) Maximum: 215.9 mm	Minimum: 148 mm (5.83 inches) Maximum: 355.6 mm (14 inches)	Custom

Table 6-6 Supported media sizes and attributes (continued)

Paper sizes ¹	Width	Height	PCL 6 ²
	(8.5 inches)		

¹ For all paper sizes, the PCL 6 margins are 100 dots, at 600 dots per inch.

² The PCL 6 command for paper size is `ubyte_array "String" MediaSize`. The values in this column are the values for "String."

 **NOTE:** For scaling purposes, 8k, 11x17, A3, and B4 sized paper are supported in the printer-driver; however, they are not supported on the printer.

Printer driver supported media types

The following table shows the media types that the printer driver supports.

Table 6-7 Supported input media types

Media types (command string)	Tray 1	Tray 2	Tray 3	Duplex	Manual duplex
Unspecified	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Plain	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Light (60 - 74 g/m ²)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Intermediate (85 - 95 g/m ²)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Bond	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Recycled	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Mid-weight (96 - 110 g/m ²)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Heavy (111 - 130 g/m ²)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Heavy glossy (111 - 130 g/m ²)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Extra heavy (131 - 175 g/m ²)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Extra heavy glossy (131 - 175 g/m ²)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Cardstock (176 - 220 g/m ²)	Y	N	N	N	Y
Card glossy (176 - 220 g/m ²)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Color laser transparency	Y	Y	Y	N	N
Labels	Y	N	N	N	N
Letterhead	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Envelope	Y	N	N	N	N
Preprinted	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Table 6-7 Supported input media types (continued)

Media types (command string)	Tray 1	Tray 2	Tray 3	Duplex	Manual duplex
Prepunched	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Colored	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Rough	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
HP tough paper	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
User types 1 - 5	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

¹ Use *only* HP LaserJet glossy media. Using HP Inkjet glossy media can cause permanent damage to the product.

Custom paper sizes

The following table shows custom paper sizes that are available for the product.

Table 6-8 PCL 6 custom media sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose)	Width	98.4 mm (3.87 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)
Tray 2 (250-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.27 inches)	297.0 mm (11.69 inches)
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	152.4 mm (6.00 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)
Duplexer	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.27 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)

Media-type commands

The PCL 5 escape sequence for paper type is "Esc&n#Wdpapertype", where "n#" is the number of characters in the paper type plus 1. For example, in the sequence "Esc&n6WdPlain", "Plain" has 5 letters plus 1, for a total of 6.

Table 6-9 Media-type commands

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	6	Wd	Plain
Esc&	11	Wd	Preprinted
Esc&	11	Wd	Letterhead
Esc&	13	Wd	Transparency ¹
Esc&	11	Wd	Prepunched
Esc&	7	Wd	Labels
Esc&	5	Wd	Bond

Table 6-9 Media-type commands (continued)

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	9	Wd	Recycled
Esc&	6	Wd	Color
Esc&	6	Wd	Light
Esc&	13	Wd	Intermediate
Esc&	6	Wd	Heavy
Esc&	12	Wd	Extra Heavy
Esc&	11	Wd	Cardstock ²
Esc&	6	Wd	Rough
Esc&	7	Wd	Gloss
Esc&	13	Wd	Heavy Gloss
Esc&	19	Wd	Extra Heavy Gloss
Esc&	12	Wd	Tough
Esc&	9	Wd	Envelope

¹ You must spell out the word "Transparency" in the string, although it is abbreviated as TRNSPRNCY on the control-panel.

² The correct command for cardstock is "Esc&n11WdCard Stock", with a space between the "d" and the "S", and with an uppercase "S".

Paper and print media

- [Understand paper and print media use](#)
- [Supported paper and print media sizes](#)
- [Supported paper and print media types](#)

Understand paper and print media use

This product supports a variety of paper and other print media in accordance with the guidelines in this user guide. Paper or print media that does not meet these guidelines might cause the following problems:

- Poor print quality
- Increased jams
- Premature wear on the product, requiring repair

For best results, use only HP-brand paper and print media designed for laserjets or multiuse. Do not use paper or print media made for inkjet printers. Hewlett-Packard Company cannot recommend the use of other brands of media because HP cannot control their quality.

It is possible for paper to meet all of the guidelines in this user guide and still not produce satisfactory results. This might be the result of improper handling, unacceptable temperature and/or humidity levels, or other variables over which Hewlett-Packard has no control.

△ **CAUTION:** Using paper or print media that does not meet Hewlett-Packard's specifications might cause problems for the product, requiring repair. This repair is not covered by the Hewlett-Packard warranty or service agreements.

Supported paper and print media sizes


 **NOTE:** To obtain best print results, select the appropriate paper size and type in your print driver before printing.

Table 6-10 Supported paper and print media sizes

Size	Dimensions	Feed direction (P = portrait feed [short-edge feed or rotated size]; L = landscape feed [long-edge feed])	Tray 1	Tray 2	Tray 3	Duplexer	Manual duplex
Letter	216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in)	P or L	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Legal	216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	P	Y	N	Y	Y	Y
Executive	184 x 267 mm (7.25 x 10.50 in)	P	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Statement	139.7 x 215.9 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in)	P or L	Y	N	N	N	Y
8.5 x 13	216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in)		Y	N	Y	Y	Y
4 x 6	102 x 152 mm (4 x 6 in)		Y	N	N	N	Y
5 x 8	127 x 203 mm (5 x 8 in)		Y	N	N	N	Y
A4	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in)	P	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in)	P or L	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
A6	105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in)	P or L	Y	N	N	N	Y
B5 (JIS)	182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.12 in)	P	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
B6 (JIS)	128 x 182 mm (5.04 x 7.17 in)	P or L	Y	N	N	N	Y
16k	195 x 270 mm (7.68 x 10.63 in)	P	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Table 6-11 Supported envelopes and postcards

Size	Dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2	Tray 3	Duplexer	Manual duplex
Double Post Card	148 x 200 mm (5.83 x 7.87 in)	Y	N	N	N	Y
Envelope #9	98 x 225 mm (3.88 x 8.88 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope #10	105 x 241 mm (4.13 x 9.50 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope Monarch	98 x 191 mm (3.9 x 7.5 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope B5	176 x 250 mm (6.7 x 9.8 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope C5	162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.02 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope C6	162 x 114 mm (6.4 x 4.5 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope DL	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in)	Y	N	N	N	N


¹ Weights greater than 160 g/m² may not perform well, but will not harm the product.

Supported paper and print media types

Table 6-12 Supported paper and print media types

Tray	Stack Height	Sheets ¹	Orientation
1	10 mm (0.4 in)	100	Face down, top edge leading.
2	25 mm (0.98 in)	250	Face up, top edge at right side of tray.
3	56 mm (2.2 in)	500	Face up, top edge at right side of tray.

¹ Using 75 g/m² (20 lb) bond paper.

 **NOTE:** HP Color Laser Presentation Paper, Glossy (Q2546A) is not supported with this product. Using this type of paper can cause a fuser jam that might require the replacement of the fuser. Two recommended alternatives are HP Color LaserJet Presentation Paper, Soft Gloss (Q6541A), and HP Color LaserJet Brochure Paper, Glossy (Q6611A, Q6610A).

NOTE: For a complete list of specific HP-brand paper that this product supports, go to www.hp.com/sbso/product/supplies.

HP Device Manager for Linux

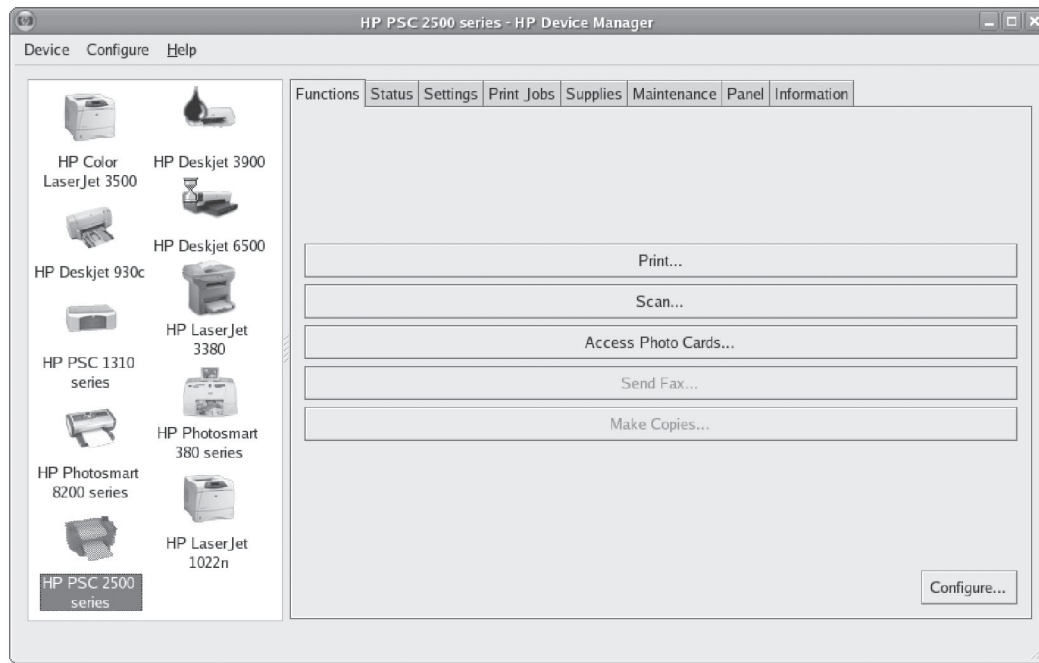
Use the HP Device Manager to gain access to product settings, status, and settings. To download Linux drivers, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting

The figures are provided as examples only and might differ depending on the product.

The following figure shows the HP Device Manager **Functions** tab.

Figure 6-4 HP Device Manager – Functions tab

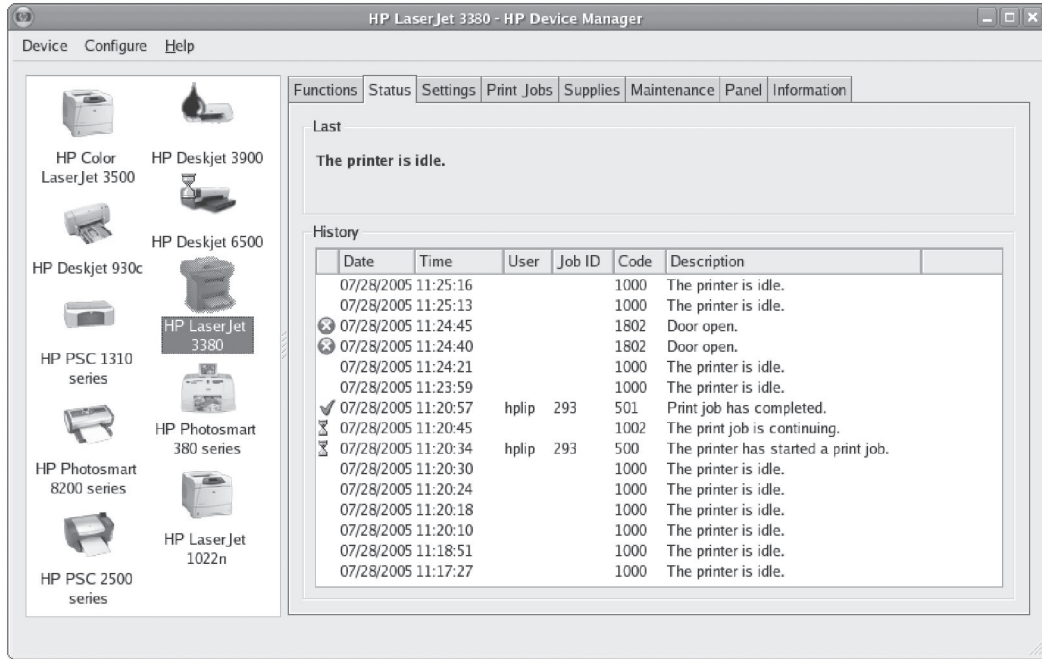


NOTE: The figure is provided as an example only.

Use the **Status** tab to view product status and job history.

The following figure shows the HP Device Manager **Status** tab:

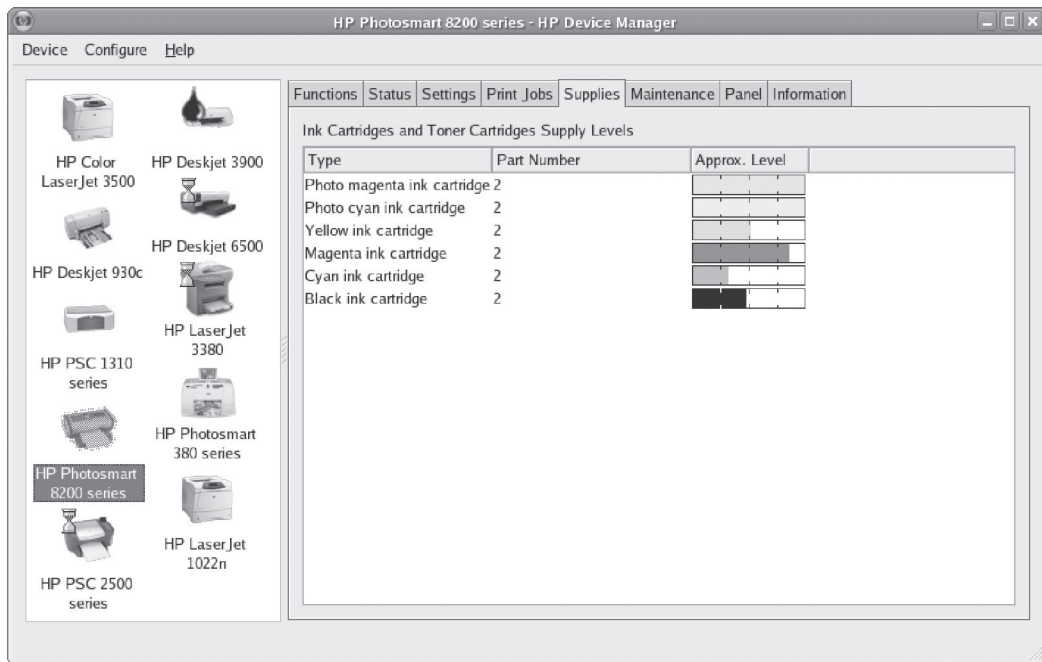
Figure 6-5 HP Device Manager – Status tab



Use the **Supplies** tab to the status of product consumables that are available.

The following figure shows the HP Device Manager **Supplies** tab.

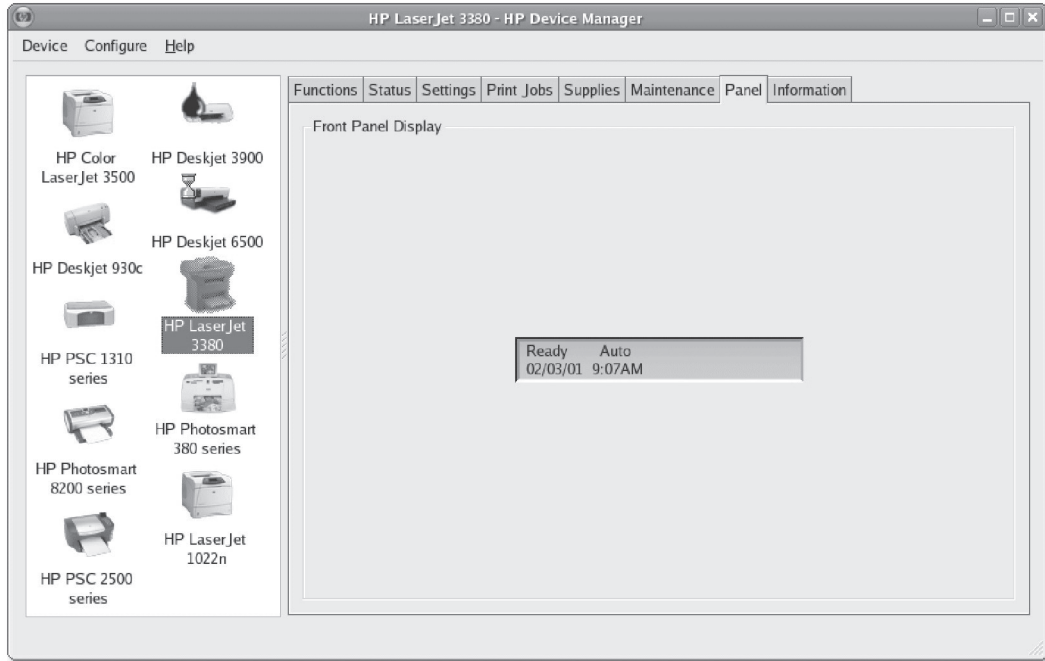
Figure 6-6 HP Device Manager – Supplies tab



Use the **Panel** tab to view the message that currently appears on the product control-panel.

The following figure shows the HP Device Manager **Panel** tab.

Figure 6-7 HP Device Manager – Panel tab



Glossary

ADF Automatic document feeder. The ADF is used to automatically feed originals into the product for copying, scanning, or faxing.

browser Short for Web browser, a software program that is used to locate and open Web pages.

collate The process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collate is selected, the product prints an entire set before printing additional copies. Otherwise, the product prints the specified number of copies of one page before printing the subsequent pages.

comma (,) A comma in a fax dial sequence indicates that the product will pause at that point in the dialing sequence.

contrast The difference between the dark and light areas of an image. The lower the number value, the more closely the shades resemble each other. The higher the number, the more the shades appear separate from each other.

dedicated line A single telephone line that is used exclusively for either voice calls or fax calls.

distinctive ring A service offered by some telephone companies in some countries/regions that allows two or three phone numbers to be set up on the same telephone line. Each phone number has a different ring pattern, and the fax machine can be configured to recognize the distinctive ring of the fax number.

dots per inch (dpi) A measurement of resolution that is used for printing. Generally, more dots per inch result in a higher resolution, more visible detail in the image, and a larger file size.

DSL Digital subscriber line, a technology that enables a high-speed, direct connection to the Internet through telephone lines.

e-mail (electronic mail) An abbreviation for electronic mail. Software that can be used to electronically transmit items over a communications network.

fax An abbreviation of facsimile. The electronic encoding of a printed page and the transmission of the electronic page over a telephone line. The product software can send items to electronic fax programs, which require a modem and fax software.

fax functions Fax-related tasks that are done from the control panel or software that affect only the current job, or are done only once before returning to the Ready state, such as clearing memory. These functions are in their own section in the control-panel menu.

fax settings Fax-related items that, when set or changed, continue to use the choice made until changed again. An example would be the number of times set for the product to redial a busy number. These settings are in their own section of the control panel menu.

file format The way the contents of a file are structured by a program or group of programs.

grayscale Shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of an image when color images are converted to grayscale; colors are represented by various shades of gray.

halftone An image type that simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

HP Director A software screen that is used when working with documents. When the document is loaded into the automatic document feeder (ADF) and the computer is connected directly to the product, the HP Director appears on the computer screen to initiate faxing, copying, or scanning.

HP Easy Printer Care HP Easy Printer Care is a program that provides access to the product management and troubleshooting tools, embedded Web server, and product documentation. HP Easy Printer Care does not support Macintosh operating systems.

ISDN Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) is a suite of internationally adopted standards for end-to-end digital communication over the public telephone network.

link A connection to a program or device that can be used to send information from the product software to other programs, such as e-mail, electronic fax, and OCR links.

optical character recognition (OCR) software OCR software converts an electronic image of text, such as a scanned document, into a form that word processor, spreadsheet, and database programs can use.

pixels per inch (ppi) A measurement of resolution that is used for scanning. Generally, more pixels per inch result in a higher resolution, more visible detail in the image, and a larger file size.

printer driver A printer driver is a program that software programs use to gain access to a product's features. A printer driver translates a software program's formatting commands (such as page breaks and font selection) into a printer language (such as PostScript or PCL), and then sends the print file to the product.

private branch exchange (PBX) A small telephone switching system that typically is used by large businesses or universities to connect all telephone extensions within the organization. A PBX also connects to the public switched telephone network (PSTN) and may be either manual or dial, depending on the method used by extensions to place incoming or outgoing calls. Normally, the equipment is owned by the customer rather than leased from the telephone company.

public switched telephone network (PSTN) The worldwide dial-up telephone network or a portion of that network. Users are assigned unique phone numbers, which allow them to connect to the PSTN through local telephone exchange companies. Often, this phrase is used when referring to data or other non-telephone services carried over a path initially established using normal telephone signaling and ordinary switched long-distance telephone circuits.

Readiris An optical character recognition (OCR) program that was developed by I.R.I.S. and that is included with the product software.

resolution The sharpness of an image, measured in dots per inch (dpi). The higher the dpi, the greater the resolution.

shared line A single telephone line that is used for both voice and fax calls.

surge protector A device that protects a power supply and communications lines from electrical surges.

TWAIN An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN-compliant scanner with a TWAIN-compliant program, a scan can be initiated from within the program.

URL Uniform resource locator, the global address of documents and resources on the Internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use, the second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

USB Universal serial bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

watermarks A watermark adds background text to a document that is being printed. For example, "Confidential" can be printed in the background text of a document to indicate that the document is confidential. A selection can be made from a set of predefined watermarks, and the font, size, angle, and style can be changed. The product can place the watermark on the first page only or all pages.

WIA Windows Imaging Architecture (WIA) is an imaging architecture that is available in Windows Me and Windows XP. A scan can be initiated from within these operating systems by using a WIA-compliant scanner.

Index

Symbols/Numerics

500-sheet paper and heavy media tray
models including 2

A

accessibility, documentation 31
accessories, automatic configuration 46
Acrobat Reader
viewing documentation 23
ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act) compliance 31
Add Printer Wizard
existing port for a direct connection, using 85
general instructions 85
print server connection 94
TCP/IP port for direction connection, creating 91
ADF
capacity 3
Adobe Acrobat Reader
viewing documentation 23
alerts, e-mail
HP Printer Utility 13
Macintosh 189, 223
Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliance 31
autoconfiguration
driver 46
Enterprise AutoConfiguration, about 47
autorun CD-ROM, Windows 41, 68

B

Basic Installation
choosing 41

bidirectional communication
about 46
Enterprise
AutoConfiguration 47
bins
capacity 4
included 250
locating 7
Bonjour Settings
HP Printer Utility 12, 189, 225
booklet printing
Booklet Layout settings 162
both sides, printing on. *See* duplexing

C

capacity
ADF 3
output bin 4
cardstock, paper type
commands 255
cartridges, print
Macintosh status 232
CD
Admin CD, about 24
Administrator CD 16
Administrator
Documentation 71
Administrator Software 70
Install 69
install Windows printing-system software from 68
languages, Admin CD 17
Next Steps 73
Support 72
User CD 16
user, about 29
Windows installation from 24

CD-ROM
directory structure,
Macintosh 190
installer, Windows printing-system software 40
installing Macintosh printing-system software 194
languages, Macintosh 191
CHM files, viewing 23
Citrix Terminal Server support 13
color
change default settings, manually 172
Color Options menu 232
Color Options settings 171
Color tab, Printing Preferences 171
Color Themes settings 174
Custom Profile setting 175
Default (sRGB) setting 174
Edge Control settings 173
fine-tune default settings 172
Halftone setting 174
ICC profiles 53
Image Color Management (ICM) 135
Neutral Gray settings 174
Photo (Adobe RGB 1998) setting 175
Photo (sRGB) setting 175
restrict use 53
commands, paper
size 253
source 250
type 254
common installer, features 44
components, software
Macintosh 14, 186
Windows 14

- configuration page
 - Macintosh 12
 - print for firmware current level 236
- configurations, models 2
- connectivity
 - bidirectional communication support 46
 - features 4
- constraint messages
 - print drivers 133
- continuous export 51
- control panel
 - locating 7
 - poster 32
 - settings 38, 187
- copy
 - features 4
 - Quick Copy setting 168
 - speed specifications 3
- cover pages 229
- covers, locating 7
- Custom Installation
 - choosing 41
- custom paper sizes
 - settings, Macintosh 229
 - supported 254
- customer support
 - HP Printer Utility pages 12

D

- deleting job-storage jobs 222
- density
 - settings 12
- device status
 - Macintosh Services tab 232
- diagnostics
 - troubleshoot 176
- dialog boxes, printing-system software installation
 - Mac OS X 195
- direct printing
 - FTP, Windows 247
 - LPR 248
 - networks, Windows 248
 - UNIX 248
 - Windows 246
 - See *also* print-ready files

- directory structure
 - Admin CD 16
 - User CD 16
- directory structure, CD-ROM
 - Macintosh 190
- disabling
 - driver features 49
- disk space requirements
 - Macintosh 186
 - Windows 36
- documentation
 - fax guides 32
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 27
 - HP Embedded Web Server User Guide 26
 - HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 27
 - install notes 25
 - installing (Windows) 123
 - User Guide 31
 - viewing 23, 42
- double-sided printing. See duplexing
- downloading
 - printing-system software 15
- dpi, settings 12
- drivers. See printer drivers
- duplexing
 - Macintosh settings 12, 189
 - manual procedure 231
 - supported 253
- duty cycle 3

E

- e-mail alerts, Macintosh 13, 189, 223
- Embedded Web Server. See HP EWS
- Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC)
 - about 47
- envelopes, paper type
 - commands 255
- error messages
 - e-mail alerts 13, 189
- escape sequences
 - paper source 250
 - paper type 254
- Ethernet cards 4

- EWS. See HP EWS
- exporting driver parameters 51

F

- fax driver. See HP Send Fax Driver
- features 2, 3
- File Upload, Macintosh 12, 189, 219
- firmware
 - about updating remotely 234
 - determine current level 236
 - FTP updates, Windows 239
 - HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility 236
 - LPR command updates 242
 - Macintosh update 12, 189
 - messages during update 243
 - troubleshooting updates 243
 - UNIX updates 241
 - updates by using HP EWS 243
 - verifying installation 245
 - Windows network updates 241
 - See *also* remote firmware updates (RFUs)
- first page
 - use different paper 229
- fonts
 - included 3
 - install/remove external fonts 179
 - Send True Type as Bitmap, print drivers 137
 - True Type, print drivers 136
 - Upload Macintosh 12, 189
 - Windows 59, 61
- FTP
 - direct printing, Windows 246, 247
 - Windows firmware updates 239
- Full Installation
 - choosing 41

G

- glossary of terms 261

H

- Help
 - print drivers 133

- HP Device Manager for Linux 258
 - HP Driver Deployment Utility 49
 - HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 52
 - HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU) 77
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration 48
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 27
 - HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility 236
 - HP Easy Printer Care
 - description 11
 - downloading 11
 - sending a fax 112
 - supported browsers 11
 - supported operating systems 11
 - HP Embedded Web Server. *See* HP EWS
 - HP EWS
 - about 10, 54
 - documentation 26
 - HP Printer Utility, gain access from 226
 - print print-ready files 249
 - Windows firmware updates 243
 - HP Jetdirect print server
 - Administrator's Guide 27
 - models including 2
 - HP OpenVMS 13
 - HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver
 - about 9
 - See also* printer drivers
 - HP PCL 6 Print Driver
 - custom paper sizes 254
 - features 129
 - margins 253
 - paper size command 253
 - paper sizes supported 251
 - settings 129
 - See also* printer drivers
 - HP PostScript Universal Print Driver
 - about 9
 - See also* printer drivers
 - HP Printer Utility, Macintosh
 - about 12, 188, 210
 - accessing 210
 - Bonjour Settings 225
 - Configuration Settings list 12
 - Device Information 216
 - E-mail Alerts 223
 - Embedded Web Server
 - access 226
 - features 189
 - File Upload 219
 - HP Support 216
 - Network Settings 223
 - open 12, 188
 - Supplies Status 213
 - Trays Configuration 221
 - HP Send Fax Driver
 - install with the Add Printer Wizard 106
 - install with the HP Driver Installation Utility 102
 - installation 101
 - HP Web Jetadmin
 - about 10, 55
 - Driver Preconfiguration Plugin 48
 - firmware updates 242
 - HP-UX software 13
 - HTML files, viewing 23
- I**
- ICM. *See* Image Color Management
 - Image Color Management (ICM)
 - color graphics printing 135
 - Incompatible Print Settings
 - messages. *See* constraint messages
 - input trays. *See* trays
 - Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW) 14
 - install notes 25
 - installation
 - Add Printer 85
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X 195
 - fax driver 101
 - HP Driver Installation Utility 77
 - instruction details (Windows) 77
 - Mac OS X V10.3 setup 206
 - Mac OS X V10.4 201
 - Macintosh printing-system software 194
 - options 67
 - Point and Print 100
 - system requirements for Macintosh 186
 - system requirements for Windows 36, 66
 - troubleshooting
 - Macintosh 208
 - Windows CD-ROM 24
 - Windows for direct connection 75
 - Windows printing-system software 66
 - Windows software on network 76
 - installers
 - common, features 44
 - Windows 40, 68
 - Instant Support 216
 - interface ports
 - included 4
 - International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles 53
- J**
- Jetadmin. *See* HP Web Jetadmin
 - Jetdirect print server
 - models including 2
 - See also* HP Jetdirect print server
 - Job Aids 6
 - job storage
 - deleting jobs 222
 - Macintosh 221
 - Macintosh settings 231
 - releasing jobs 222
 - jobs
 - Macintosh settings 12, 189
- L**
- LAN-connector 4
 - languages
 - Admin CD 17
 - Macintosh CD-ROMs 191
 - printer 3
 - Linux
 - HP Device Manager 258
 - software 13

- localized CD-ROMs
 - Macintosh 191
- Lock Resources, Macintosh 12, 189
- lockable features, drivers 49
- LPR commands
 - firmware updates 242
 - printing PDF files 248
- M**
- Macintosh driver settings
 - custom-size paper 229
 - Job Storage 231
 - Services tab 232
 - watermarks 230
- Macintosh operating systems
 - Bonjour Settings 225
 - Device Information 216
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X printing-system software
 - installation 195
 - direct printing 246
 - directory structure, CD-ROM 190
 - driver settings 188, 229
 - e-mail alerts 223
 - File Upload command 219
 - hardware requirements 186
 - HP Printer Utility 12, 188, 210
 - installing printing-system software 194
 - localized software CDs 191
 - network settings 223
 - removing software 209
 - resize documents 229
 - setting up with Mac OS X V10.3 206
 - setting up with Mac OS X V10.4 201
 - software 12, 188
 - software components 186
 - stored jobs 221
 - supplies status 213
 - support 8
 - supported versions 11, 186
 - tray configuration 221
 - troubleshooting setup 208
- manuals. See documentation
- margins
 - HP PCL 6 Print Driver 253
- media
 - custom-size, Macintosh settings 229
 - first page 229
 - pages per sheet 230
 - supported sizes 256
 - See also paper
- memory
 - features 3
 - included 2, 12, 188
 - installation requirements for Windows operating systems 36
 - Macintosh requirements 186
- menu map
 - print for firmware update 236
- messages
 - constraint, print drivers 133
 - e-mail alerts 13, 189
- Microsoft Windows. See Windows operating systems
- Microsoft Windows Cluster Server 8
 - support 13
- models 2
- monthly duty cycle 3
- mopy 182
- multiple pages per sheet 230
- multiple-original print. See mopy
- N**
- n-up printing 230
- networks
 - connectivity features 4
 - direct printing 248
 - firmware updates 241
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration 48
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 27
 - HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 27
 - Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW) 14
 - Macintosh settings 12, 189, 223
 - peer-to-peer networking, Windows sharing 98
- Point and Print
 - installation 100
 - print servers included 2
- O**
- on/off switch, locating 7
- operating systems
 - availability of software components 14
 - supported 8, 9, 36, 37
 - supported for Macintosh 11
 - supported Macintosh versions 186
- ordering supplies 44, 72
- output bin
 - capacity 4
 - included 250
 - locating 7
- P**
- pages per minute 3
- pages per sheet 230
- paper
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode 137
 - custom sizes 254
 - custom-size, Macintosh settings 229
 - duplex binding settings, print drivers 162
 - first page 229
 - margins 253
 - orientation 165
 - pages per sheet 230
 - settings, print drivers 144
 - size commands 253
 - sizes supported 251
 - source commands 250
 - sources and destinations 250
 - supported sizes 256
 - type commands 254
 - types supported 253, 257
- PDF files
 - LPR commands, printing 248
 - Macintosh, File Upload command 219
 - viewing 23
- peer-to-peer networking
 - about (Windows) 98
 - client with Windows XP 99

- host with Windows 2000 99
- host with Windows XP 99
- perr-to-peer networking
 - client with Windows 2000 99
- PIN
 - Personal Job setting 168
 - PIN to print setting 169
- Point and Print installation, Windows printing-system software 100
- ports
 - included 4
- PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files
 - included 12, 188
 - troubleshooting 209
- power switch, locating 7
- PPDs. *See* PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files
- preconfiguration, driver 27, 48
- presets (Macintosh) 229
- print cartridges
 - Macintosh status 232
- print job
 - hard disk, job storage 182
 - Job Name settings 170
 - job separator 182
 - job storage 182
 - Personal Job setting 168
 - Proof and Hold setting 167
 - Quick Copy setting 168
 - Stored Job setting 168
 - user name 170
- print media
 - supported sizes 256
- print-ready files
 - print by using FTP 246, 247
 - print by using the LPR
 - command 248
 - print in a Windows network 248
 - print in UNIX systems 248
 - print through HP EWS 249
 - See also* direct printing
- printer driver
 - deployment 49
- printer drivers
 - About tab contents 184
 - accessory configuration 46
 - Add Printer installation 85
 - Advanced Printing Features settings, print drivers 136
 - Advanced tab content 134
 - Advanced tab contents 134
 - Allow Manual Duplexing setting, Device Settings tab 182
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode, Advanced tab 137
 - Automatic Configuration setting, Device Settings tab 181
 - Automatic settings, Color tab 172
 - Booklet Layout settings, Finishing tab 162
 - change Macintosh settings 188
 - check for most current in use 52
 - collation settings 183
 - Color Options settings, Color tab 171
 - Color tab contents 171
 - Color Themes settings, Color tab 174
 - continuous export feature 51
 - Copy Count settings, Advanced tab 134
 - custom paper sizes 254
 - device services, Services tab 177
 - Device Settings tab content 178
 - Document Options setting, Advanced tab 136
 - Document Options settings, Finishing tab 159
 - document preview image 151, 154, 164, 175
 - duplex unit, Device Settings tab 182
 - Effects tab content 152
 - Enterprise AutoConfiguration 47
 - Factory Defaults setting, Printing Shortcuts tab 141
 - Finishing tab contents 159
 - Flip Pages Up setting, Finishing tab 162
 - Font Substitution Table settings, Device Settings tab 179
 - Form to Tray Assignment setting, Device Settings tab 178
 - gain access to settings 131
 - General Everyday Printing setting, Printing Shortcuts tab 139
 - General settings, Color tab 173
 - Graphic setting, Advanced tab 135
 - Halftone setting, Color tab 174
 - Help system 133
 - ICM options, Advanced tab 135
 - incompatible print settings messages 133
 - install, license agreement 79, 102
 - installable options, Device Settings tab 181
 - Internet Services options, Services tab 176
 - Job name settings, Job Storage tab 170
 - job notification options, Job Storage tab 169
 - Job Separator setting, Device Settings tab 182
 - Job Storage Mode settings, Job Storage tab 167
 - job storage settings, Job Storage tab 170
 - Job Storage tab contents 166
 - Layout Options setting, Advanced tab 137
 - lockable features 49
 - Macintosh 186
 - Macintosh settings 187, 229
 - Manual settings, Color tab 172
 - mopier mode, Device Settings tab 182
 - Neutral Grays settings, Color tab 174
 - Orientation settings, Finishing tab 165
 - Page Order settings, Finishing tab 164

- Pages per Sheet setting, Finishing tab 163
- Paper Options settings, Paper/Quality tab 144
- paper source commands 250
- Paper source setting, Paper/Quality tab 146
- paper type commands 254
- Paper type setting, Paper/Quality tab 147
- Paper/Output settings, Advanced tab 134
- Paper/Quality tab contents 143
- Personal Job setting, Job Storage tab 168
- PIN to print setting, Job Storage tab 169
- Point and Print installation 100
- preconfiguration 48
- preconfiguration support 27
- presets (Macintosh) 229
- Print All Text as Black setting, Advanced tab 137
- Print on Both Sides settings, Finishing tab 160
- Print Optimizations setting, Advanced tab 136
- Print Quality settings, Paper/Quality tab 151
- Printer Features setting, Advanced tab 137
- printer hard disk, Device Settings tab 182
- Printing Preferences tab, driver access 131
- Printing Shortcuts tab contents 138
- Proof and Hold setting, Job Storage tab 167
- Properties tab, driver access 132
- Quick Copy setting, Job Storage tab 168
- Raster Compression feature, Advanced tab 137
- Resizing Options settings, Effects tab 152

- Send True Type as Bitmap setting, Advanced tab 137
- Services tab content 176
- settings 38
- settings for Windows 39
- status message, Job Storage tab 167
- Stored Job setting, Job Storage tab 168
- supported for Windows 9, 37
- tray 3, Device Settings tab 182
- True Type font settings, Advanced tab 136
- uninstall, Add/Remove Programs 125
- uninstall, Server Properties 128
- universal 9
- Update Now 47
- Update Now, bidirectional communication 181
- user name settings, Job Storage tab 170
- version numbers for Windows 45
- Watermarks settings, Effects tab 154
- What's this? Help 133
- See also HP PostScript Universal Print Driver; HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver; HP PCL 6 Print Driver; HP Send Fax Driver
- printer languages 3
- printing
 - print-ready files 246
 - speed specifications 3
 - stored jobs 222
 - User Guide 31
- Printing Preferences driver tabs 131
- features 49
- printing-system software, install license agreement 79, 102
- printing-system software, uninstall
 - Add/Remove Programs 125
 - Server Properties 128
- priority, settings 38, 187
- processor speed 3

- Properties driver tabs gain access to 132
- PS emulation fonts 61

Q

- Quick Reference Job Aids 6

R

- regional versions, CD-ROMs Macintosh 191
- releasing job-storage jobs 222
- remote firmware updates (RFUs)
 - about 234
 - determine current firmware level 236
 - FTP, Windows 239
 - HP EWS 243
 - HP Web Jetadmin 242
 - LPR commands 242
 - menu map, print 236
 - messages 243
 - troubleshooting 243
 - UNIX 241
 - verifying installation 245
 - Windows network 241
- removing Macintosh software 209
- resize documents Macintosh 229
- resolution
 - settings 12
 - specifications 3
- Resolution Enhancement technology (REt) 12
- REt (Resolution Enhancement technology) 12

S

- SAP printing 13
- scale documents Macintosh 229
- Scan Setup Wizard
 - about 56
 - create network folder 113
- scanning speed specifications 3
- screen-readable documentation 31
- security features 4
- Services tab Macintosh 232

- settings
 - continuous export 51
 - driver presets
 - (Macintosh) 229
 - drivers, Macintosh 188
 - for Windows drivers 39
 - locking 49
 - priority 38, 187
 - sizes, paper
 - commands 253
 - custom 254
 - margins 253
 - supported 251
 - software
 - availability of components 14
 - HP Easy Printer Care 11
 - HP Embedded Web
 - Server 10, 54
 - HP Printer Utility 12, 188
 - HP Web Jetadmin 10, 55
 - license agreement 79, 102
 - Macintosh 12, 188
 - non-Windows and non-Macintosh operating systems 13
 - option install (Windows) 123
 - settings 38, 187
 - supported operating systems 9, 36, 186
 - uninstall, component list 124
 - uninstalling 124
 - uninstalling Macintosh 209
 - Windows 9, 36
 - Solaris software 13
 - sources, paper. *See* trays
 - specifications
 - features 3
 - speed specifications 3
 - standard output bin
 - capacity 4
 - locating 7
 - status
 - HP Printer Utility, Macintosh 12, 189
 - Macintosh services tab 232
 - supplies, Macintosh 213
 - storage, job
 - deleting jobs 222
 - Macintosh 221
 - Macintosh settings 12, 189, 231
 - releasing jobs 222
 - supplies
 - Macintosh status 213
 - ordering 44, 72
 - status, viewing with HP Printer Utility 12, 189
 - support
 - HP Printer Utility pages 12
 - Online Support screen 34
 - Support tab, HP Printer Utility 216
 - supported
 - media sizes 256
 - operating systems 8
 - utilities for Macintosh 13
 - system requirements
 - Windows 36
- T**
- TCP/IP port creation 91
 - terminology 261
 - toner
 - density setting 12
 - transparencies, paper type
 - commands 255
 - trays
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode 137
 - autoconfiguration 46
 - custom paper sizes 254
 - double-sided printing 231
 - duplex unit 182
 - included 2, 250
 - Macintosh configuration 221
 - Macintosh settings 12, 189
 - media supported 253
 - paper source commands 250
 - paper type commands 254
 - specify paper size 178
 - tray 3 182
 - troubleshooting
 - diagnostics 176
 - firmware upgrades 243
 - HP driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 52
 - Macintosh setup 208
 - Tru64 UNIX printing 13
 - TrueType fonts included 3
 - two-sided printing. *See* duplexing
 - typefaces
 - included 3
 - types, paper
 - supported 253
- U**
- uninstall
 - component list 124
 - Macintosh software 209
 - Windows software 124
 - universal print drivers 9
 - See also* HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver; HP PostScript Universal Print Driver
 - UNIX operating systems
 - direct printing 248
 - print-ready printing 248
 - remote firmware update 241
 - software 13
 - Update Now feature 47
 - updating firmware remotely. *See* remote firmware updates (RFUs)
 - User Guide 31
- V**
- version numbers, Windows drivers 45
- W**
- watermarks
 - settings 154
 - Web Jetadmin. *See* HP Web Jetadmin
 - Web sites
 - Citrix Terminal server support 13
 - downloading software 15
 - HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 52
 - HP OpenVMS 13
 - Internet Services options, Services tab 176
 - SAP printing 13
 - support links 43, 72
 - Tru64 UNIX printing 13
 - universal print drivers 9
 - Windows operating systems
 - Add Printer installation 85
 - Admin CD for 24
 - CD-ROM, print system 40, 68

- direct printing 246
- direct printing, networks 248
- documentation 23
- driver settings 39
- driver versions 45
- drivers supported 9
- fonts supported 59
- HP PCL 6 Print Driver
 - features 129
- installation details 77
- installation options 67
- installation overview 68
- installing printing-system 66
- LPR commands 248
- Microsoft Windows Cluster
 - Server 8 support 13
- Point and Print
 - installation 100
- PS emulation fonts
 - supported 61
- support 8
- supported 66
- supported versions 9, 36
- system requirements 36, 66
- universal print drivers 9

